

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*



# Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992

## 1992 CHAPTER 4

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C1 Pts. 1, 6 modified (6.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/1004, regs. 1(1), 113, 114(2) (with reg. 138)

## PART I U.K.

### CONTRIBUTIONS

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C2 Pt. 1 modified (2.4.1999) by [The New Deal \(25 plus\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 1999](#) (S.I. 1999/779), arts. 1(1), 2
- C3 Pt. 1 modified (6.4.2001) by [The Social Security \(Contributions\) Regulations 2001](#) (S.I. 2001/1004), regs. 1(1), 125 (as amended (6.4.2017) by S.I. 2017/416, regs. 1(2), 2; (6.4.2019) by S.I. 2019/555, regs. 1(2), 2)
- C4 Pt. 1 modified (13.9.2001) by [The New Deal \(Lone Parents\) \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Order 2001](#) (S.I. 2001/2915), arts. 1(1), 2
- C5 Pt. 1 modified (for the tax year 2022-23) by [Health and Social Care Levy Act 2021](#) (c. 28), s. 5(2) (with s. 7(2)) (which Act was repealed (25.10.2022) by [Health and Social Care Levy \(Repeal\) Act 2022](#) (c. 43), s. 1 (with savings and transitional modifications of Pt. 1 in s. 2, Sch. paras. 1-3, 5))
- C6 Pt. 1 modified (in relation to the tax year 2023-24) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Reduction in Rates\) Act 2023](#) (c. 57), Sch. para. 1(1)-(3)

### *Preliminary*

## 1 Outline of contributory system. E+W+S

(1) The funds required—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) for paying such benefits under this Act [<sup>F1</sup>or any other Act] as are payable out of the National Insurance Fund and not out of other public money; and
- (b) for the making of payments under section 162 of the Administration Act towards the cost of the National Health Service,
- shall be provided by means of contributions payable to the [<sup>F2</sup>Inland Revenue] by earners, employers and others, together with the additions under subsection (5) below [<sup>F3</sup>and amounts payable under section 2 of the Social Security Act 1993].
- (2) Contributions under this Part of this Act shall be of the following <sup>F4</sup>... classes—
- (a) Class 1, earnings-related, payable under section 6 below, being—
- (i) primary Class 1 contributions from employed earners; and
- (ii) secondary Class 1 contributions from employers and other persons paying earnings;
- (b) Class 1A, payable under section 10 below <sup>F5</sup>... by persons liable to pay secondary Class 1 contributions and certain other persons;
- [<sup>F6</sup>(bb) Class 1B, payable under section 10A below by persons who are accountable to the Inland Revenue in respect of income tax on [<sup>F7</sup>general earnings] in accordance with a PAYE settlement agreement;]
- (c) Class 2, flat-rate, payable <sup>F8</sup>... under section 11 below by self-employed earners;
- (d) Class 3, payable under section 13 [<sup>F9</sup>or 13A] below by earners and others voluntarily with a view to providing entitlement to benefit, or making up entitlement;
- [<sup>F10</sup>(da) Class 3A, payable by eligible people voluntarily under section 14A with a view to obtaining units of additional pension;] and
- (e) Class 4, payable under section 15 below in respect of the profits or gains of a trade, profession or vocation, or under section 18 below in respect of equivalent earnings.
- (3) The amounts and rates of contributions in this Part of this Act and the other figures in it which affect the liability of contributors shall—
- (a) be subject to regulations under sections 19(4) and 116 to 120 below; and
- (b) to the extent provided for by Part IX of the Administration Act be subject to alteration by orders made by the [<sup>F11</sup>Treasury] from year to year under that Part,
- <sup>F12</sup>...
- (4) Schedule 1 to this Act—
- (a) shall have effect with respect to the computation, collection and recovery of contributions of Classes 1, 1A, [<sup>F13</sup>1B,][<sup>F14</sup>, 3 and 3A], and otherwise with respect to contributions of those classes; and
- (b) shall also, to the extent provided by regulations made under section 18 below, have effect with respect to the computation, collection and recovery of Class 4 contributions, and otherwise with respect to such contributions, <sup>F15</sup>....
- (5) For each financial year there shall, by way of addition to contributions, be paid out of money provided by Parliament, in such manner and at such times as the Treasury may determine, amounts the total of which for any such year is equal to the aggregate of all statutory sick pay [<sup>F16</sup>, statutory maternity pay, [<sup>F17</sup>statutory paternity pay,] statutory adoption pay][<sup>F18</sup>, statutory shared parental pay and statutory parental bereavement

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

pay] recovered by employers and others in that year, as estimated by the Government Actuary or the Deputy Government Actuary.

(6) No person shall—

- (a) be liable to pay Class 1, Class 1A [<sup>F19</sup>, Class 1B] or Class 2 contributions unless he fulfils prescribed conditions as to residence or presence in Great Britain;
- (b) be entitled to pay Class 3 contributions unless he fulfils such conditions; or
- (c) be entitled to pay Class 1, Class 1A [<sup>F19</sup>, Class 1B] or Class 2 contributions other than those which he is liable to pay, except so far as he is permitted by regulations to pay them.

[<sup>F20</sup>(7) Regulations under subsection (6) above shall be made by the Treasury.]

### Textual Amendments

- F1** Words in s. 1(1)(a) inserted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 3**
- F2** Words in s. 1(1) substituted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(2)(a), **Sch. 1 para. 5(2)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F3** Words in s. 1(1) added (29.1.1993) by Social Security Act 1993 (c. 3), **ss. 2(9), 5**
- F4** Word in s. 1(2) omitted (12.10.2015) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 2(2)(a)**; S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)
- F5** Words in s. 1(2)(b) omitted (with effect in relation to the tax year beginning with 6.4.2000 and subsequent tax years) by virtue of Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 74(1), 86, Sch. 9 Pt. 8(1)** (with s. 74(8))
- F6** S. 1(2)(bb) inserted (8.9.1998 for specified purposes, 6.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), s. 87(2), **Sch. 7 para. 56(1)**; S.I. 1998/2209, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3
- F7** Words in s. 1(2)(bb) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 170** (with Sch. 7)
- F8** Word in s. 1(2)(c) omitted (with effect for the tax year 2015-16 and subsequent tax years) by virtue of National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 (c. 5), **Sch. 1 paras. 2, 35**
- F9** Words in s. 1(2)(d) inserted (6.4.2009) by Pensions Act 2008 (c. 30), **ss. 135(3), 149(4)**
- F10** S. 1(2)(da) inserted (12.10.2015) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 2(2)(b)**; S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)
- F11** Word in s. 1(3)(b) substituted (1.4.1999) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 1(2)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F12** Words in s. 1(3) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 13 para. 49**
- F13** Word in s. 1(4)(a) inserted (8.9.1998 for specified purposes, 6.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), s. 87(2), **Sch. 7 para. 56(2)**; S.I. 1998/2209, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3
- F14** Words in s. 1(4)(a) substituted (12.10.2015) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 2(3)**; S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)
- F15** Words in s. 1(4)(b) repealed (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(2)(a), Sch. 1 para. 5(3), **Sch. 10 Pt. 1**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F16** Words in s. 1(5) substituted (8.12.2002) by Employment Act 2002 (c. 22), **ss. 6(3), 55(2)**; S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. 2
- F17** Words in s. 1(5) substituted (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 7(a)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(d) (with art. 16)
- F18** Words in s. 1(5) substituted (18.1.2020) by Parental Bereavement (Leave and Pay) Act 2018 (c. 24), s. 2(2), **Sch. para. 10**; S.I. 2020/45, reg. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F19** Words in s. 1(6) inserted (8.9.1998 for specified purposes, 6.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), s. 87(2), **Sch. 7 para. 56(3)**; S.I. 1998/2209, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3
- F20** S. 1(7) inserted (1.4.1999) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 1(3)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

## 2 Categories of earners. **E+W+S**

(1) In this Part of this Act and Parts II to V below—

- (a) “employed earner” means a person who is gainfully employed in Great Britain either under a contract of service, or in an office (including elective office) with <sup>F21</sup>... [<sup>F22</sup>earnings]; and
- (b) “self-employed earner” means a person who is gainfully employed in Great Britain otherwise than in employed earner’s employment (whether or not he is also employed in such employment).

(2) Regulations may provide—

- (a) for employment of any prescribed description to be disregarded in relation to liability for contributions otherwise arising from employment of that description;
- (b) for a person in employment of any prescribed description to be treated, for the purposes of this Act, as falling within one or other of the categories of earner defined in subsection (1) above, notwithstanding that he would not fall within that category apart from the regulations.

[<sup>F23</sup>(2ZA) Regulations under subsection (2)(b) may make provision treating a person (“P”) as falling within one or other of the categories of earner in relation to an employment where arrangements have been entered into the main purpose, or one of the main purposes, of which is to secure—

- (a) that P is not treated by other provision in regulations under subsection (2)(b) as falling within that category of earner in relation to the employment, or
- (b) that a person is not treated as the secondary contributor in respect of earnings paid to or for the benefit of P in respect of the employment.

(2ZB) In subsection (2ZA) “arrangements” include any scheme, transaction or series of transactions, agreement or understanding, whether or not legally enforceable, and any associated operations.]

[<sup>F24</sup>(2A) Regulations under subsection (2) above shall be made by the Treasury and, in the case of regulations under paragraph (b) of that subsection, with the concurrence of the Secretary of State.]

- (3) Where a person is to be treated by reference to any employment of his as an employed earner, then he is to be so treated for all purposes of this Act; and references throughout this Act to employed earner’s employment shall be construed accordingly.
- (4) Subsections (1) to (3) above are subject to the provision made by section 95 below as to the employments which are to be treated, for the purposes of industrial injuries benefit, as employed earner’s employments.
- (5) For the purposes of this Act, a person shall be treated as a self-employed earner as respects any week during any part of which he is such an earner (without prejudice



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

to his being also treated as an employed earner as respects that week by reference to any other employment of his).

#### Textual Amendments

- F21** Word in s. 2(1)(a) omitted (13.5.2014) by virtue of [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), s. 15\(1\)\(4\)](#)
- F22** Words in s. 2(1)(a) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 171](#) (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F23** [S. 2\(2ZA\)\(2ZB\)](#) inserted (12.2.2015) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\), s. 6\(3\)](#)
- F24** [S. 2\(2A\)](#) substituted (11.11.1999) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\), s. 89\(4\)\(d\), Sch. 11 para. 2](#)

### 3 “Earnings” and “earner”. **E+W+S**

(1) In this Part of this Act and Parts II to V below—

- (a) “earnings” includes any remuneration or profit derived from an employment; and
- (b) “earner” shall be construed accordingly.

(2) For the purposes of this Part of this Act and of Parts II to V below other than those of Schedule 8—

- (a) the amount of a person’s earnings for any period; or
- (b) the amount of his earnings to be treated as comprised in any payment made to him or for his benefit,

shall be calculated or estimated in such manner and on such basis as may be prescribed <sup>[F25]</sup>by regulations made by the Treasury with the concurrence of the Secretary of State].

<sup>[F26]</sup>(2A) Regulations made for the purposes of subsection (2) above may provide that, where a payment is made or a benefit provided to or for the benefit of two or more earners, a proportion (determined in such manner as may be prescribed) of the amount or value of the payment or benefit shall be attributed to each earner.]

(3) Regulations made for the purposes of subsection (2) above may prescribe that payments of a particular class or description made or falling to be made to or by a person shall, to such extent as may be prescribed, be disregarded or, as the case may be, be deducted from the amount of that person’s earnings.

<sup>[F27]</sup>(4) Subsection (5) below applies to regulations made for the purposes of subsection (2) above which make special provision with respect to the earnings periods of directors and former directors of companies.

(5) Regulations to which this subsection applies may make provision—

- (a) for enabling companies, and directors and former directors of companies, to pay on account of any earnings-related contributions that may become payable by them such amounts as would be payable by way of such contributions if the special provision had not been made; and
- (b) for requiring any payments made in accordance with the regulations to be treated, for prescribed purposes, as if they were the contributions on account of which they were made.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F25** Words in s. 3(2) inserted (1.4.1999) by **Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), Sch. 3 para. 3**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F26** S. 3(2A) inserted (8.9.1998) by **Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), ss. 48, 87(2)**; S.I. 1998/2209, art. 2(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F27** S. 3(4)(5) inserted (8.9.1998) by **Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), ss. 49, 87(2)**; S.I. 1998/2209, art. 2(a), Sch. Pt. 1

#### 4 Payments treated as remuneration and earnings. **E+W+S**

- (1) For the purposes of section 3 above there shall be treated as remuneration derived from employed earner's employment—
- (a) any sum paid to or for the benefit of a person in satisfaction (whether in whole or in part) of any entitlement of that person to—
    - (i) statutory sick pay; or
    - (ii) statutory maternity pay;
    - <sup>F28</sup>(iii) <sup>F29</sup>... statutory paternity pay;
    - <sup>F30</sup>(iv) .....
    - (v) statutory adoption pay;]<sup>F31</sup> ...
    - <sup>F32</sup>(vi) statutory shared parental pay; [<sup>F33</sup>or
    - (vii) statutory parental bereavement pay;] and]
  - (b) any sickness payment made—
    - (i) to or for the benefit of the employed earner; and
    - (ii) in accordance with arrangements under which the person who is the secondary contributor in relation to the employment concerned has made, or remains liable to make, payments towards the provision of that sickness payment.
- (2) Where the funds for making sickness payments under arrangements of the kind mentioned in paragraph (b) of subsection (1) above are attributable in part to contributions to those funds made by the employed earner, regulations may make provision for disregarding, for the purposes of that subsection, the prescribed part of any sum paid as a result of the arrangements.
- (3) For the purposes of subsections (1) and (2) above “sickness payment” means any payment made in respect of absence from work due to incapacity for work, <sup>F34</sup>....
- <sup>F35</sup>(4) For the purposes of section 3 above there shall be treated as remuneration derived from an employed earner's employment—
- <sup>F36</sup>(a) the amount of any gain calculated under section 479 [<sup>F37</sup>of ITEPA 2003 in respect of which an amount counts as employment income of the earner under section 476 of that Act (charge on acquisition of securities pursuant to option etc), reduced by any amounts deducted under section 480(1) to (6) of that Act in arriving at the amount counting as such employment income;]]
  - (b) any sum paid (or treated as paid) to or for the benefit of the earner which is chargeable to tax by virtue of [<sup>F38</sup>section 225 or 226 of ITEPA 2003] (taxation of consideration for certain restrictive undertakings).]
- (5) For the purposes of section 3 above regulations may make provision for treating as remuneration derived from an employed earner's employment any payment made by

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

a body corporate to or for the benefit of any of its directors where that payment would, when made, not be earnings for the purposes of this Act.

[<sup>F39</sup>(6) Regulations may make provision for the purposes of this Part—

- (a) for treating any amount on which an employed earner is chargeable to income tax under [<sup>F40</sup>the employment income Parts of ITEPA 2003] as remuneration derived from the earner's employment; and
- (b) for treating any amount which in accordance with regulations under paragraph (a) above constitutes remuneration as an amount of remuneration paid, at such time as may be determined in accordance with the regulations, to or for the benefit of the earner in respect of his employment.]

[<sup>F41</sup>(7) Regulations under this section shall be made by the Treasury with the concurrence of the Secretary of State.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F28** S. 4(1)(a)(iii)-(v) substituted for s. 4(1)(a)(iii)(iv) (6.4.2010) by [Work and Families Act 2006 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 19(2), [Sch. 1 para. 4](#); S.I. 2010/495, art. 4(d)
- F29** Word in s. 4(1)(a)(iii) repealed (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 7 para. 8\(a\)](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(e) (with art. 16)
- F30** S. 4(1)(a)(iv) repealed (1.12.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 7 para. 8\(b\)](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 5(2)(g)
- F31** Word in s. 4(1)(a) omitted (18.1.2020) by virtue of [Parental Bereavement \(Leave and Pay\) Act 2018 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 2(2), [Sch. para. 11\(a\)](#); S.I. 2020/45, reg. 2
- F32** S. 4(1)(a)(vi) and word substituted (1.12.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 7 para. 8\(c\)](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 5(2)(g)
- F33** S. 4(1)(a)(vii) and word inserted (18.1.2020) by [Parental Bereavement \(Leave and Pay\) Act 2018 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 2(2), [Sch. para. 11\(b\)](#); S.I. 2020/45, reg. 2
- F34** Words in s. 4(3) omitted (13.4.1995) by virtue of [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), [Sch. 1 para. 1](#), [Sch. 2](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), [Sch. Pt. 4](#)
- F35** S. 4(4) substituted (21.5.1998 for specified purposes, 8.9.1998 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), [ss. 50\(1\)](#), 87(2)(b) (with s. 50(3)); S.I. 1998/2209, art. 2(a), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F36** S. 4(4)(a) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, [Sch. 6 para. 172\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F37** Words in s. 4(4)(a) substituted (with effect in accordance with [Sch. 22 para. 48\(2\)](#) of the amending Act) by [Finance Act 2003 \(c. 14\)](#), [Sch. 22 para. 48\(1\)\(a\)](#)
- F38** Words in s. 4(4)(b) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, [Sch. 6 para. 172\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F39** S. 4(6) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year beginning with 6.4.2000 and subsequent tax years) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), [ss. 74\(3\)](#), 86 (with s. 74(8))
- F40** Words in s. 4(6)(a) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, [Sch. 6 para. 172\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F41** S. 4(7) inserted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(3), [Sch. 3 para. 4](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 3-6)

[<sup>F42</sup>4A **Earnings of workers supplied by service companies etc.** **E+W+S**

(1) Regulations may make provision for securing that where—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) an individual (“the worker”) personally performs, or is under an obligation personally to perform, services [<sup>F43</sup>for another person] (“the client”),
- (b) the performance of those services by the worker is (within the meaning of the regulations) referable to arrangements involving a third person (and not referable to any contract between the client and the worker), and
- (c) the circumstances are such that, were the services to be performed by the worker under a contract between him and the client, he would be regarded for the purposes of the applicable provisions of this Act as employed in employed earner’s employment by the client,

relevant payments or benefits are, to the specified extent, to be treated for those purposes as earnings paid to the worker in respect of an employed earner’s employment of his.

(2) For the purposes of this section—

- (a) “the intermediary” means—
  - (i) where the third person mentioned in subsection (1)(b) above has such a contractual or other relationship with the worker as may be specified, that third person, or
  - (ii) where that third person does not have such a relationship with the worker, any other person who has both such a relationship with the worker and such a direct or indirect contractual or other relationship with the third person as may be specified; and
- (b) a person may be the intermediary despite being—
  - (i) a person with whom the worker holds any office or employment, or
  - (ii) a body corporate, unincorporated body or partnership of which the worker is a member;

and subsection (1) above applies whether or not the client is a person with whom the worker holds any office or employment.

[ Regulations may also make provision for securing that, where the services of an <sup>F44</sup>(2A) individual (“the worker”) are provided (directly or indirectly) by a managed service company (“the MSC”) relevant payments or benefits are, to the specified extent, to be treated for the purposes of the applicable provisions of this Act as earnings paid to the worker in respect of an employed earner’s employment of his.

(2B) In subsection (2A) “managed service company” has the same meaning as it has for the purposes of Chapter 9 of Part 2 of ITEPA 2003.]

(3) Regulations under this section may, in particular, make provision—

- (a) for the worker to be treated for the purposes of the applicable provisions of this Act, in relation to the specified amount of relevant payments or benefits (the worker’s “attributable earnings”), as employed in employed earner’s employment by the intermediary [<sup>F45</sup>or the MSC (as the case requires)];
- (b) for the [<sup>F46</sup>intermediary or the MSC (whether or not fulfilling] the conditions prescribed under section 1(6)(a) above for secondary contributors) to be treated for those purposes as the secondary contributor in respect of the worker’s attributable earnings;
- (c) for determining—
  - (i) any deductions to be made, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) in other respects the manner and basis in and on which the amount of the worker's attributable earnings for any specified period is to be calculated or estimated,
    - in connection with relevant payments or benefits;
  - (d) for aggregating any such amount, for purposes relating to contributions, with other earnings of the worker during any such period;
  - (e) for determining the date by which contributions payable in respect of the worker's attributable earnings are to be paid and accounted for;
  - (f) for apportioning payments or benefits of any specified description, in such manner or on such basis as may be specified, for the purpose of determining the part of any such payment or benefit which is to be treated as a relevant payment or benefit for the purposes of the regulations;
  - (g) for disregarding for the purposes of the applicable provisions of this Act, in relation to relevant payments or benefits, an employed earner's employment in which the worker is employed (whether by the intermediary [<sup>F47</sup> or the MSC] or otherwise) to perform the services in question;
  - (h) for otherwise securing that a double liability to pay any amount by way of a contribution of any description does not arise in relation to a particular payment or benefit or (as the case may be) a particular part of a payment or benefit;
  - (i) for securing that, to the specified extent, two or more persons, whether—
    - (i) connected persons (within the meaning of [<sup>F48</sup> section 993 of the Income Tax Act 2007]), or
    - (ii) persons of any other specified description,are treated as a single person for any purposes of the regulations;
  - (j) (without prejudice to paragraph (i) above) for securing that a contract made with a person other than the client is to be treated for any such purposes as made with the client;
  - (k) for excluding or modifying the application of the regulations in relation to such cases, or payments or benefits of such description, as may be specified.
- (4) Regulations made in pursuance of subsection (3)(c) above may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) for the making of a deduction of a specified amount in respect of general expenses of the intermediary as well as deductions in respect of particular expenses incurred by him;
  - (b) for securing reductions in the amount of the worker's attributable earnings on account of—
    - (i) any secondary Class 1 contributions already paid by the intermediary [<sup>F49</sup> or the MSC] in respect of actual earnings of the worker, and
    - (ii) any such contributions that will be payable by [<sup>F50</sup> that person] in respect of the worker's attributable earnings.
- (5) Regulations under this section may make provision for securing that, in applying any provisions of the regulations, any term of a contract or other arrangement which appears to be of a description specified in the regulations is to be disregarded.
- (6) In this section—
- “the applicable provisions of this Act” means this Part of this Act and Parts II to V below;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F51

“relevant payments or benefits” means payments or benefits of any specified description made or provided (whether to the intermediary [<sup>F52</sup>or the MSC,] or the worker or otherwise) in connection with the performance by the worker of the services in question;

“specified” means prescribed by or determined in accordance with regulations under this section.

- (7) Any reference in this section to the performance by the worker of any services includes a reference to any such obligation of his to perform them as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a) above.
- (8) Regulations under this section shall be made by the Treasury with the concurrence of the Secretary of State.
- (9) If, on any modification of the statutory provisions relating to income tax, it appears to the Treasury to be expedient to modify any of the preceding provisions of this section for the purpose of assimilating the law relating to income tax and the law relating to contributions under this Part of this Act, the Treasury may with the concurrence of the Secretary of State by order make such modifications of the preceding provisions of this section as the Treasury think appropriate for that purpose.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F42** S. 4A inserted (22.12.1999) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\), ss. 75, 89\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 1999/3420, art. 3
- F43** Words in s. 4A(1)(a) substituted (8.8.2003) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 4A\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1874\)](#), arts. 1, **3**
- F44** S. 4A(2A)(2B) inserted (24.7.2007) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 4A\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2071\)](#), arts. 1, **2(2)**
- F45** Words in s. 4A(3)(a) inserted (24.7.2007) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 4A\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2071\)](#), arts. 1, **2(3)(a)**
- F46** Words in s. 4A(3)(b) substituted (24.7.2007) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 4A\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2071\)](#), arts. 1, **2(3)(b)**
- F47** Words in s. 4A(3)(g) inserted (24.7.2007) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 4A\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2071\)](#), arts. 1, **2(3)(c)**
- F48** Words in s. 4A(3)(i)(i) substituted (6.4.2007) by [Income Tax Act 2007 \(c. 3\), s. 1034\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 289](#) (with Sch. 2)
- F49** Words in s. 4A(4)(b)(i) inserted (24.7.2007) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 4A\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2071\)](#), arts. 1, **2(4)(a)**
- F50** Words in s. 4A(4)(b)(ii) substituted (24.7.2007) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 4A\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2071\)](#), arts. 1, **2(4)(b)**
- F51** Words in s. 4A(6) omitted (8.8.2003) by virtue of [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 4A\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1874\)](#), arts. 1, **4**
- F52** Words in s. 4A(6) inserted (24.7.2007) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 4A\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2071\)](#), arts. 1, **2(5)**

#### [<sup>F53</sup>4AA Limited liability partnerships **E+W+S**

- (1) The Treasury may, for the purposes of this Act, by regulations—
- (a) provide that, in prescribed circumstances—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) a person (“E”) is to be treated as employed in employed earner's employment by a limited liability partnership (including where E is a member of the partnership), and
    - (ii) the limited liability partnership is to be treated as the secondary contributor in relation to any payment of earnings to or for the benefit of E as the employed earner;
  - (b) prescribe how earnings in respect of E's employed earner employment with the limited liability partnership are to be determined (including what constitutes such earnings);
  - (c) provide that such earnings are to be treated as being paid to or for the benefit of E at prescribed times.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may modify the definition of “employee” or “employer” in section 163, 171, 171ZJ [<sup>F54</sup>, 171ZS or 171ZZ14] below as the Treasury consider appropriate to take account of any provision falling within subsection (1)(a) to (c).
- (3) If—
  - (a) a provision of the Income Tax Acts relating to limited liability partnerships or members of limited liability partnerships is passed or made, and
  - (b) in consequence, the Treasury consider it appropriate for provision to be made for the purpose of assimilating to any extent the law relating to income tax and the law relating to contributions under this Part,the Treasury may by regulations make that provision.
- (4) The provision that may be made under subsection (3) includes provision modifying any provision made by or under this Act.
- (5) Regulations under this section are to be made with the concurrence of the Secretary of State.
- (6) Section 4(4) of the Limited Liability Partnerships Act 2000 does not limit the provision that may be made by regulations under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F53** S. 4AA inserted (13.3.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), s. 14\(2\)](#)
- F54** Words in s. 4AA(2) substituted (18.1.2020) by [Parental Bereavement \(Leave and Pay\) Act 2018 \(c. 24\), s. 2\(2\), Sch. para. 12; S.I. 2020/45, reg. 2](#)

#### [<sup>F55</sup> **4B Earnings: power to make retrospective provision in consequence of retrospective tax legislation** **E+W+S**]

- (1) This section applies where—
  - (a) a provision of the Income Tax Acts which relates to income tax chargeable under the employment income Parts of ITEPA 2003 is passed or made so as to have retrospective effect (“the retrospective tax provision”), and
  - (b) it appears to the Treasury to be appropriate to make regulations under a relevant power for the purpose of reflecting the whole or part of the provision made by the retrospective tax provision.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Those regulations may be made so as to have retrospective effect if it appears to the Treasury to be expedient, in consequence of the retrospective tax provision, for the regulations to have that effect.
- (3) A “relevant power” means a power to make regulations under any of the following provisions—
- (a) section 3 (power to prescribe the manner and basis of the calculation or estimation of earnings);
  - (b) section 4(6) (power to treat amounts chargeable to income tax under the employment income Parts of ITEPA 2003 as earnings);
  - (c) section 4A (power to treat payments or benefits to workers supplied by service companies etc as earnings).
  - [ section 4AA (power to make provision in relation to limited liability
  - <sup>F56</sup>(d) partnerships)]
- (4) It does not matter whether the retrospective tax provision in question was passed or made before the day on which the National Insurance Contributions Act 2006 was passed.
- (5) But nothing in subsection (2) authorises regulations to be made which have effect in relation to any time before 2nd December 2004.
- (6) Regulations under a relevant power made by virtue of subsection (2) may affect, for the purposes of any contributions legislation for the purposes of which the regulations are made, the earnings in respect of an employment paid to or for the benefit of an earner at a time before the regulations are made.
- (7) In such a case, subsections (8) and (9) apply and in those subsections and this subsection—
- “relevant contributions legislation” means any contributions legislation for the purposes of which the regulations have the effect mentioned in subsection (6);
- “the relevant time” means the time before the regulations are made mentioned in that subsection;
- “the revised earnings” means the earnings, in respect of the employment, paid to or for the benefit of the earner at the relevant time as determined after applying the regulations.
- (8) References in any relevant contributions legislation, or any provision made under any such legislation, which relate to—
- (a) the earnings, in respect of the employment, paid to or for the benefit of the earner at the relevant time, or
  - (b) the amount of such earnings so paid at that time,
- are to be read, in so far as they so relate, as references which relate to the revised earnings or, as the case may be, the amount of those earnings.
- (9) Any matter which, at the time when the regulations are made, has been determined for the purposes of any relevant contributions legislation, or any provision made under any such legislation, wholly or partly by reference to—
- (a) the earnings, in respect of the employment, paid to or for the benefit of the earner at the relevant time, or
  - (b) the amount of such earnings so paid at that time,

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

is to be redetermined as it would have been determined at the time of the original determination if it had been determined wholly or partly, as the case may be, by reference to the revised earnings or the amount of those earnings.

- (10) The matters referred to in subsection (9) may include—
  - (a) whether Class 1 contributions are payable in respect of earnings paid to or for the benefit of the earner in a tax week, and
  - (b) the amount of any such contribution.
- (11) Subsections (7) to (10) are subject to any express provision to the contrary (including any such provision made by regulations under section 4C(1)).
- (12) The power conferred by subsection (2) is without prejudice to any powers conferred by or by virtue of any other provision of this Act or of any other enactment (including any instrument made under an Act).
- (13) For the purposes of this section “contributions legislation” means any Part of this Act or provision of such a Part.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F55** Ss. 4B, 4C inserted (30.3.2006) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2006 \(c. 10\)](#), ss. **1(1)**, 9

**F56** S. 4B(3)(d) inserted (13.3.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\)](#), s. **14(3)**

[<sup>F55</sup>**4C** **Power to make provision in consequence of provision made by or by virtue of section 4B(2) etc** **E+W+S**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations made with the concurrence of the Secretary of State make such provision as appears to the Treasury to be expedient for any of the purposes mentioned in subsection (2) in consequence of any provision made by or by virtue of section 4B(2).
- (2) Those purposes are—
  - (a) any purpose relating to any contributions;
  - (b) any purpose relating to any contributory benefit or contribution-based jobseeker's allowance;
  - (c) any purpose relating to any statutory payment;
  - <sup>F57</sup>(d) .....
  - (e) any purpose of Chapter 2 of Part 3 of that Act (reduction in state scheme contributions and benefits for members of certified schemes);
  - (f) such other purposes as may be prescribed by regulations made by the Treasury with the concurrence of the Secretary of State.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (1) may, in particular, make provision—
  - (a) modifying any provision of any enactment (including this Act and any enactment passed or made on or after the commencement day);
  - (b) for any provision of any such enactment to apply in such cases, and with such modifications (if any), as the regulations may prescribe.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (1) may be made so as to have retrospective effect but must not have effect in relation to any time before 2nd December 2004.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

**Changes to legislation:** Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) In particular, regulations under subsection (1) made by virtue of subsection (4) may affect any of the following matters—
- (a) liability to pay contributions <sup>F58</sup> ...;
  - (b) the amount of any contribution <sup>F59</sup> ...;
  - (c) entitlement to a contributory benefit or contribution-based jobseeker's allowance;
  - (d) the amount of any such benefit or allowance;
  - (e) entitlement to a statutory payment;
  - (f) the amount of any such payment;
  - <sup>F60</sup>(g) .....
  - <sup>F60</sup>(h) .....
  - (i) liability to make payments under section 42A(3) of the Pensions Act or to pay minimum contributions under section 43 of that Act;
  - (j) the amount of any such payment or contribution.
- (6) In such a case, where the matter has been determined before the time when the regulations are made, the regulations may provide for the matter to be redetermined accordingly.
- (7) If (ignoring this subsection) the operative provisions would directly or indirectly have effect in any case so as—
- (a) to remove a person's entitlement to a contributory benefit, contribution-based jobseeker's allowance or statutory payment, or
  - (b) to reduce the amount of any such benefit, allowance or payment to which a person has an entitlement,
- those provisions are to be read with such modifications as are necessary to ensure that they do not have that effect.
- (8) For the purposes of subsection (7)—
- (a) “the operative provisions” are section 4B(7) to (10) and any provision made by virtue of section 4B(2) or under subsection (1) of this section;
  - (b) a person's “entitlement” includes any future entitlement which the person may have.
- (9) The powers conferred by this section are without prejudice to any powers conferred by or by virtue of any other provision of this Act or any other enactment.
- (10) In particular, any modification of any provision of an instrument by regulations made under subsection (1) is without prejudice to any other power to amend or revoke the provisions of the instrument (including the modified provision).
- (11) For the purposes of this section—
- “the commencement day” means the day on which the National Insurance Contributions Act 2006 was passed;
- “enactment” includes an instrument made under an Act;
- “statutory payment” means—
- (a) statutory sick pay, statutory maternity pay, [<sup>F61</sup>statutory paternity pay,] statutory adoption pay [<sup>F62</sup>, statutory shared parental pay or statutory parental bereavement pay]; or
  - (b) any other payment prescribed by regulations made by the Treasury with the concurrence of the Secretary of State.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F55** Ss. 4B, 4C inserted (30.3.2006) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2006 \(c. 10\)](#), **ss. 1(1), 9**
- F57** [S. 4C\(2\)\(d\)](#) repealed (6.4.2015) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), [ss. 27\(7\), 30\(2\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 42\(2\)](#), [Sch. 7 Pt. 7](#); S.I. 2011/1267, [art. 3\(a\)\(ii\)\(b\)](#)
- F58** Words in [s. 4C\(5\)\(a\)](#) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), [s. 56\(4\)](#), **Sch. 13 para. 50**
- F59** Words in [s. 4C\(5\)\(b\)](#) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), [s. 56\(4\)](#), **Sch. 13 para. 50**
- F60** [S. 4C\(5\)\(g\)\(h\)](#) repealed (6.4.2015) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), [ss. 27\(7\), 30\(2\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 42\(3\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. 7 Pt. 7](#); S.I. 2011/1267, [art. 3\(a\)\(ii\)\(b\)](#)
- F61** Words in [s. 4C\(11\)](#) substituted (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), [s. 139\(6\)](#), **Sch. 7 para. 9(a)**; S.I. 2014/1640, [art. 7\(f\)](#) (with [art. 16](#))
- F62** Words in [s. 4C\(11\)](#) substituted (18.1.2020) by [Parental Bereavement \(Leave and Pay\) Act 2018 \(c. 24\)](#), [s. 2\(2\)](#), **Sch. para. 13**; S.I. 2020/45, [reg. 2](#)

### Class 1 contributions

#### [<sup>F63</sup>5 **Earnings limits and thresholds for Class 1 contributions.** **E+W+S**

- (1) For the purposes of this Act there shall for every tax year be—
  - (a) the following for primary Class 1 contributions—
    - (i) a lower earnings limit,
    - (ii) a primary threshold, and
    - (iii) an upper earnings limit; and
  - (b) a secondary threshold for secondary Class 1 contributions.

Those limits and thresholds shall be the amounts specified for that year by regulations  
<sup>F64</sup>...

<sup>F65</sup>(2) .....

<sup>F66</sup>(3) .....

- (4) Regulations may, in the case of each of the limits or thresholds mentioned in subsection (1) above, prescribe an equivalent of that limit or threshold in relation to earners paid otherwise than weekly (and references in this or any other Act to “the prescribed equivalent”, in the context of any of those limits or thresholds, are accordingly references to the equivalent prescribed under this subsection in relation to such earners).
- (5) The power conferred by subsection (4) above to prescribe an equivalent of any of those limits or thresholds includes power to prescribe an amount which exceeds, by not more than £1.00, the amount which is the arithmetical equivalent of that limit or threshold.
- (6) Regulations under this section shall be made by the Treasury.]

### Textual Amendments

- F63** [S. 5](#) substituted (22.12.1999 for specified purposes, 6.4.2000 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), [s. 89\(1\)](#), **Sch. 9 para. 1**; S.I. 1999/3420, [art. 2](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F64** Words in s. 5(1) repealed (21.9.2008) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\)](#), ss. 1(1)(a), 6(1), [Sch. 2](#)
- F65** S. 5(2) repealed (with effect in relation to the tax year following 2010-2011 and subsequent tax years) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), ss. 7(3), 30(3), [Sch. 7 Pt. 4](#) (with s. 7(4)); S.I. 2010/2650
- F66** S. 5(3) repealed (with effect in accordance with s. 1(3), Sch. 2 Note 1(a) of the amending Act) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\)](#), ss. 1(1)(b), 6(1), [Sch. 2](#)

## <sup>F67</sup> **Liability for Class 1 contributions.** **E+W+S**

- (1) Where in any tax week earnings are paid to or for the benefit of an earner over the age of 16 in respect of any one employment of his which is employed earner's employment—
  - (a) a primary Class 1 contribution shall be payable in accordance with this section and section 8 below if the amount paid exceeds the current primary threshold (or the prescribed equivalent); and
  - (b) a secondary Class 1 contribution shall be payable in accordance with this section and section 9 below if the amount paid exceeds the current secondary threshold (or the prescribed equivalent).
- (2) No primary or secondary Class 1 contribution shall be payable in respect of earnings if a Class 1B contribution is payable in respect of them.
- (3) Except as may be prescribed, no primary Class 1 contribution shall be payable in respect of earnings paid to or for the benefit of an employed earner after he attains pensionable age, but without prejudice to any liability to pay secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of any such earnings.
- (4) The primary and secondary Class 1 contributions referred to in subsection (1) above are payable as follows—
  - (a) the primary contribution shall be the liability of the earner; and
  - (b) the secondary contribution shall be the liability of the secondary contributor; but nothing in this subsection shall prejudice the provisions of [<sup>F68</sup> paragraphs 3 to 3B of Schedule 1 to this Act.]
- (5) Except as provided by this Act, the primary and secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of earnings paid to or for the benefit of an earner in respect of any one employment of his shall be payable without regard to any other such payment of earnings in respect of any other employment of his.
- (6) Regulations may provide for reducing primary or secondary Class 1 contributions which are payable in respect of persons to whom Part XI of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (redundancy payments) does not apply by virtue of section 199(2) or 209 of that Act.
- (7) Regulations under this section shall be made by the Treasury.]

### Textual Amendments

- F67** S. 6 substituted (22.12.1999 for specified purposes, 6.4.2000 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), [Sch. 9 para. 2](#); S.I. 1999/3420, art. 2
- F68** Words in s. 6(4) substituted (28.7.2000) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), ss. 77(3), 86

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F69</sup>6A **Notional payment of primary Class 1 contribution where earnings not less than lower earnings limit.** **E+W+S**]

- (1) This section applies where in any tax week earnings are paid to or for the benefit of an earner over the age of 16 in respect of any one employment of his which is employed earner's employment and the amount paid—
  - (a) is not less than the current lower earnings limit (or the prescribed equivalent), but
  - (b) does not exceed the current primary threshold (or the prescribed equivalent).
- (2) Subject to any prescribed exceptions or modifications—
  - (a) the earner shall be treated as having actually paid a primary Class 1 contribution in respect of that week, and
  - (b) those earnings shall be treated as earnings upon which such a contribution has been paid,for any of the purposes mentioned in subsection (3) below.
- (3) The purposes are—
  - (a) the purposes of section 14(1)(a) below;
  - (b) the purposes of the provisions mentioned in section 21(5A)(a) to (c) below;
  - (c) any other purposes relating to contributory benefits; <sup>F70</sup> ...
  - (d) any purposes relating to jobseeker's allowance<sup>F71</sup>; and
  - (e) any purposes relating to employment and support allowance.]
- (4) Regulations may provide for any provision of this Act which, in whatever terms, refers—
  - (a) to primary Class 1 contributions being payable by a person, or
  - (b) otherwise to a person's liability to pay such contributions,to have effect for the purposes of this section with any prescribed modifications.
- (5) Except as may be prescribed, nothing in this section applies in relation to earnings paid to or for the benefit of an employed earner after he attains pensionable age.
- (6) Except as provided by this Act, this section applies in relation to earnings paid to or for the benefit of an earner in respect of any one employment of his irrespective of any other such payment of earnings in respect of any other employment of his.
- (7) Regulations under this section shall be made by the Treasury.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F69** S. 6A inserted (22.12.1999 for specified purposes, 6.4.2000 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), **Sch. 9 para. 3**; S.I. 1999/3420, art. 2
- F70** Word in s. 6A(3) repealed (27.10.2008) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 70(1), **Sch. 8**; S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(g)
- F71** S. 6A(3)(e) and preceding word inserted (27.10.2008) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 70(2), **Sch. 3 para. 9(2)**; S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(f)

7 **“Secondary contributor”.** **E+W+S**

- (1) For the purposes of this Act, the “secondary contributor” in relation to any payment of earnings to or for the benefit of an employed earner, is—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in the case of an earner employed under a contract of service, his employer;
- (b) in the case of an earner employed in an office with <sup>F72</sup>... [<sup>F73</sup>earnings], either—
  - (i) such person as may be prescribed in relation to that office; or
  - (ii) if no person is prescribed, the government department, public authority or body of persons responsible for paying the <sup>F72</sup>... [<sup>F73</sup>earnings] of the office;

but this subsection is subject to subsection (2) below.

(2) In relation to employed earners who—

- (a) are paid earnings in a tax week by more than one person in respect of different employments; or
- (b) work under the general control or management of a person other than their immediate employer,

and in relation to any other case for which it appears to the [<sup>F74</sup>Treasury] that such provision is needed, regulations may provide that the prescribed person is to be treated as the secondary contributor in respect of earnings paid to or for the benefit of an earner.

[<sup>F75</sup>(2A) Regulations under subsection (2) may make provision treating a person as the secondary contributor in respect of earnings paid to or for the benefit of an earner if arrangements have been entered into the main purpose, or one of the main purposes, of which is to secure that the person is not so treated by other provision in regulations under subsection (2).

(2B) In subsection (2A) “arrangements” include any scheme, transaction or series of transactions, agreement or understanding, whether or not legally enforceable, and any associated operations.]

[<sup>F76</sup>(3) Regulations under any provision of this section shall be made by the Treasury.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F72** Words in s. 7(1)(b) omitted (13.5.2014) by virtue of [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), s. 15\(4\), Sch. 2 para. 2](#)
- F73** Words in s. 7(1)(b) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 173](#) (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F74** Word in s. 7(2) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 7\(2\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F75** [S. 7\(2A\)\(2B\)](#) inserted (12.2.2015) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\), s. 6\(4\)](#)
- F76** [S. 7\(3\)](#) inserted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 7\(3\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

#### [<sup>F77</sup>8 Calculation of primary Class 1 contributions. **E+W+S**

(1) Where a primary Class 1 contribution is payable as mentioned in section 6(1)(a) above, the amount of that contribution is the aggregate of—

- (a) the main primary percentage of so much of the earner’s earnings paid in the tax week, in respect of the employment in question, as—
  - (i) exceeds the current primary threshold (or the prescribed equivalent);
 but



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) does not exceed the current upper earnings limit (or the prescribed equivalent); and
  - (b) the additional primary percentage of so much of those earnings as exceeds the current upper earnings limit (or the prescribed equivalent).
- (2) For the purposes of this Act—
- (a) the main primary percentage is [<sup>F78</sup>12] per cent; and
  - (b) the additional primary percentage is [<sup>F79</sup>2] per cent;
- but the main primary percentage is subject to alteration under sections 143 and 145 of the Administration Act.
- (3) Subsection (1) above is subject to—
- (a) regulations under section 6(6) above;
  - (b) regulations under sections 116 to 120 below; <sup>F80</sup> ...
  - <sup>F80</sup>(c) ..... ]

#### Textual Amendments

- F77** S. 8 substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\)](#), [ss. 1\(1\)](#), 8(2)
- F78** Figure in s. 8(2)(a) substituted (6.4.2011) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2011 \(c. 3\)](#), [ss. 1\(1\)\(a\)](#), 13(1)
- F79** Figure in s. 8(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2011) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2011 \(c. 3\)](#), [ss. 1\(1\)\(b\)](#), 13(1)
- F80** S. 8(3)(c) and word omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), [Sch. 13 para. 51](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C7** S. 8(2)(a): power to amend conferred (1.7.1992) by [Social Security Administration Act 1992 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 143\(1\)\(4\)](#), 192(4)
- C8** S. 8(2)(a): power to amend conferred (1.7.1992) by [Social Security Administration Act 1992 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 145\(1\)](#), 192(4)

#### <sup>F819</sup> Calculation of secondary Class 1 contributions. **E+W+S**

- (1) Where a secondary Class 1 contribution is payable as mentioned in section 6(1)(b) above, the amount of that contribution shall be [<sup>F82</sup>the relevant percentage] of so much of the earnings paid in the tax week, in respect of the employment in question, as exceeds the current secondary threshold (or the prescribed equivalent).

- <sup>F83</sup>(1A) For the purposes of subsection (1) “the relevant percentage” is—
- (a) if section 9A below applies to the earnings, the age-related secondary percentage;
  - <sup>F84</sup>(aa) [ if section 9B below (zero-rate secondary Class 1 contributions for certain apprentices) applies to the earnings, 0%;]
  - (b) otherwise, the secondary percentage.]

- <sup>F85</sup>(2) For the purposes of this Act the secondary percentage is [<sup>F86</sup>13.8] per cent; but that percentage is subject to alteration under sections 143 and 145 of the Administration Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Subsection (1) above is subject to—
  - (a) regulations under section 6(6) above;
  - (b) regulations under sections 116 to 120 below; <sup>F87</sup> ...
  - <sup>F87</sup>(c) ..... ]]

**Textual Amendments**

- F81** S. 9 substituted (22.12.1999 for specified purposes, 6.4.2000 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), **Sch. 9 para. 5**; S.I. 1999/3420, art. 2
- F82** Words in s. 9(1) substituted (6.4.2015) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\)](#), **s. 9(2)(a)(12)**
- F83** S. 9(1A) inserted (6.4.2015) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\)](#), **s. 9(2)(b)(12)**
- F84** S. 9(1A)(aa) inserted (6.4.2016) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), **s. 1(2)(11)(b)**
- F85** S. 9(2)(3) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\)](#), **ss. 2(1)**, 8(2)
- F86** Figure in s. 9(2) substituted (6.4.2011) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2011 \(c. 3\)](#), **ss. 1(2)**, 13(1)
- F87** S. 9(3)(c) and word omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), **Sch. 13 para. 52**

[<sup>F88</sup>**9A The age-related secondary percentage** **E+W+S**

- (1) Where a secondary Class 1 contribution is payable as mentioned in section 6(1)(b) above, this section applies to the earnings paid in the tax week, in respect of the employment in question, if the earner falls within an age group specified in column 1 of the table in subsection (3).

[ But this section does not apply to those earnings so far as section 9B below (zero-rate <sup>F89</sup>(1A) secondary Class 1 contributions for certain apprentices) applies to them.]

- (2) For the purposes of section 9(1A)(a) above, the age-related secondary percentage is the percentage for the earner's age group specified in column 2 of the table.
- (3) Here is the table—

<i>Age group</i>	<i>Age-related secondary percentage</i>
Under 21	0%

- (4) The Treasury may by regulations amend the table—
  - (a) so as to add an age group in column 1 and to specify the percentage in column 2 for that age group;
  - (b) so as to reduce (or further reduce) the percentage specified in column 2 for an age group already specified in column 1 (whether for the whole of the age group or only part of it).
- (5) A percentage specified under subsection (4)(a) must be lower than the secondary percentage.
- (6) For the purposes of this Act a person is still to be regarded as being liable to pay a secondary Class 1 contribution even though the amount of the contribution is £0 because the age-related secondary percentage is 0%.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) The Treasury may by regulations provide that, in relation to an age group specified in the table, there is to be for every tax year an upper secondary threshold for secondary Class 1 contributions.

That threshold is to be the amount specified for that year by regulations made by the Treasury.

- (8) Subsections (4) and (5) of section 5 above (which confer power to prescribe an equivalent of a secondary threshold in relation to earners paid otherwise than weekly), and subsection (6) of that section as it applies for the purposes of those subsections, apply for the purposes of an upper secondary threshold in relation to an age group as they apply for the purposes of a secondary threshold.

- (9) Where—

- (a) a secondary Class 1 contribution is payable as mentioned in section 6(1)(b) above,
- (b) the earner falls within an age group in relation to which provision has been made under subsection (7), and
- (c) the earnings paid in the tax week, in respect of the employment in question, exceed the current upper secondary threshold (or the prescribed equivalent) in relation to the age group,

this section is not to apply to the earnings so far as they exceed that threshold (or the prescribed equivalent); and for the purposes of section 9(1) above the relevant percentage in respect of the earnings so far as they exceed that threshold (or the prescribed equivalent) is, accordingly, to be the secondary percentage.

- (10) In subsections (7) to (9) references to an age group include a part of an age group.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F88** S. 9A inserted (13.5.2014 for specified purposes, 6.4.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), s. 9\(3\)\(11\)\(a\)\(12\)](#)

**F89** S. 9A(1A) inserted (6.4.2016) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\), s. 1\(3\)\(11\)\(b\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C9** S. 9A(6) applied (15.9.2016) by [Finance Act 2016 \(c. 24\), s. 100\(6\)](#)

### [<sup>F90</sup>**9B** Zero-rate secondary Class 1 contributions for certain apprentices **E+W+S**]

- (1) Where a secondary Class 1 contribution is payable as mentioned in section 6(1)(b) above, this section applies to the earnings paid in the tax week, in respect of the employment in question, if the earner is a relevant apprentice in relation to that employment.
- (2) An earner is a “relevant apprentice”, in relation to an employment, if the earner—
- (a) is aged under 25, and
  - (b) is employed, in the employment, as an apprentice.
- (3) For the purposes of this Act a person is still to be regarded as being liable to pay a secondary Class 1 contribution even if the amount of the contribution is £0 because this section applies to the earnings in question.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The Treasury may by regulations provide that, in relation to relevant apprentices, there is to be for every tax year an upper secondary threshold for secondary Class 1 contributions.

That threshold is to be the amount specified for that year by regulations made by the Treasury.

- (5) Subsections (4) and (5) of section 5 above (which confer power to prescribe an equivalent of a secondary threshold in relation to earners paid otherwise than weekly), and subsection (6) of that section as it applies for the purposes of those subsections, apply for the purposes of an upper secondary threshold in relation to relevant apprentices as they apply for the purposes of a secondary threshold.

- (6) Subsection (7) applies if—

- (a) a secondary Class 1 contribution is payable as mentioned in section 6(1)(b) above,
- (b) the earnings paid in the tax week, in respect of the employment in question, exceed the current upper secondary threshold (or the prescribed equivalent) in relation to relevant apprentices, and
- (c) the earner is a relevant apprentice in relation to the employment.

- (7) This section does not apply to those earnings so far as they exceed that threshold (or the prescribed equivalent) (“the excess earnings”) and, accordingly, for the purposes of section 9(1) above the relevant percentage in respect of the excess earnings is the secondary percentage.

- (8) But the Treasury may by regulations modify the effect of subsection (7) in a case in which the earner falls within an age group specified in column 1 of the table in section 9A(3) above.

- (9) In subsection (2)(b) “apprentice” has such meaning as the Treasury may prescribe.

- (10) The Treasury may by regulations amend subsection (2)(a) so as to alter the age that an earner must be in order to be a relevant apprentice (and regulations under this subsection may have the effect of allowing anyone who is of an age at which secondary Class 1 contributions are payable to be a relevant apprentice).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F90** S. 9B inserted (12.4.2015 for specified purposes, 6.4.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\), s. 1\(4\)\(11\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C10** S. 9B(3) applied (15.9.2016) by [Finance Act 2016 \(c. 24\), s. 100\(6\)](#)

### *Class 1A contributions*

[<sup>F91</sup>10 **Class 1A contributions** <sup>F92</sup>... **E+W+S**

- (1) Where—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F93</sup>(a) for any tax year an earner is chargeable to income tax under ITEPA 2003 on an amount of general earnings received by him from any employment (“the relevant employment”),]
- [<sup>F94</sup>(b) the relevant employment is both—
- (i) employed earner’s employment, and
  - (ii) an employment, other than [<sup>F95</sup>lower-paid employment as a minister of religion], within the meaning of the benefits code (see Chapter 2 of Part 3 of ITEPA 2003),] and
- (c) the whole or a part of the [<sup>F96</sup>general earnings] falls, for the purposes of Class 1 contributions, to be left out of account in the computation of the earnings paid to or for the benefit of the earner,
- a Class 1A contribution shall be payable for that tax year, in accordance with this section, in respect of that earner and so much of the [<sup>F97</sup>general earnings] as falls to be so left out of account.
- [<sup>F98</sup>(1A) A Class 1A contribution is payable for a tax year, in accordance with this section, in respect of an earner and the amount of a termination award if and so far as—
- (a) that amount counts as employment income of the earner under section 403 of ITEPA 2003 (charge on termination payments or benefits), and
  - (b) the earner is chargeable to income tax on that amount for the tax year by virtue of that section.
- (1B) No Class 1A contribution is payable under subsection (1A) in respect of an amount so far as it is an amount of earnings in respect of which Class 1 contributions are payable.
- (1C) No Class 1A contribution is payable under subsection (1A) unless the employment which is terminated is employed earner's employment.]
- (2) Subject to [<sup>F99</sup>sections 10ZA and 10ZBA], a Class 1A contribution [<sup>F100</sup>payable under subsection (1)] for any tax year shall be payable by—
- (a) the person who is liable to pay the secondary Class 1 contribution relating to the last (or only) relevant payment of earnings in that tax year in relation to which there is a liability to pay such a Class 1 contribution; or
  - (b) if paragraph (a) above does not apply, the person who, if the [<sup>F101</sup>general earnings] in respect of which the Class 1A contribution is payable were earnings in respect of which Class 1 contributions would be payable, would be liable to pay the secondary Class 1 contribution.
- (3) In subsection (2) above “relevant payment of earnings” means a payment which for the purposes of Class 1 contributions is a payment of earnings made to or for the benefit of the earner in respect of the relevant employment.
- [<sup>F102</sup>(3A) A Class 1A contribution payable under subsection (1A) is payable by the person who, if the amount in respect of which the Class 1A contribution is payable were earnings in respect of which Class 1 contributions would be payable, would be liable to pay the secondary Class 1 contribution.]
- (4) The amount of the Class 1A contribution [<sup>F103</sup>payable under subsection (1)] in respect of any [<sup>F104</sup>general earnings] shall be the Class 1A percentage of so much of [<sup>F105</sup>them] as falls to be left out of account as mentioned in subsection (1)(c) above.
- [<sup>F106</sup>(4A) The amount of the Class 1A contribution payable under subsection (1A) in respect of an amount is the Class 1A percentage of that amount.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) In [<sup>F107</sup>subsections (4) and (4A)] above “the Class 1A percentage” means a percentage rate equal to the [<sup>F108</sup>secondary percentage] for the tax year in question.
- (6) No Class 1A contribution shall be payable for any tax year in respect of so much of any [<sup>F109</sup>general earnings as are taken] for the purposes of the making of Class 1B contributions for that year to be included in a PAYE settlement agreement.
- [<sup>F110</sup>(7) In calculating for the purposes of this section the amount of general earnings received by an earner from an employment, a deduction under any of the excluded provisions is to be disregarded.

This subsection does not apply in relation to a deduction if subsection (7A) applies in relation to it.

(7A) Where—

- (a) a deduction in respect of a matter is allowed under an excluded provision, and
- (b) the amount deductible is at least equal to the whole of any corresponding amount which would (but for this section) fall by reference to that matter to be included in the general earnings mentioned in subsection (7),

the whole of the corresponding amount shall be treated as not included.

(7B) For the purposes of subsections (7) and (7A) “excluded provision” means—

- (a) any provision of Chapter 2 of Part 5 of ITEPA 2003 (deductions for employee’s expenses), other than section 352 (limited deduction for agency fees paid by entertainers), <sup>F111</sup>...

[<sup>F112</sup>(aa) any of sections 363 to 365 of ITEPA 2003 (certain deductions from benefits code earnings), or]

- (b) any provision of Chapter 5 of Part 5 of ITEPA 2003 (deductions for earnings representing benefits or reimbursed expenses).]

(8) The Treasury may by regulations—

[<sup>F113</sup>(a) modify the effect of subsections (7) and (7A) above by amending subsection (7B) so as to include any enactment contained in the Income Tax Acts within the meaning of “excluded provision”; or]

- (b) make such amendments of [<sup>F114</sup>subsections (7) to (7B)] above as appear to them to be necessary or expedient in consequence of any alteration of the provisions of the Income Tax Acts relating to the charge to tax [<sup>F115</sup>on employment income].

(9) The Treasury may by regulations provide—

- (a) for Class 1A contributions not to be payable, in prescribed circumstances, by prescribed persons or in respect of prescribed persons [<sup>F116</sup>, general earnings or termination awards];

(b) for reducing Class 1A contributions in prescribed circumstances.

<sup>F117</sup>(10) .....

[<sup>F118</sup>(11) The Treasury may by regulations modify the law relating to Class 1A contributions in the case of an employed earner’s employment which is treated as existing by virtue of regulations under section 4AA.]

[<sup>F119</sup>(12) In this section “termination award” means a payment or benefit received by an earner (or an earner’s spouse, civil partner, blood relative or dependant) in connection with the termination of the earner’s employment.]]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## Textual Amendments

- F91** S. 10 substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year beginning with 6.4.2000 and subsequent tax years) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), **ss. 74(2)**, 86 (with s. 74(8))
- F92** Words in s. 10 heading omitted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 2 of the commencing S.I.) by virtue of [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\)](#), **ss. 1(10)**, 5(3); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 2
- F93** S. 10(1)(a) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 174(2)** (with Sch. 7)
- F94** S. 10(1)(b) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 174(3)** (with Sch. 7)
- F95** Words in s. 10(1)(b)(ii) substituted (with effect for the tax year 2016-17 and subsequent tax years in accordance with s. 13(4) of the amending Act) by [Finance Act 2015 \(c. 11\)](#), **Sch. 1 para. 23(2)**
- F96** Words in s. 10(1)(c) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 174(4)** (with Sch. 7)
- F97** Words in s. 10(1) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 174(5)** (with Sch. 7)
- F98** S. 10(1A)-(1C) inserted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 2 of the commencing S.I.) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\)](#), **ss. 1(2)**, 5(3); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 2
- F99** Words in s. 10(2) substituted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 3 of the commencing S.I.) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\)](#), **ss. 3(2)**, 5(3); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 3
- F100** Words in s. 10(2) inserted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 2 of the commencing S.I.) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\)](#), **ss. 1(3)**, 5(3); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 2
- F101** Words in s. 10(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 174(6)** (with Sch. 7)
- F102** S. 10(3A) inserted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 2 of the commencing S.I.) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\)](#), **ss. 1(4)**, 5(3); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 2
- F103** Words in s. 10(4) inserted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 2 of the commencing S.I.) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\)](#), **ss. 1(5)**, 5(3); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 2
- F104** Words in s. 10(4) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 174(7)(a)** (with Sch. 7)
- F105** Word in s. 10(4) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 174(7)(b)** (with Sch. 7)
- F106** S. 10(4A) inserted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 2 of the commencing S.I.) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\)](#), **ss. 1(6)**, 5(3); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 2
- F107** Words in s. 10(5) substituted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 2 of the commencing S.I.) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\)](#), **ss. 1(7)**, 5(3); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 2
- F108** Words in s. 10(5) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 2**
- F109** Words in s. 10(6) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 174(8)** (with Sch. 7)



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F110** S. 10(7)-(7B) substituted for s. 10(7) (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 174\(9\)](#) (with Sch. 7)
- F111** Word in s. 10(7B)(a) omitted (5.4.2007 with effect in relation to the tax year beginning on 6.4.2006 and subsequent tax years) by virtue of [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 10\(7B\)\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/799\), regs. 1, 2\(a\)](#)
- F112** S. 10(7B)(aa) inserted (5.4.2007 with effect in relation to the tax year beginning on 6.4.2006 and subsequent tax years) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modification of Section 10\(7B\)\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/799\), regs. 1, 2\(b\)](#)
- F113** S. 10(8)(a) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 174\(10\)](#) (with Sch. 7)
- F114** Words in s. 10(8)(b) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 174\(11\)\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 7)
- F115** Words in s. 10(8)(b) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 174\(11\)\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 7)
- F116** Words in s. 10(9)(a) substituted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 2 of the commencing S.I.) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\), ss. 1\(8\), 5\(3\); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 2](#)
- F117** S. 10(10) repealed (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 174\(13\), Sch. 8 Pt. 1](#) (with Sch. 7)
- F118** S. 10(11) inserted (13.3.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), s. 14\(4\)](#)
- F119** S. 10(12) inserted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 2 of the commencing S.I.) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\), ss. 1\(9\), 5\(3\); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 2](#)

## **[<sup>F120</sup>10ZA] Liability of third party provider of benefits in kind. E+W+S**

(1) This section applies, where—

- (a) a Class 1A contribution is payable for any tax year in respect of the whole or any part of [<sup>F121</sup>general earnings] received by an earner;
- (b) [<sup>F122</sup>the general earnings, in so far as they are ones in respect of which] such a contribution is payable, [<sup>F123</sup>consist] in a benefit provided for the earner or a member of his family or household;
- (c) the person providing the benefit is a person other than the person (“the relevant employer”) by whom, but for this section, the Class 1A contribution would be payable in accordance with section 10(2) above; and
- (d) the provision of the benefit by that other person has not been arranged or facilitated by the relevant employer.

[ This section does not apply if the benefit is a sporting testimonial payment (see <sup>F124</sup>(1A) section 10ZBA).]

(2) For the purposes of this Act if—

- (a) the person providing the benefit pays an amount for the purpose of discharging any liability of the earner to income tax for any tax year, and
- (b) the income tax in question is tax chargeable in respect of the provision of the benefit or of the making of the payment itself,

the amount of the payment shall be treated as if it were [<sup>F125</sup>general earnings] consisting in the provision of a benefit to the earner in that tax year and falling, for the purposes

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

of Class 1 contributions, to be left out of account in the computation of the earnings paid to or for the benefit of the earner.

(3) Subject to subsection (4) below, the liability to pay any Class 1A contribution in respect of—

- (a) the benefit provided to the earner, and
- (b) any further benefit treated as so provided in accordance with subsection (2) above,

shall fall on the person providing the benefit, instead of on the relevant employer.

(4) Subsection (3) above applies in the case of a Class 1A contribution for the tax year beginning with 6th April 2000 only if the person providing the benefit in question gives notice in writing to the Inland Revenue on or before 6th July 2001 that he is a person who provides benefits in respect of which a liability to Class 1A contributions is capable of falling by virtue of this section on a person other than the relevant employer.

(5) The Treasury may by regulations make provision specifying the circumstances in which a person is or is not to be treated for the purposes of this Act as having arranged or facilitated the provision of any benefit.

(6) In this section references to a member of a person's family or household shall be construed in accordance with [<sup>F126</sup>section 721(5) of ITEPA 2003].]

#### Textual Amendments

- F120** Ss. 10ZA, 10ZB inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year beginning with 6.4.2000 and subsequent tax years) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), **ss. 75(1), 86** (with [s. 75\(3\)](#))
- F121** Words in [s. 10ZA\(1\)\(a\)](#) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with [s. 723\(1\)\(a\)\(b\)](#) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), [s. 723](#), **Sch. 6 para. 175(2)** (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F122** Words in [s. 10ZA\(1\)\(b\)](#) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with [s. 723\(1\)\(a\)\(b\)](#) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), [s. 723](#), **Sch. 6 para. 175(3)(a)** (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F123** Word in [s. 10ZA\(1\)\(b\)](#) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with [s. 723\(1\)\(a\)\(b\)](#) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), [s. 723](#), **Sch. 6 para. 175(3)(b)** (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F124** [S. 10ZA\(1A\)](#) inserted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in [reg. 3](#) of the commencing S.I.) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials\) Act 2019 \(c. 23\)](#), **ss. 3(3), 5(3)**; [S.I. 2020/285](#), **reg. 3**
- F125** Words in [s. 10ZA\(2\)](#) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with [s. 723\(1\)\(a\)\(b\)](#) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), [s. 723](#), **Sch. 6 para. 175(4)** (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F126** Words in [s. 10ZA\(6\)](#) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with [s. 723\(1\)\(a\)\(b\)](#) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), [s. 723](#), **Sch. 6 para. 175(5)** (with [Sch. 7](#))

#### [<sup>F120</sup>10ZB] Non-cash vouchers provided by third parties. **E+W+S**

(1) In section 10ZA above references to the provision of a benefit include references to the provision of a non-cash voucher.

(2) Where—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a non-cash voucher is received by any person from [<sup>F127</sup>employment which is [<sup>F128</sup>lower-paid employment as a minister of religion], and]
- (b) the case would be one in which the conditions in section 10ZA(1)(a) to (d) above would be satisfied in relation to the provision of that voucher [<sup>F129</sup>if that employment were not [<sup>F130</sup>lower-paid employment as a minister of religion]], sections 10 and 10ZA above shall have effect in relation to the provision of that voucher, and to any such payment in respect of the provision of that voucher as is mentioned in section 10ZA(2) above, [<sup>F131</sup>as if that employment were not [<sup>F130</sup>lower-paid employment as a minister of religion]].
- (3) In this section “non-cash voucher” has the same meaning as in [<sup>F132</sup>section 84 of ITEPA 2003].]

#### Textual Amendments

- F120** Ss. 10ZA, 10ZB inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year beginning with 6.4.2000 and subsequent tax years) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), **ss. 75(1), 86** (with [s. 75\(3\)](#))
- F127** Words in s. 10ZB(2)(a) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 176(2)** (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F128** Words in s. 10ZB(2)(a) substituted (with effect for the tax year 2016-17 and subsequent tax years in accordance with s. 13(4) of the amending Act) by [Finance Act 2015 \(c. 11\)](#), **Sch. 1 para. 23(3)(a)**
- F129** Words in s. 10ZB(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 176(3)** (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F130** Words in s. 10ZB(2) substituted (with effect for the tax year 2016-17 and subsequent tax years in accordance with s. 13(4) of the amending Act) by [Finance Act 2015 \(c. 11\)](#), **Sch. 1 para. 23(3)(b)**
- F131** Words in s. 10ZB(2) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 176(4)** (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F132** Words in s. 10ZB(3) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\)](#), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 176(5)** (with [Sch. 7](#))

#### [<sup>F133</sup>10ZBA] **Ability of third party controller of sporting testimonial** **E+W+S**

- (1) This section applies where—
- a Class 1A contribution is payable for any tax year in respect of the whole or any part of general earnings received by an earner;
  - the general earnings, in so far as they are ones in respect of which such a contribution is payable, consist in a sporting testimonial payment; and
  - the controller of the sporting testimonial is not the person (“the relevant employer”) by whom, but for this section, the Class 1A contribution would be payable in accordance with section 10(2).
- (2) The controller of the sporting testimonial, instead of the relevant employer, is liable to pay any Class 1A contribution in respect of the sporting testimonial payment.
- (3) Subsection (4) applies if—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the controller of the sporting testimonial pays an amount (“the amount to cover tax”) for the purpose of discharging any liability of the earner to income tax for any tax year (“the relevant year”), and
  - (b) the income tax in question is tax chargeable in respect of the sporting testimonial payment or of the amount to cover tax.
- (4) For the purposes of this Act the amount to cover tax is to be treated as if it were general earnings consisting in the making of a sporting testimonial payment to the earner in the relevant year and falling, for the purposes of Class 1 contributions, to be left out of account in the computation of the earnings paid to or for the benefit of the earner.
- (5) The controller of the sporting testimonial, instead of the relevant employer, is liable to pay any Class 1A contribution in respect of any further sporting testimonial payment treated as made to the earner in accordance with subsection (4).
- (6) Expressions used in this section and section 226E of ITEPA 2003 (sporting testimonial payments) have the same meaning as in that section.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F133** S. 10ZBA inserted (6.4.2020 subject to transitional provisions in reg. 3 of the commencing S.I.) by National Insurance Contributions (Termination Awards and Sporting Testimonials) Act 2019 (c. 23), ss. 3(4), 5(3); S.I. 2020/285, reg. 3

#### [<sup>F134</sup>10ZC] **Class 1A contributions: power to make provision in consequence of retrospective tax legislation** **E+W+S**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations make such provision as appears to the Treasury to be expedient for any purpose of the law relating to Class 1A contributions in consequence of any relevant retrospective tax provision—
  - (a) which is passed or made at or before the time when the regulations are made, or
  - (b) which may be passed or made after that time.
- (2) “Relevant retrospective tax provision” means a provision of the Income Tax Acts which—
  - (a) has retrospective effect, and
  - (b) affects the amount of general earnings received by an earner from an employment on which he is chargeable to income tax under the employment income Parts of ITEPA 2003 for a tax year.
- (3) It does not matter whether the relevant retrospective tax provision was passed or made before the commencement day.
- (4) Regulations under this section may, in particular, make provision—
  - (a) modifying any provision of any enactment (including this Act and any enactment passed or made on or after the commencement day);
  - (b) for any provision of any such enactment to apply in such cases, and with such modifications (if any), as the regulations may prescribe.
- (5) Regulations under this section may be made so as to have retrospective effect but must not have effect in relation to any time before 2nd December 2004.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) In particular, regulations under this section made by virtue of subsection (5)—
- (a) may affect matters determined before the time when the regulations are made, and
  - (b) may provide for those matters to be redetermined accordingly.
- (7) Regulations under this section—
- (a) may not impose any liability to pay a Class 1A contribution, and
  - (b) may not increase the amount of any Class 1A contribution.
- (8) The powers conferred by this section are without prejudice to—
- (a) any liability to pay a Class 1A contribution which arises by virtue of any relevant retrospective tax provision, and
  - (b) any powers conferred by or by virtue of any other provision of this Act or any other enactment.
- (9) In particular, any modification of any provision of an instrument by regulations under this section is without prejudice to any other power to amend or revoke the provisions of the instrument (including the modified provision).
- (10) For the purposes of this section—
- “the commencement day” means the day on which the National Insurance Contributions Act 2006 was passed;
- “enactment” includes an instrument made under an Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F134** S. 10ZC inserted (30.3.2006) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2006 \(c. 10\)](#), **ss. 3(1)**, 9

#### <sup>F135</sup>*Class 1B contributions*

#### Textual Amendments

**F135** S. 10A and cross-heading inserted (8.9.1998 for specified purposes, 6.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 53**, 87(2); S.I. 1998/2209, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3

#### <sup>F135</sup>**10A Class 1B contributions** **U.K.**

- (1) Where for any tax year a person is accountable to the Inland Revenue in respect of income tax on [<sup>F136</sup>general earnings] of his employees in accordance with a PAYE settlement agreement, a Class 1B contribution shall be payable by him for that tax year in accordance with this section.
- (2) The Class 1B contribution referred to in subsection (1) above is payable in respect of—
  - (a) the amount of any of [<sup>F137</sup>the general earnings included] in the PAYE settlement agreement which are chargeable emoluments; and
  - (b) the total amount of income tax in respect of which the person is accountable for the tax year in accordance with the PAYE settlement agreement.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The amount of the Class 1B contribution referred to in subsection (1) above shall be the Class 1B percentage of the aggregate of the amounts mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (2) above.
- (4) [<sup>F138</sup>General earnings are chargeable emoluments] for the purposes of subsection (2) above if, apart from section [<sup>F139</sup>6(2) or 10(6)] above, the person accountable in accordance with the PAYE settlement agreement would be liable or entitled to pay secondary Class 1 contributions or Class 1A contributions in respect of them.
- (5) Where—
- (a) the PAYE settlement agreement was entered into after the beginning of the tax year; and
  - (b) Class 1 contributions were due in respect of any [<sup>F140</sup>general earnings] before it was entered into,
- those [<sup>F140</sup>general earnings] shall not be taken to be included in the PAYE settlement agreement.
- [<sup>F141</sup>(6) In subsection (3) above “the Class 1B percentage” means a percentage rate equal to [<sup>F142</sup>the secondary percentage] for the tax year in question.]
- (7) [<sup>F143</sup>The Treasury may by regulations] provide for persons to be excepted in prescribed circumstances from liability to pay Class 1B contributions.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F136** Words in s. 10A(1) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 177\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F137** Words in s. 10A(2)(a) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 177\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F138** Words in s. 10A(4) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 177\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F139** Words in s. 10A(4) substituted (1.9.2004) by [National Insurance Contributions and Statutory Payments Act 2004 \(c. 3\), s. 13, Sch. 1 para. 1\(2\)](#); S.I. 2004/1943, art. 5(a)(i)
- F140** Words in s. 10A(5) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Earnings and Pensions\) Act 2003 \(c. 1\), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 177\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 7](#))
- F141** S. 10A(6) substituted (6.4.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\), ss. 77, 89\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 1999/3420, art. 4(a)
- F142** Words in s. 10A(6) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), s. 8\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 3](#)
- F143** Words in s. 10A(7) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 11](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Class 2 contributions

#### <sup>F144</sup>11 Class 2 contributions **E+W+S**

- (1) This section applies if an earner is in employment as a self-employed earner in a tax year (the “relevant tax year”).
- (2) If the earner has relevant profits [<sup>F145</sup>that exceed the lower profits threshold], the earner is liable to pay Class 2 contributions for the relevant tax year at the rate of [<sup>F146</sup>£3.45] in respect of each week in that year that the earner is in the employment.
- (3) “Relevant profits” means profits, from the employment, in respect of which Class 4 contributions are payable under section 15 for the relevant tax year (or would be payable if the amount of the profits were to exceed the amount specified in subsection (3)(a) of that section in excess of which the main Class 4 percentage is payable).
- <sup>F147</sup>(4) For the purposes of this Act—
  - (a) the “lower profits threshold” is [<sup>F148</sup>£12,570], and
  - (b) the “small profits threshold” is £6,725.]
- (5) Class 2 contributions under subsection (2) are to be payable in the same manner that Class 4 contributions in respect of relevant profits are, or would be, payable (but see section 11A for the application of certain provisions in relation to such Class 2 contributions).
- <sup>F149</sup>(5A) Subsection (5B) applies to an earner who has, for the relevant tax year, relevant profits of, or exceeding, the small profits threshold but which do not exceed the lower profits threshold.
- (5B) An earner to whom this subsection applies is treated, for relevant purposes, as having actually paid a Class 2 contribution under subsection (2) in respect of each week in the relevant tax year that the earner is in the employment.
- (5C) “For relevant purposes” means for the purposes of provision made by or under an enactment that—
  - (a) is provision relating to benefits, or any other entitlement, provided for by or under an enactment, and
  - (b) applies by reference (however framed) to Class 2 contributions (whether or not the provision refers to contributions treated as paid).]
- (6) If the earner does not have relevant profits of, or exceeding, the small profits threshold, the earner may pay a Class 2 contribution of [<sup>F150</sup>£3.45] in respect of any week in the relevant tax year that the earner is in the employment.
- (7) No Class 2 contributions are to be paid [<sup>F151</sup>or treated as paid] under this section in respect of any week in the relevant tax year—
  - (a) before that in which the earner attains the age of 16, or
  - (b) after that in which the earner attains pensionable age.
- (8) The Treasury may by regulations make provision so that, in relation to an earner, the Class 2 contribution in respect of a week is higher than that specified in subsections (2) and (6) where—
  - (a) in respect of any employment of the earner, the earner is treated by regulations made under section 2(2)(b) as being a self-employed earner, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in any period or periods the earner has earnings from that employment and—
  - (i) those earnings are such that (disregarding their amount) the earner would be liable for Class 1 contributions in respect of them if the earner were not so treated in respect of the employment, and
  - (ii) no Class 4 contribution is payable in respect of the earnings by virtue of regulations under section 18(1).
- (9) The Treasury may by regulations—
  - (a) modify the meaning of “relevant profits”;
  - (b) provide that Class 2 contributions under subsection (6) may not be paid—
    - (i) if the employment or the earner is of a prescribed description, or
    - (ii) in prescribed circumstances.
- (10) Regulations under subsection (9)(a) may amend this section.
- (11) Regulations under subsection (9)(b) are to be made with the concurrence of the Secretary of State.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F144** Ss. 11, 11A substituted for s. 11 (with effect for the tax year 2015-16 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 3, 35](#)
- F145** Words in s. 11(2) substituted (with effect from 6.4.2022) by [The Social Security \(Class 2 National Insurance Contributions Increase of Threshold\) Regulations 2022 \(S.I. 2022/1329\)](#), regs. 1, [2\(2\)](#)
- F146** Sum in s. 11(2) substituted (6.4.2023) by [The Social Security \(Contributions\) \(Rates, Limits and Thresholds Amendments and National Insurance Funds Payments\) Regulations 2023 \(S.I. 2023/236\)](#), regs. 1, [3\(a\)](#)
- F147** S. 11(4) substituted (with effect from 6.4.2022) by [The Social Security \(Class 2 National Insurance Contributions Increase of Threshold\) Regulations 2022 \(S.I. 2022/1329\)](#), regs. 1, [2\(3\)](#)
- F148** Sum in s. 11(4)(a) substituted (6.4.2023) by [The Social Security \(Contributions\) \(Rates, Limits and Thresholds Amendments and National Insurance Funds Payments\) Regulations 2023 \(S.I. 2023/236\)](#), regs. 1, [3\(b\)](#)
- F149** S. 11(5A)-(5C) inserted (with effect from 6.4.2022) by [The Social Security \(Class 2 National Insurance Contributions Increase of Threshold\) Regulations 2022 \(S.I. 2022/1329\)](#), regs. 1, [2\(4\)](#)
- F150** Sum in s. 11(6) substituted (6.4.2023) by [The Social Security \(Contributions\) \(Rates, Limits and Thresholds Amendments and National Insurance Funds Payments\) Regulations 2023 \(S.I. 2023/236\)](#), regs. 1, [3\(a\)](#)
- F151** Words in s. 11(7) inserted (with effect from 6.4.2022) by [The Social Security \(Class 2 National Insurance Contributions Increase of Threshold\) Regulations 2022 \(S.I. 2022/1329\)](#), regs. 1, [2\(5\)](#)

#### [<sup>F144</sup>11A Application of certain provisions of the Income Tax Acts in relation to Class 2 contributions under section 11(2) **E+W+S**

- (1) The following provisions apply, with the necessary modifications, in relation to Class 2 contributions under section 11(2) as if those contributions were income tax chargeable under Chapter 2 of Part 2 of the Income Tax (Trading and Other Income) Act 2005 in respect of profits of a trade, profession or vocation which is not carried on wholly outside the United Kingdom—
  - (a) Part 2 (returns), Part 4 (assessment and claims), Part 5 (appeals), Part 5A (payment of tax), Part 6 (collection and recovery) and Part 10 (penalties) of the Taxes Management Act 1970;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) Schedule 24 to the Finance Act 2007 (penalties for errors);
  - (c) sections 101 and 102 of the Finance Act 2009 (interest);
  - (d) Schedules 55 and 56 to that Act (penalties for failure to make returns etc or for failure to make payments on time);
  - (e) Part 4 (follower notices and accelerated payments) and Part 5 (promoters of tax avoidance schemes) of the Finance Act 2014;
  - <sup>F152</sup>(ea) [ the provisions of Schedule 18 to the Finance Act 2016 (serial tax avoidance);]
  - (f) any other provisions of the Income Tax Acts as to assessment, collection, repayment or recovery.
- (2) But section 59A of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (payments on account) does not apply in relation to Class 2 contributions under section 11(2).
- (3) This section and section 11(5) are subject to any contrary provision in regulations made under Schedule 1 in relation to Class 2 contributions under section 11(2).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F144** Ss. 11, 11A substituted for s. 11 (with effect for the tax year 2015-16 and subsequent tax years) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 (c. 5), **Sch. 1 paras. 3, 35**

**F152** S. 11A(1)(ea) inserted (with effect in relation to relevant defeats incurred after 15.9.2016 in accordance with Sch. 18 para. 63 of the amending Act) by Finance Act 2016 (c. 24), **Sch. 18 para. 61(2)**

**12 Late paid Class 2 contributions. E+W+S**

- (1) This section applies to any Class 2 contribution [<sup>F153</sup>under section 11(6)] paid in respect of a week falling within a tax year (“the contribution year”) earlier than the tax year in which it is paid (“the payment year”).
- (2) Subject to subsections (3) [<sup>F154</sup>and (4)] below, the amount of a contribution to which this section applies shall be the amount which the earner would have had to pay if he had paid the contribution in the contribution year.
- (3) Subject to subsections [<sup>F155</sup>(4) and (6)] below, in any case where—
  - (a) the earner pays an ordinary contribution to which this section applies after the end of the tax year immediately following the contribution year; and
  - (b) the weekly rate of ordinary contributions for the week in respect of which the contribution was payable in the contribution year differs from the weekly rate applicable at the time of payment in the payment year,
 the amount of the contribution shall be computed by reference to the highest weekly rate of ordinary contributions in the period beginning with the week in respect of which the contribution is paid and ending with the day on which it is paid.
- (4) The [<sup>F156</sup>Treasury] may by regulations direct that subsection (3) above shall have effect in relation to a higher-rate contribution to which this section applies subject to such modifications as may be prescribed.
- <sup>F157</sup>(5) .....
- (6) The [<sup>F156</sup>Treasury] may by regulations provide that the amount of any contribution which, apart from the regulations, would fall to be computed in accordance with

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

subsection (3) <sup>F158</sup>... above shall instead be computed by reference to a tax year not earlier than the contribution year but earlier—

(a) <sup>F159</sup>... than the payment year; <sup>F160</sup>...

<sup>F160</sup>(b) .....

<sup>F161</sup>(7) .....

(8) In this section—

“ordinary contribution” means a contribution [<sup>F162</sup>of the amount specified in section 11(6)]; and

“higher-rate contribution” means a contribution [<sup>F163</sup>of an amount provided for in regulations under section 11(8)].

### Textual Amendments

- F153** Words in s. 12(1) inserted (with effect in relation to a Class 2 contribution in respect of a week in the tax year 2015-16 or a subsequent tax year) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 4\(2\)](#), 36
- F154** Words in s. 12(2) substituted (with effect in relation to a Class 2 contribution in respect of a week in the tax year 2015-16 or a subsequent tax year) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 4\(3\)](#), 36
- F155** Words in s. 12(3) substituted (with effect in relation to a Class 2 contribution in respect of a week in the tax year 2015-16 or a subsequent tax year) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 4\(4\)](#), 36
- F156** Word in s. 12(4)(6) substituted (1.4 1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(3), [Sch. 3 para. 13](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 3-6)
- F157** S. 12(5) omitted (with effect in relation to a Class 2 contribution in respect of a week in the tax year 2015-16 or a subsequent tax year) by virtue of [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 4\(5\)](#), 36
- F158** Words in s. 12(6) omitted (with effect in relation to a Class 2 contribution in respect of a week in the tax year 2015-16 or a subsequent tax year) by virtue of [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 4\(6\)\(a\)](#), 36
- F159** Words in s. 12(6)(a) omitted (with effect in relation to a Class 2 contribution in respect of a week in the tax year 2015-16 or a subsequent tax year) by virtue of [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 4\(6\)\(b\)](#), 36
- F160** S. 12(6)(b) and preceding word omitted (with effect in relation to a Class 2 contribution in respect of a week in the tax year 2015-16 or a subsequent tax year) by virtue of [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 4\(6\)\(c\)](#), 36
- F161** S. 12(7) omitted (with effect in relation to a Class 2 contribution in respect of a week in the tax year 2015-16 or a subsequent tax year) by virtue of [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 4\(7\)](#), 36
- F162** Words in s. 12(8) substituted (with effect in relation to a Class 2 contribution in respect of a week in the tax year 2015-16 or a subsequent tax year) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 4\(8\)\(a\)](#), 36
- F163** Words in s. 12(8) substituted (with effect in relation to a Class 2 contribution in respect of a week in the tax year 2015-16 or a subsequent tax year) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), [Sch. 1 paras. 4\(8\)\(b\)](#), 36

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C11** S. 12(3) excluded (5.4.2023) by S.I. 2001/1004, [reg. 61B\(6A\)](#) (as inserted by [The Social Security \(Contributions\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Regulations 2023 \(S.I. 2023/309\)](#), regs. 1, [3\(3\)](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C12** S. 12(3) excluded (5.4.2023) by S.I. 2001/1004, **reg. 65BA(2)(4)** (as inserted by [The Social Security \(Contributions\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Regulations 2023](#) (S.I. 2023/309), regs. 1, **4(1)**)

### Class 3 contributions

## 13 Class 3 contributions. **E+W+S**

- (1) [<sup>F164</sup>The Treasury shall by regulations] provide for earners and others, if over the age of 16, to be entitled if they so wish, but subject to any prescribed conditions, to pay Class 3 contributions; and, subject to the following provisions of this section, the amount of a Class 3 contribution shall be [<sup>F165</sup>£17.45].
- (2) Payment of Class 3 contributions shall be allowed only with a view to enabling the contributor to satisfy <sup>F166</sup>... conditions of entitlement to benefit by acquiring the requisite earnings factor for the purposes described in section 22 below.
- (3) [<sup>F167</sup> The Secretary of State may by regulations] provide for Class 3 contributions, although paid in one tax year, to be appropriated in prescribed circumstances to the earnings factor of another tax year.
- (4) The amount of a Class 3 contribution in respect of a tax year earlier than the tax year in which it is paid shall be the same as if it had been paid in the earlier year and in respect of that year, unless it falls to be calculated in accordance with subsection (6) below or regulations under subsection (7) below.
- (5) In this section—
  - “the payment year” means the tax year in which a contribution is paid; and
  - “the contribution year” means the earlier year mentioned in subsection (4) above.
- (6) Subject to subsection (7) below, in any case where—
  - (a) a Class 3 contribution is paid after the end of the next tax year but one following the contribution year; and
  - (b) the amount of a Class 3 contribution applicable had the contribution been paid in the contribution year differs from the amount of a Class 3 contribution applicable at the time of payment in the payment year,
 the amount of the contribution shall be computed by reference to the highest of those two amounts and of any other amount of a Class 3 contribution in the intervening period.
- (7) The [<sup>F168</sup>Treasury] may by regulations provide that the amount of a contribution which apart from the regulations would fall to be computed in accordance with subsection (6) above shall instead be computed by reference to the amount of a Class 3 contribution for a tax year earlier than the payment year but not earlier than the contribution year.

### Textual Amendments

**F164** Words in s. 13(1) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999](#) (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 14(2)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

**F165** Sum in s. 13(1) substituted (6.4.2023) by [The Social Security \(Contributions\) \(Rates, Limits and Thresholds Amendments and National Insurance Funds Payments\) Regulations 2023](#) (S.I. 2023/236), regs. 1, **4**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F166** Word in s. 13(2) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 4**
- F167** Words in s. 13(3) substituted (1.4.1999) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 14(3)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F168** Word in s. 13(7) substituted (1.4.1999) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 14(4)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C13** S. 13(1): power to amend conferred (1.7.1992) by Social Security Administration Act 1992 (c. 5), **ss. 141(4), 192(4)**.
- C14** S. 13(1): power to amend conferred (1.7.1992) by Social Security Administration Act 1992 (c. 5), **ss. 143(1)(4), 192(4)**.
- C15** S. 13(1): power to amend conferred (1.7.1992) by Social Security Administration Act 1992 (c. 5), **ss. 145(4)(b), 192(4)**.
- C16** S. 13(6) excluded (5.4.2023) by S.I. 2001/1004, **reg. 50C(6A)** (as inserted by The Social Security (Contributions) (Amendment No. 3) Regulations 2023 (S.I. 2023/309), regs. 1, **3(2)**)
- C17** S. 13(6) excluded (5.4.2023) by S.I. 2001/1004, **reg. 65BA(2)(4)** (as inserted by The Social Security (Contributions) (Amendment No. 3) Regulations 2023 (S.I. 2023/309), regs. 1, **4(1)**)

[<sup>F169</sup> **13A Right to pay additional Class 3 contributions in certain cases** **E+W+S**]

- (1) An eligible person is entitled, if he so wishes, but subject to any conditions prescribed by regulations made by the Treasury and to the following provisions of this section, to pay Class 3 contributions in respect of a missing year.
- (2) A missing year is a tax year not earlier than 1975-76 in respect of which the person would under regulations under section 13 be entitled to pay Class 3 contributions but for a limit on the time within which contributions may be paid in respect of that year.
- (3) A person is not entitled to pay contributions in respect of more than 6 tax years under this section.
- (4) A person is not entitled to pay any contribution under this section after the end of 6 years beginning with the day on which he attains pensionable age.
- (5) A person is an eligible person if the following conditions are satisfied.
- (6) The first condition is that the person attained or will attain pensionable age in the period—
  - (a) beginning with 6th April 2008, and
  - (b) ending with 5th April 2015.
- (7) The second condition is that there are at least 20 tax years each of which is a year to which subsection (8) or (10) applies.
- (8) This subsection applies if—
  - (a) the year is one in respect of which the person has paid or been credited with contributions that are of a relevant class for the purposes of paragraph 5 or 5A of Schedule 3 or been credited (in the case of 1987-88 or any subsequent year) with earnings, and
  - (b) in the case of that year, the earnings factor derived as mentioned in subsection (9) is not less than the qualifying earnings factor for that year.
- (9) For the purposes of subsection (8)(b) the earnings factor—
  - (a) in the case of 1987-88 or any subsequent year, is that which is derived from—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) so much of the person's earnings as did not exceed the upper earnings limit and upon which such of the contributions mentioned in subsection (8)(a) as are primary Class 1 contributions were paid or treated as paid or earnings credited, and
    - (ii) any Class 2 or Class 3 contributions for the year, or
  - (b) in the case of any earlier year, is that which is derived from the contributions mentioned in subsection (8)(a).
- (10) This subsection applies (in the case of a person who attained or will attain pensionable age before 6th April 2010) if the year is one in which the person was precluded from regular employment by responsibilities at home within the meaning of regulations under paragraph 5(7) of Schedule 3.
- (11) The third condition applies only if the person attained or will attain pensionable age before 6th April 2010.
- (12) That condition is that—
- (a) the person has, in respect of any one tax year before that in which he attains pensionable age, actually paid contributions that are of a relevant class for the purposes of paragraph 5 of Schedule 3, and
  - (b) in the case of that year, the earnings factor derived as mentioned in subsection (13) is not less than the qualifying earnings factor for that year.
- (13) For the purposes of subsection (12)(b) the earnings factor—
- (a) in the case of 1987-88 or any subsequent year, is that which is derived from—
    - (i) so much of the person's earnings as did not exceed the upper earnings limit and upon which such of the contributions mentioned in subsection (12)(a) as are primary Class 1 contributions were paid or treated as paid, and
    - (ii) any Class 2 or Class 3 contributions for the year, or
  - (b) in the case of any earlier year, is that which is derived from the contributions mentioned in subsection (12)(a).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F169** S. 13A inserted (6.4.2009) by [Pensions Act 2008 \(c. 30\)](#), ss. 135(2), 149(4)

## 14 Restriction on right to pay Class 3 contributions. **E+W+S**

- (1) No person shall be entitled to pay a Class 3 contribution in respect of any tax year if his earnings factor, or the aggregate of his earnings factors, for that year derived—
- (a) in the case of 1987-88 or any subsequent year, from earnings upon which Class 1 contributions have been paid or treated as paid or from Class 2 contributions actually paid; or
  - (b) in the case of any earlier year, from contributions actually paid,
- is equal to or exceeds the qualifying earnings factor for that year; and regulations may provide for precluding the payment of Class 3 contributions in other cases.
- (2) Regulations may provide for the repayment of Class 3 contributions that have been paid in cases where their payment was precluded by, or by regulations made under, subsection (1) above.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(3) Contributions repayable by virtue of regulations under subsection (2) above shall, for the purpose of determining the contributor's entitlement to any benefit, be treated as not having been paid (but nothing in this subsection shall be taken to imply that any other repayable contributions are to be treated for the purposes of benefit as having been paid).

[<sup>F170</sup>(4) Where primary Class 1 contributions have been paid or treated as paid on any part of a person's earnings, subsection (1)(a) above shall have effect as if such contributions had been paid or treated as paid on so much of those earnings as did not exceed the upper earnings limit.]

[<sup>F171</sup>(5) Regulations under subsection (1) or (2) above shall be made by the Treasury.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F170** S. 14(4) inserted (6.4.1999) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 59](#); S.I. 1999/418, art. 2(2)(3)(a)

**F171** S. 14(5) inserted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(3), [Sch. 3 para. 15](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 3-6)

#### [<sup>F172</sup>Class 3A contributions

#### Textual Amendments

**F172** [Ss. 14A-14C](#) and cross-heading inserted (1.10.2014 for specified purposes, 12.10.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), [Sch. 15 para. 3](#) (with [Sch. 15 para. 4](#)); S.I. 2014/2377, art. 2(1)(a)(ii)(3)(d)(i); S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)

### 14A Class 3A contributions in return for units of additional pension **U.K.**

[<sup>F173</sup>(1) An eligible person is entitled to pay a Class 3A contribution before the cut-off date, in return for a unit of additional pension.

(1A) The cut-off date is—

- (a) 5th April 2017, or
- (b) if later the end of the 30-day period beginning with the day on which the person is sent information about Class 3A contributions by Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs in response to a request made before 6th April 2017.]

(2) A person is eligible to pay a Class 3A contribution if the person—

- (a) is entitled to a Category A, Category B or Category D retirement pension or graduated retirement benefit, or
- (b) has deferred entitlement to a Category A or Category B retirement pension or graduated retirement benefit.

(3) The amount of a Class 3A contribution needed to obtain a unit of additional pension is to be determined in accordance with regulations made by the Treasury.

(4) Before making those regulations the Treasury must consult the Government Actuary or the Deputy Government Actuary.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

**Changes to legislation:** Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) A person—
- (a) may pay Class 3A contributions on more than one occasion, but
  - (b) may not obtain more than the maximum number of units of additional pension.
- (6) The maximum number of units of additional pension that a person may obtain is to be specified by the Treasury in regulations.
- (7) In this section “deferred”, in relation to graduated retirement benefit, has the meaning given by section 36(4A) of the National Insurance Act 1965.
- (8) For the meaning of “deferred” in relation to a Category A or Category B retirement pension, see section 55(3) of this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F173** S. 14A(1)(1A) substituted for s. 14A(1) (12.10.2015) by [The Social Security Class 3A Contributions \(Amendment\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/2746\)](#), regs. 1(2), 2

#### 14B Class 3A contributions: repayment **U.K.**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations provide for a Class 3A contribution to be repaid in specified circumstances.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may, in particular, make provision about applications for repayments and other procedural matters.
- (3) A person is to be treated as never having had a unit of additional pension if the Class 3A contribution paid in respect of it is repaid.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (1) may provide for benefits paid to a person because of the unit of additional pension to be recovered by deducting them from the repayment.

#### 14C Class 3A contributions: power to change eligibility or remove the option to pay **U.K.**

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations change who is eligible to pay Class 3A contributions.
- (2) The Treasury may by regulations remove the option for people to pay Class 3A contributions.
- (3) Regulations under this section may, in particular, amend an Act.]

#### *Class 4 contributions*

#### 15 Class 4 contributions recoverable under the Income Tax Acts. **E+W+S**

- (1) Class 4 contributions shall be payable for any tax year in respect of all [<sup>F174</sup>profits] which—
  - (a) are immediately derived from the carrying on or exercise of one or more trades, professions or vocations, <sup>F175</sup>...

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) [<sup>F176</sup>are profits chargeable to income tax under Chapter 2 of Part 2 of the Income Tax (Trading and Other Income) Act 2005] for the year of assessment corresponding to that tax year [<sup>F177</sup>and
  - (c) are not profits of a trade, profession or vocation carried on wholly outside the United Kingdom.]
- (2) Class 4 contributions in respect of profits <sup>F178</sup>... shall be payable—
- (a) in the same manner as any income tax which is, or would be, chargeable in respect of those profits <sup>F178</sup>... (whether or not income tax in fact falls to be paid), and
  - (b) by the person on whom the income tax is (or would be) charged,
- in accordance with assessments made from time to time under the Income Tax Acts.
- [<sup>F179</sup>(3) The amount of a Class 4 contribution under this section for any tax year is equal to the aggregate of—
- (a) the main Class 4 percentage of so much of the profits <sup>F180</sup>... referred to in subsection (1) above (computed in accordance with Schedule 2 to this Act) as exceeds [<sup>F181</sup>£12,570] but does not exceed [<sup>F182</sup>£50,270]; and
  - (b) the additional Class 4 percentage of so much of those profits <sup>F180</sup>... as exceeds [<sup>F182</sup>£50,270];
- but the figures specified in this subsection are subject to alteration under section 141 of the Administration Act.
- (3ZA) For the purposes of this Act—
- (a) the main Class 4 percentage is [<sup>F183</sup>9] per cent; and
  - (b) the additional Class 4 percentage is [<sup>F184</sup>2] per cent;
- but the main Class 4 percentage is subject to alteration under section 143 of the Administration Act.]
- [<sup>F185</sup>(3A) Where income tax is (or would be) charged on a member of a limited liability partnership in respect of profits <sup>F186</sup>... arising from the carrying on of a trade or profession by the limited liability partnership, Class 4 contributions shall be payable by him if they would be payable were the trade or profession carried on in partnership by the members.]
- <sup>F187</sup>(4) .....
- (5) For the purposes of this section the year of assessment which corresponds to a tax year is the year of assessment (within the meaning of the Tax Acts) which consists of the same period as that tax year.

#### Textual Amendments

- F174** Word in s. 15(1) substituted (6.4.2005 with effect in accordance with s. 883(1) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Trading and Other Income\) Act 2005 \(c. 5\), s. 883\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 420\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 2](#))
- F175** Word in s. 15(1) repealed (6.4.2005 with effect in accordance with s. 883(1) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Trading and Other Income\) Act 2005 \(c. 5\), s. 883\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 420\(2\)\(b\), Sch. 3](#) (with [Sch. 2](#))
- F176** Words in s. 15(1)(b) substituted (6.4.2005 with effect in accordance with s. 883(1) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Trading and Other Income\) Act 2005 \(c. 5\), s. 883\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 420\(2\)\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 2](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F177** S. 15(1)(c) and preceding word inserted (6.4.2005 with effect in accordance with s. 883(1) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Trading and Other Income\) Act 2005 \(c. 5\), s. 883\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 420\(2\)\(d\)](#) (with Sch. 2)
- F178** Words in s. 15(2) repealed (6.4.2005 with effect in accordance with s. 883(1) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Trading and Other Income\) Act 2005 \(c. 5\), s. 883\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 420\(3\), Sch. 3](#) (with Sch. 2)
- F179** S. 15(3)(3ZA) substituted for s. 15(3) (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), ss. 3\(1\), 8\(2\)](#)
- F180** Words in s. 15(3) repealed (6.4.2005 with effect in accordance with s. 883(1) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Trading and Other Income\) Act 2005 \(c. 5\), s. 883\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 420\(3\), Sch. 3](#) (with Sch. 2)
- F181** Sum in s. 15(3)(a) substituted (6.4.2023) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Increase of Thresholds\) Act 2022 \(c. 16\), s. 2\(3\)\(4\)](#)
- F182** Sum in s. 15(3) substituted (6.4.2021) by [The Social Security \(Contributions\) \(Rates, Limits and Thresholds Amendments and National Insurance Funds Payments\) Regulations 2021 \(S.I. 2021/157\), regs. 1, 5\(2\)](#)
- F183** Figure in s. 15(3ZA)(a) substituted (6.4.2011) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2011 \(c. 3\), ss. 2\(1\)\(a\), 13\(1\)](#)
- F184** Figure in s. 15(3ZA)(b) substituted (6.4.2011) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2011 \(c. 3\), ss. 2\(1\)\(b\), 13\(1\)](#)
- F185** S. 15(3A) inserted (6.4.2001) by [Limited Liability Partnerships Act 2000 \(c. 12\), ss. 13, 19\(1\); S.I. 2000/3316, art. 2](#)
- F186** Words in s. 15(3A) repealed (6.4.2005 with effect in accordance with s. 883(1) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Trading and Other Income\) Act 2005 \(c. 5\), s. 883\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 420\(3\), Sch. 3](#) (with Sch. 2)
- F187** S. 15(4) repealed (6.4.2005 with effect in accordance with s. 883(1) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Trading and Other Income\) Act 2005 \(c. 5\), s. 883\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 420\(4\), Sch. 3](#) (with Sch. 2)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C18** S. 15(3): power to amend conferred (1.7.1992) by [Social Security Administration Act 1992 \(c. 5\), ss. 141\(4\), 192\(4\)](#)
- C19** S. 15(3ZA)(a): power to amend conferred (1.7.1992) by [Social Security Administration Act 1992 \(c. 5\), ss. 143\(1\)\(4\), 192\(4\)](#)

## **16 Application of Income Tax Acts and destination of Class 4 contributions. U.K.**

- (1) All the provisions of the Income Tax Acts, including in particular—
- (a) provisions as to assessment, collection, repayment and recovery, and
  - <sup>F188</sup>(b) the provisions of Part VA (payment of tax) and Part X (penalties) of the Taxes Management Act 1970,<sup>F189</sup> and
  - (c) the provisions of Schedules 55 and 56 to the Finance Act 2009 <sup>F190</sup>and of Schedule 38 to the Finance Act 2012,<sup>F191</sup> and
  - (d) the provisions of Part 4 (follower notices and accelerated payments) and Part 5 (promoters of tax avoidance schemes) of the Finance Act 2014,<sup>F192</sup> and
  - (e) the provisions of Schedule 18 to the Finance Act 2016 (serial tax avoidance),]
- shall, with the necessary modifications, apply in relation to Class 4 contributions under this Act and the Northern Ireland Contributions and Benefits Act as if those contributions were income tax chargeable under <sup>F193</sup>Chapter 2 of Part 2 of the Income Tax (Trading and Other Income) Act 2005 in respect of the profits of a trade, profession or vocation which is not carried on wholly outside the United Kingdom].

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Subsection (1) above is subject to any provision made by or under—
- (a) sections 17(3) and (4) and 18 below;
  - (b) sections 17(3) and (4) and 18 of the Northern Ireland Contributions and Benefits Act; and
  - (c) Schedule 2 to this Act.
- (3) Schedule 2 to this Act has effect for the application or modification, in relation to Class 4 contributions under this Act and the Northern Ireland Contributions and Benefits Act, of certain provisions of the Income Tax Acts, and the exclusion of other provisions, and generally with respect to the contributions.

<sup>F194</sup>(4) .....

<sup>F195</sup>(5) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F188** S. 16(1)(b) substituted (6.4.1996 with effect in accordance with s. 196 of the amending Act) by [Finance Act 1994 \(c. 9\)](#), **Sch. 19 para. 45**
- F189** S. 16(1)(c) and word inserted (1.4.2011) by [The Finance Act 2009, Schedules 55 and 56 \(Income Tax Self Assessment and Pension Schemes\) \(Appointed Days and Consequential and Savings Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/702\)](#), **art. 13** (with arts. 20, 22)
- F190** Words in s. 16(1)(c) inserted (1.4.2013) by [Finance Act 2012 \(c. 14\)](#), **Sch. 38 para. 53**; S.I. 2013/279, **art. 2**
- F191** S. 16(1)(d) and word inserted (12.4.2015) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), **Sch. 2 paras. 32, 33(1)**
- F192** S. 16(1)(e) and word inserted (with effect in relation to relevant defeats incurred after 15.9.2016 in accordance with Sch. 18 para. 63 of the amending Act) by [Finance Act 2016 \(c. 24\)](#), **Sch. 18 para. 61(3)**
- F193** Words in s. 16(1) substituted (6.4.2005 with effect in accordance with s. 883(1) of the amending Act) by [Income Tax \(Trading and Other Income\) Act 2005 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 883(1), **Sch. 1 para. 421** (with Sch. 2)
- F194** S. 16(4) omitted (1.4.1999) by virtue of [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(3), Sch. 3 para. 16, **Sch. 10 Pt. 1**; S.I. 1999/527, **art. 2(b)**, Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F195** S. 16(5) repealed (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\)](#), ss. 7, 8(2), **Sch. 2**

## 17 Exceptions, deferment and incidental matters relating to Class 4 contributions. **E+W+S**

- (1) [<sup>F196</sup>The Inland Revenue may by regulations] provide—
- (a) for excepting persons from liability to pay Class 4 contributions<sup>[F197]</sup>, or any prescribed part of such contributions,] in accordance with sections 15 and 16(1) to (3) above; or
  - (b) for deferring any person's liability,
- <sup>F198</sup> ...
- (2) Exception from liability, or deferment, under subsection (1) above may, in particular, be by reference—
- (a) to a person otherwise liable for contributions being under a prescribed age at the beginning of a tax year;
  - (b) to a person having attained pensionable age;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) to a person being in receipt of earnings in respect of which primary Class 1 contributions are, or may be, payable; or
  - (d) to a person not satisfying prescribed conditions as to residence or presence in the United Kingdom.
- (3) [<sup>F199</sup>The Inland Revenue may by regulations] provide for any incidental matters arising out of the payment of any Class 4 contributions recovered by the Inland Revenue, including in particular the return, in whole or in part, of such contributions in cases where—
- (a) payment has been made in error; or
  - (b) repayment ought for any other reason to be made.
- (4) [<sup>F199</sup>The Inland Revenue may by regulations] provide for any matters arising out of the deferment of liability [<sup>F200</sup>to pay Class 4 contributions, or any part of such contributions,] under subsection (1) above, including in particular provision for the amount of a person's profits or gains (as computed in accordance with Schedule 2 to this Act) to be certified by the Inland Revenue to <sup>F201</sup>... the person liable.

<sup>F202</sup>(5) .....

<sup>F203</sup>(6) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F196** Words in s. 17(1) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 17\(2\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F197** Words in s. 17(1) inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), s. 8\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(2\)](#)
- F198** Words in s.17(1) repealed (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(2\)\(a\), Sch. 1 para. 6\(a\), Sch. 10 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F199** Words in s. 17(3)(4) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 17\(3\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F200** Words in s. 17(4) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), s. 8\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(3\)](#)
- F201** Words in s.17(4) repealed (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(2\)\(a\), Sch. 1 para. 6\(b\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F202** S. 17(5) repealed (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), ss. 7, 8\(2\), Sch. 2](#)
- F203** S. 17(6) ceases to have effect (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 17\(4\), Sch. 10 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

## 18 Class 4 contributions recoverable under regulations. **E+W+S**

- (1) [<sup>F204</sup>The Inland Revenue may by regulations make provision] so that where—
- (a) an earner, in respect of any one or more employments of his, is treated by regulations under section 2(2)(b) above as being self-employed; and
  - (b) in any tax year he has earnings from any such employment (one or more) which fall within paragraph (b)(i) of [<sup>F205</sup>subsection (8)] of section 11 above

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

but is not liable for a higher weekly rate of Class 2 contributions by virtue of regulations under that subsection; and

(c) the total of those earnings exceeds [<sup>F206</sup>£12,570],

he is to be liable, in respect of those earnings, to pay a Class 4 contribution <sup>F207</sup>....

[<sup>F208</sup>(1A) The amount of a Class 4 contribution payable by virtue of regulations under this section is equal to the aggregate of—

(a) the main Class 4 percentage of so much of the total of the earnings referred to in subsection (1)(b) above as exceeds [<sup>F209</sup>£12,570] but does not exceed [<sup>F210</sup>£50,270]; and

(b) the additional Class 4 percentage of so much of that total as exceeds [<sup>F210</sup>£50,270];

but the figures specified in this subsection are subject to alteration under section 141 of the Administration Act.]

(2) [<sup>F211</sup>In relation to Class 4 contributions payable by virtue of regulations under this section], [<sup>F212</sup>regulations made by the Inland Revenue may]—

(a) apply any of the provisions of Schedule 1 to this Act (except a provision conferring power to make regulations); and

(b) make any such provision as may be made by regulations under that Schedule, except paragraph 6 [<sup>F213</sup>or 7BZA].

#### Textual Amendments

**F204** Words in s. 18(1) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 18\(2\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

**F205** Words in s. 18(1)(b) substituted (with effect for the tax year 2015-16 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\), Sch. 1 paras. 5, 36](#)

**F206** Sum in s. 18(1)(c) substituted (6.4.2023) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Increase of Thresholds\) Act 2022 \(c. 16\), s. 2\(3\)\(4\)](#)

**F207** Words in s. 18(1) repealed (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), ss. 7, 8\(2\), Sch. 2](#)

**F208** S. 18(1A) inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), ss. 3\(3\), 8\(2\)](#)

**F209** Sum in s. 18(1A)(a) substituted (6.4.2023) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Increase of Thresholds\) Act 2022 \(c. 16\), s. 2\(3\)\(4\)](#)

**F210** Sum in s. 18(1A) substituted (6.4.2021) by [The Social Security \(Contributions\) \(Rates, Limits and Thresholds Amendments and National Insurance Funds Payments\) Regulations 2021 \(S.I. 2021/157\), regs. 1, 5\(2\)](#)

**F211** Words in s. 18(2) substituted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(2\)\(a\), Sch. 1 para. 7](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

**F212** Words in s. 18(2) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 18\(3\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

**F213** Words in s. 18(2)(b) inserted (1.9.2004) by [National Insurance Contributions and Statutory Payments Act 2004 \(c. 3\), s. 13, Sch. 1 para. 1\(3\)](#); S.I. 2004/1943, art. 5(a)(i)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C20** S. 18(1): power to amend conferred (1.7.1992) by [Social Security Administration Act 1992 \(c. 5\), ss. 141\(5\), 192\(4\)](#)



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F214</sup>18A Class 4 contributions: partnerships U.K.]

- (1) The Treasury may by regulations—
  - (a) modify the way in which liabilities for Class 4 contributions of a partner in a firm are determined, or
  - (b) otherwise modify the law relating to Class 4 contributions,
 as they consider appropriate to take account of the passing or making of a provision of the Income Tax Acts relating to firms or partners in firms.
- (2) “Firm” has the same meaning as in the Income Tax (Trading and Other Income) Act 2005 (and includes a limited liability partnership in relation to which section 863(1) of that Act applies); and “partner” is to be read accordingly and includes a former partner.
- (3) Regulations under this section may have retrospective effect; but they may not have effect before the beginning of the tax year in which they are made.]

### Textual Amendments

**F214** S. 18A inserted (13.5.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\)](#), s. 13(2)(7)

### General

## 19 General power to regulate liability for contributions. E+W+S

- (1) Regulations may provide either generally or in relation to—
  - (a) any prescribed category of earners; or
  - (b) earners in any prescribed category of employments,
 that their liability in a particular tax year in respect of contributions of prescribed classes [<sup>F215</sup>, or any prescribed part of such contributions,] is not to exceed such maximum amount or amounts as may be prescribed.
- (2) Regulations made for the purposes of subsection (1) above may provide—
  - (a) for an earner whose liability is subject to a maximum prescribed under that subsection to be liable in the first instance for the full amount of any contributions due from him apart from the regulations, or to be relieved from liability for such contributions in prescribed circumstances and to the prescribed extent; and
  - (b) for contributions paid in excess of any such maximum to be repaid at such times, and in accordance with such conditions, as may be prescribed.
- (3) Regulations may provide, in relation to earners otherwise liable for contributions of any class [<sup>F216</sup> or any part of such contributions], for excepting them from the liability for such periods, and in such circumstances, as may be prescribed.
- (4) As respects any woman who was married or a widow on 6th April 1977 (the date of the coming into force of the repeal of the old provisions that primary Class 1 contributions might be paid at a reduced rate and Class 2 contributions need not be paid by a married woman or a widow) regulations shall provide—
  - (a) for enabling her to elect that [<sup>F217</sup> so much of her liability in respect of primary Class 1 contributions as is attributable to section 8(1)(a) above] shall be a liability to contribute at such reduced rate as may be prescribed; and



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) either for enabling her to elect that her liability in respect of Class 2 contributions shall be a liability to contribute at such reduced rate as may be prescribed or for enabling her to elect that she shall be under no liability to pay such contributions; and
  - (c) for enabling her to revoke any such election.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (4) above may—
- (a) provide for the making or revocation of any election under the regulations to be subject to prescribed exceptions and conditions;
  - (b) preclude a person who has made such an election from paying Class 3 contributions while the election has effect;
  - (c) provide for treating an election made or revoked for the purpose of any provision of the regulations as made or revoked also for the purpose of any other provision of the regulations;
  - (d) provide for treating an election made in accordance with regulations under section 130(2) of the 1975 Act as made for the purpose of regulations under subsection (4) above.

[<sup>F218</sup>(5A) Regulations under any of subsections (1) to (5) above shall be made by the Treasury.]

- (6) [<sup>F219</sup>The Secretary of State may by regulations] provide for earnings factors to be derived, for such purposes as may be prescribed, as follows, that is to say—
- (a) in the case of earnings factors for 1987-88 or any subsequent tax year—
    - (i) from earnings upon which primary Class 1 contributions are paid at a reduced rate by virtue of regulations under subsection (4) above; or
    - (ii) from Class 2 contributions paid at a reduced rate by virtue of such regulations; and
  - (b) in the case of earnings factors for any earlier tax year, from contributions which are paid at a reduced rate by virtue of regulations under subsection (4) above;

and if provision is made for a person to have earnings factors so derived for the purpose of establishing entitlement to any benefit, the regulations may, in relation to that person, vary or add to the requirements for entitlement to that benefit.

#### Textual Amendments

- F215** Words in s. 19(1) inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), s. 8\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 5\(2\)](#)
- F216** Words in s. 19(3) inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), s. 8\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 5\(3\)](#)
- F217** Words in s. 19(4)(a) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), s. 8\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 5\(4\)](#)
- F218** S. 19(5A) inserted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 19\(2\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F219** Words in s. 19(6) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 19\(3\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

[<sup>F220</sup>19A Class 1, 1A or 1B contributions paid in error **E+W+S**

- (1) This section applies where—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) payments by way of Class 1, Class 1A or Class 1B contributions are made in respect of earnings paid to or for the benefit of an earner (or in respect of a benefit made available to an earner) in 1998-99 or a subsequent tax year (“year 1”);
  - (b) the payments are made in error, in that the employment from which the earnings are derived (or by reason of which the benefit is made available) is not employed earner’s employment; and
  - (c) the person making the payments has not been notified of the error by the <sup>[F221]</sup>Inland Revenue] before the end of the tax year following year 1 (“year 2”).
- (2) After the end of year 2 the earner shall, except in such circumstances as may be prescribed, be treated for all purposes relating to—
- (a) contributions and contributory benefits; and
  - (b) statutory sick pay and statutory maternity pay,
- as if the earnings were derived from (or the benefit were made available by reason of) employed earner’s employment.

[ Regulations under subsection (2) above shall be made by the Treasury.]

<sup>F222</sup>(3)

#### Textual Amendments

**F220** S. 19A inserted (4.3.1999 for specified purposes, 6.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 54**, 87(2); S.I. 1999/526, art. 2(1)(2)(a)

**F221** Words in s. 19A(1)(c) substituted (4.3.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(3), **Sch. 9 para. 4**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(a)(b), Schs. 1, 2 (with arts. 3-6)

**F222** S. 19A(3) inserted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 20**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

#### <sup>F223</sup>19B Extended meaning of “benefit” etc in Part 1 **E+W+S**

In this Part references to “benefit” or “contributory benefit” include benefit under Part 1 of the Pensions Act 2014.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F223** S. 19B inserted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 5**

## PART II **E+W+S**

### CONTRIBUTORY BENEFITS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C21** Pt. 2 modified (E.W.S.) (11.11.1999 for specified purposes, 1.12.2000 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 49**, 89(5)(a); S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), Sch. Pt. IV

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C22** Pt. 2: power to modify conferred (11.11.1999) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), ss. [52\(1\)\(2\)\(6\)\(h\)](#), [89\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with s. [52\(7\)](#))

### Preliminary

## 20 Descriptions of contributory benefits. **E+W+S**

(1) Contributory benefits under this Part of this Act are of the following descriptions, namely—

- <sup>F224</sup>(a) .....
- [<sup>F225</sup>(b) incapacity benefit, comprising—
  - (i) short-term incapacity benefit, and
  - (ii) long-term incapacity benefit;]
- (d) maternity allowance <sup>F226</sup> ... ;
- (e) widow’s benefit, comprising—
  - <sup>F227</sup>(i) .....
  - (ii) widowed mother’s allowance <sup>F228</sup> ... ;
  - (iii) widow’s pension;
- [<sup>F229</sup>(ea) widowed parent's allowance;]
- (f) retirement pensions of the following categories—
  - (i) Category A, payable to a person by virtue of his own contributions (with increase for adult <sup>F230</sup> ... dependants); and
  - [<sup>F231</sup>(ii) Category B, payable to a person by virtue of the contributions of a spouse <sup>F228</sup> ... [<sup>F232</sup>or civil partner]]
- [<sup>F233</sup>(fa) shared additional pensions;]
- (g) for existing beneficiaries only, child’s special allowance.

(2) In this Act—

“long-term benefit” means—

- (a) [<sup>F234</sup>long-term incapacity benefit;]
- (b) a widowed mother’s allowance;
- (ba) [<sup>F235</sup>a widowed parent’s allowance;]
- (bb) <sup>F236</sup> .....
- (c) a widow’s pension; and
- (d) a Category A or Category B retirement pension
- (e) [<sup>F237</sup>a shared additional pension;]; and

“short-term benefit” means—

- (a) <sup>F238</sup> .....
- (b) [<sup>F239</sup>short-term incapacity benefit; and]
- (c) maternity allowance.

(3) The provisions of this Part of this Act are subject to the provisions of [<sup>F240</sup>Chapter II of Part III of the Pensions Act [<sup>F241</sup>(reduction in benefits for members of schemes that were contracted-out)]].

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F224** S. 20(1)(a) repealed (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F225** S. 20(1)(b) substituted for s. 20(1)(b)(c) (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 2(2)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F226** Words in s. 20(1)(d) repealed (6.4.2010) by [Welfare Reform Act 2009 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 58(2)(a), 61(2), **Sch. 7 Pt. 2**
- F227** S. 20(1)(e)(i) repealed (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), Sch. 8 para. 3(2)(a), **Sch. 13 Pt. 5**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. I
- F228** Words in s. 20(1) repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, **Sch. 6**; S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, Sch. (with art. 3)
- F229** S. 20(1)(ea) substituted (6.4.2017) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 3(2)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F230** Words in s. 20(1)(f)(i) repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, **Sch. 6**; S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, Sch. (with art. 3)
- F231** S. 20(1)(f)(ii) substituted (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 21(1)**
- F232** Words in s. 20(1)(f)(ii) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 13**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F233** S. 20(1)(fa) inserted (1.12.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), **Sch. 12 para. 15(2)**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), Sch. Pt. 4
- F234** Words in s. 20(2) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 2(3)(a)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F235** Words in s. 20(2) inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 3(3)**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. I
- F236** Words in s. 20(2) omitted (6.4.2017) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 3(3)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F237** Words in s. 20(2) inserted (1.12.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), **Sch. 12 para. 15(3)**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), Sch. Pt. 4
- F238** Words in s. 20(2) repealed (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F239** Words in s. 20(2) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 2(3)(b)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F240** Words in s. 20(3) substituted (7.2.1994) by [Pension Schemes Act 1993 \(c. 48\)](#), s. 193(2), **Sch. 8 para. 35** (with s. 189. Schs. 6, 9); S.I. 1994/86
- F241** Words in s. 20(3) substituted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), **Sch. 13 para. 53**

## 21 Contribution conditions. **E+W+S**

- (1) Entitlement to any of the benefits specified in section 20(1) above, [<sup>F242</sup>other than [<sup>F243</sup>short-term incapacity benefit under subsection (1)(b) of section 30A below,] long-term incapacity benefit under [<sup>F243</sup>subsection (5) of that section]]<sup>F244</sup>, maternity allowance under section 35 [<sup>F245</sup>or 35B] below] or short-term or long-term incapacity benefit under section 40 or 41 below]]<sup>F246</sup> or a shared additional pension under section 55A [<sup>F247</sup>or 55AA] below], depends on contribution conditions being satisfied (either by the claimant or by some other person, according to the particular benefit).
- (2) The class or classes of contribution which, for the purposes of subsection (1) above, are relevant in relation to each of those benefits are as follows—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

**Changes to legislation:** Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*SHORT-TERM BENEFIT*

F248	F248
...	...
[ <sup>F249</sup> Short-term incapacity benefit under section [ <sup>F250</sup> 30A(1)(a)] below]	Class 1 or 2
F251	F251
...	...

*OTHER BENEFITS*

F252	F252
...	...
Widowed mother’s allowance	Class 1, 2 or 3
[ <sup>F253</sup> Widowed parent’s allowance	Class 1, 2 or 3]
F252	F252
...	...
Widow’s pension	Class 1, 2 or 3
Category A retirement pension	Class 1, 2 or 3
Category B retirement pension	Class 1, 2 or 3
Child’s special allowance	Class 1, 2 or 3

(3) The relevant contribution conditions in relation to the benefits specified in subsection (2) above are those specified in Part I of Schedule 3 to this Act.

<sup>F254</sup>(4) .....

(5) In subsection (4) above and Schedule 3 to this Act—

- (a) “the contributor concerned”, for the purposes of any contribution condition, means the person by whom the condition is to be satisfied;
- (b) “a relevant class”, in relation to any benefit, means a class of contributions specified in relation to that benefit in subsection (2) above;
- (c) “the earnings factor”—
  - (i) where the year in question is 1987-88 or any subsequent tax year, means, in relation to a person, the aggregate of his earnings factors derived from [<sup>F255</sup>so much of his earnings as did not exceed the upper earnings limit and] upon which primary Class 1 contributions have been paid or treated as paid and from his Class 2 and Class 3 contributions; and
  - (ii) where the year in question is any earlier tax year, means, in relation to a person’s contributions of any class or classes, the aggregate of his earnings factors derived from all those contributions;
- (d) except in the expression “benefit year”, “year” means a tax year.

[<sup>F256</sup>(5A) Where primary Class 1 contributions have been paid or treated as paid on any part of a person’s earnings, the following provisions, namely—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) subsection (5)(c) above;
- (b) sections 22(1)(a) [<sup>F257</sup>, (2A)] and (3)(a), 23(3)(a), 24(2)(a), [<sup>F258</sup>44(6)(za) and (a)]<sup>F259</sup> ... below; and
- (c) paragraphs 2(4)(a) and (5)(a), 4(2)(a), 5(2)(b) and (4)(a) [<sup>F260</sup>, 5A(3)(a)] and 7(4)(a) of Schedule 3 to this Act,

shall have effect as if such contributions had been paid or treated as paid on so much of the earnings as did not exceed the upper earnings limit.]

- (6) In this Part of this Act “benefit year” means a period—
  - (a) beginning with the first Sunday in January in any calendar year, and
  - (b) ending with the Saturday immediately preceding the first Sunday in January in the following calendar year;

but for any prescribed purposes of this Part of this Act “benefit year” may by regulations be made to mean such other period (whether or not a period of 12 months) as may be specified in the regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

- F242** Words in s. 21(1) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), [Sch. 1 para. 3\(2\)](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F243** Words in s. 21(1) inserted (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(a\)](#); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(e)(4)(5)
- F244** Words in s. 21(1) inserted (12.1.2000 for specified purposes, 2.4.2000 for all other purposes) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), [Sch. 8 para. 31\(2\)](#); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(1)(b)
- F245** Words in s. 21(1) inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Social Security \(Maternity Allowance\) \(Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/606\)](#), regs. 1(2), [2\(2\)](#)
- F246** Words in s. 21(1) inserted (1.12.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), [Sch. 12 para. 16](#); S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), Sch. Pt. IV
- F247** Words in s. 21(1) inserted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), [Sch. 11 para. 3](#)
- F248** Words in s. 21(2) table omitted (7.10.1996) by virtue of [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), [Sch. 3](#); S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F249** Words in s. 21(2) table substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), [Sch. 1 para. 3\(3\)](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F250** Words in s. 21(1) substituted (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), [Sch. 8 para. 21\(b\)](#); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(e)(4)(5)
- F251** Words in s. 21(2) repealed (12.1.2000 for specified purposes, 2.4.2000 for all other purposes) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), [Sch. 8 para. 31\(3\)](#), [Sch. 13 Pt. V](#); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(1)(b)(c)
- F252** Words in s. 21(2) table omitted (6.4.2017) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), [Sch. 16 para. 4\(2\)](#); S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F253** Words in s. 21(2) inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), [Sch. 8 para. 4\(2\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. I
- F254** S. 21(4) omitted (6.4.2017) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), [Sch. 16 para. 4\(3\)](#); S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F255** Words in s. 21(5)(c)(i) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 8(2), [Sch. 1 para. 6](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F256** S. 21(5A) inserted (6.4.1999) by **Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14)**, s. 87(2), **Sch. 7 para. 60**; S.I. 1999/418, art. 2(2)(3)(a)
- F257** Word in s. 21(5A)(b) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by **Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19)**, **ss. 35(2)(a)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F258** Words in s. 21(5A)(b) substituted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by **Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19)**, **ss. 35(2)(b)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F259** Words in s. 21(5A)(b) repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by **Tax Credits Act 2002 (c. 21)**, s. 61, **Sch. 6**; S.I. 2003/962, art. 2(3)(e), **Sch. 1**
- F260** Words in s. 21(5A)(c) inserted (3.1.2012) by **Pensions Act 2008 (c. 30)**, s. 149(1), **Sch. 4 para. 2**; S.I. 2011/3033, art. 2(c)(ii)

## 22 Earnings factors. **E+W+S**

(1) A person shall, for the purposes specified in subsection (2) below, be treated as having annual earnings factors derived—

- (a) in the case of 1987-88 or any subsequent tax year, from <sup>F261</sup>so much of his earnings as did not exceed the upper earnings limit and] upon which primary Class 1 contributions have been paid or treated as paid and from Class 2 and Class 3 contributions; and
- (b) in the case of any earlier tax year, from his contributions of any of Classes 1, 2 and 3;

but subject to the following provisions of this section and those of section 23 below.

(2) The purposes referred to in subsection (1) above are those of—

- (a) establishing, by reference to the satisfaction of contribution conditions, entitlement to <sup>F262</sup>a contribution-based jobseeker's allowance<sup>F263</sup>, to a contributory employment and support allowance] or to] any benefit specified in section 20(1) above, other than maternity allowance; <sup>F264</sup>...
- (b) calculating the additional pension in the rate of a long-term benefit <sup>F265</sup>; and
- (c) establishing entitlement to a state pension under Part 1 of the Pensions Act 2014 and, where relevant, calculating the rate of a state pension under that Part]; <sup>F266</sup>and
- (d) establishing entitlement to bereavement support payment under section 30 of the Pensions Act 2014].

<sup>F267</sup>(2A) For the purposes specified in subsection (2)(b) above, in the case of the first appointed year or any subsequent tax year a person's earnings factor shall be treated as derived only from <sup>F268</sup>so much of his earnings as did not exceed <sup>F269</sup>the applicable limit] and] on which primary Class 1 contributions have been paid or treated as paid.

<sup>F270</sup>This subsection does not affect the operation of sections 44A and 44B (deemed earnings factors).]]

<sup>F271</sup>(2B) "The applicable limit" means—

- (a) in relation to a tax year before <sup>F272</sup>2009-10], the upper earnings limit;
- (b) in relation to <sup>F272</sup>2009-10] or any subsequent tax year, the upper accrual point.]

(3) Separate earnings factors may be derived for 1987-88 and subsequent tax years—



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) from earnings [<sup>F273</sup>not exceeding the upper earnings limit] upon which primary Class 1 contributions have been paid or treated as paid;
  - (b) from earnings which have been credited;
  - (c) from contributions of different classes paid or credited in the same tax year;
  - (d) by any combination of the methods mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (c) above, and may be derived for any earlier tax year from contributions of different classes paid or credited in the same tax year, and from contributions which have actually been paid, as opposed to those not paid but credited.
- (4) Subject to regulations under section 19(4) to (6) above, no earnings factor shall be derived—
- (a) for 1987-88 or any subsequent tax year, from earnings [<sup>F274</sup>in respect of which] primary Class 1 contributions are paid at the reduced rate, or
  - (b) for any earlier tax year, from primary Class 1 contributions paid at the reduced rate or from secondary Class 1 contributions.
- (5) Regulations may provide for crediting—
- (a) for 1987-88 or any subsequent tax year, earnings or Class 2 or Class 3 contributions, or
  - (b) for any earlier tax year, contributions of any class,
- for the purpose of bringing a person's earnings factor for that tax year to a figure which will enable him to satisfy contribution conditions of entitlement to [<sup>F275</sup>a contribution-based jobseeker's allowance]<sup>F276</sup>, to a contributory employment and support allowance] or to] any prescribed description of benefit (whether his own entitlement or another person's).
- [<sup>F277</sup>(5ZA) Regulations may provide for crediting—
- (a) for 1987-88 or any subsequent tax year, earnings or Class 2 or Class 3 contributions, or
  - (b) for any earlier tax year, contributions of any class,
- for the purpose of bringing an earnings factor for that tax year to a figure which will make that year a “qualifying year”, “pre-commencement qualifying year” or “post-commencement qualifying year” of a person for the purposes of Part 1 of the Pensions Act 2014 (see sections 2(4) and 4(4) of that Act).
- (5ZB) Regulations under subsection (5ZA) must provide for crediting a person with such contributions as may be specified in respect of periods on or after 6 April 1975 during which the person was—
- (a) a spouse or civil partner of a member of Her Majesty's forces,
  - (b) accompanying the member on an assignment outside the United Kingdom, and
  - (c) not of a description specified in the regulations.]
- [<sup>F278</sup>(5A) Section 23A makes provision for the crediting of Class 3 contributions for the purpose of determining entitlement to the benefits to which that section applies.]
- (6) Regulations may impose limits with respect to the earnings factors which a person may have or be treated as having in respect of any one tax year.
- (7) The <sup>M1</sup>power to amend regulations made before 30th March 1977 (the passing of the Social Security (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1977) under subsection (5) above may be so exercised as to restrict the circumstances in which and the purposes for which

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

a person is entitled to credits in respect of weeks before the coming into force of the amending regulations; but not so as to affect any benefit for a period before the coming into force of the amending regulations if it was claimed before 18th March 1977.

[<sup>F279</sup>(8) In this section, “contributory employment and support allowance” means a contributory allowance under Part 1 of the Welfare Reform Act 2007 (employment and support allowance).]

[<sup>F280</sup>(9) References in this Act or any other Act to earnings factors derived from so much of a person's earnings as do not exceed the upper accrual point or the upper earnings limit are to be read, in relation to earners paid otherwise than weekly, as references to earnings factors derived from so much of those earnings as do not exceed the prescribed equivalent.]

### Textual Amendments

- F261** Words in s. 22(1)(a) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), s. 8\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 7\(2\)](#)
- F262** Words in s. 22(2)(a) inserted (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\), s. 41\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 22; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2\(b\)](#)
- F263** Words in s. 22(2)(a) inserted (27.10.2008) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\), s. 70\(2\), Sch. 3 para. 9\(3\)\(a\); S.I. 2008/787, art. 2\(4\)\(f\)](#)
- F264** Word in s. 22(2) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\), s. 56\(4\), Sch. 12 para. 6\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F265** S. 22(2)(c) and word inserted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\), s. 56\(4\), Sch. 12 para. 6\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F266** S. 22(2)(d) and word inserted (6.4.2017) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\), s. 56\(1\), Sch. 16 para. 5; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3\(2\) \(with arts. 4, 5\)](#)
- F267** S. 22(2A) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\), ss. 30\(1\), 86\(1\)\(b\)\(2\); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2\(a\)](#)
- F268** Words in s. 22(2A) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), s. 8\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 7\(2\)](#)
- F269** Words in s. 22(2A) substituted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\), ss. 12\(1\)\(a\), 30\(3\)](#)
- F270** Words in s. 22(2A) inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\), s. 30\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 33](#)
- F271** S. 22(2B) inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\), ss. 12\(1\)\(b\), 30\(3\)](#)
- F272** Word in s. 22(2B) substituted (21.9.2008) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\), ss. 3\(2\), 6\(1\)](#)
- F273** Words in s. 22(3)(a) inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), s. 8\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 7\(3\)](#)
- F274** Words in s. 22(4) substituted (6.4.1999) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\), s. 87\(2\), Sch. 7 para. 61; S.I. 1999/418, art. 2\(2\)\(3\)\(a\)](#)
- F275** Words in s. 22(5) inserted (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\), s. 41\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 22; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2\(b\)](#)
- F276** Words in s. 22(5) inserted (18.3.2008 for specified purposes, 27.10.2008 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\), s. 70\(2\), Sch. 3 para. 9\(3\)\(b\); S.I. 2008/787, art. 2\(1\)\(4\)\(f\), Sch.](#)
- F277** [S. 22\(5ZA\)-\(5ZB\)](#) inserted (15.1.2016 for specified purposes, 6.4.2016 in so far as not already in force) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\), s. 56\(4\), Sch. 12 para. 6\(3\); S.I. 2015/2058, art. 2\(b\)](#)
- F278** S. 22(5A) inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\), s. 30\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 9](#)
- F279** S. 22(8) inserted (18.3.2008 for specified purposes, 27.10.2008 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\), s. 70\(2\), Sch. 3 para. 9\(4\); S.I. 2008/787, art. 2\(1\)\(4\)\(f\), Sch.](#)
- F280** S. 22(9) inserted (21.9.2008) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\), s. 6\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 2](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C23** S. 22(4) modified (1.6.2007) by [The Transfer of State Pensions and Benefits Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1398\)](#), regs. 1(1), **8(2)**
- C24** S. 22(4) modified (1.6.2007) by [The Transfer of State Pensions and Benefits Regulations \(Northern Ireland\) 2007 \(S.R. 2007/286\)](#), reg. 1(1)(3), **8(2)**
- C25** S. 22(5)(a): power to make regulations modified (21.5.1998) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 77, 87(2)(a)**

#### Marginal Citations

- M1** 1977 c.5.

### 23 Provisions supplemental to sections 21 and 22. **E+W+S**

- (1) Earnings factors derived as mentioned in section <sup>[F281]</sup>22(1) above, including earnings factors as increased by any order under section 148 of the Administration Act—
- (a) shall be expressed, subject to subsection (2) below, as whole numbers of pounds; and
  - (b) shall be made ascertainable from tables or rules to be drawn up by the Secretary of State and embodied in regulations.
- (2) Subsection (1) above does not require earnings factors in respect of the tax year 1978-79 or any subsequent tax year which have been revalued for the purpose of calculating guaranteed minimum pensions under the Pensions Act <sup>[F282]</sup>or the Social Security Pensions Act 1975] to be expressed as whole numbers of pounds.
- (3) The tables and rules referred to in subsection (1) above shall be drawn up so that, in general—
- (a) in respect of the tax year 1987-88 and any subsequent tax year, the amount of earnings <sup>[F283]</sup>not exceeding the upper earnings limit] upon which primary Class 1 contributions have been paid or treated as paid gives rise, subject to <sup>[F284]</sup>subsections (3A) and] (4) below, to an earnings factor for that year equal or approximating to the amount of those earnings; and
  - (b) any number of Class 2 or Class 3 contributions in respect of a tax year gives rise to an earnings factor for that tax year equal or approximating to that year's lower earnings limit for Class 1 contributions multiplied by the number of contributions.
- <sup>[F285]</sup>(3A) For the purposes specified in section 22(2)(b) (additional pension), subsection (3)(a) has effect in relation to 2009-10 and subsequent tax years as if the reference to the upper earnings limit were to the upper accrual point.]
- (4) The Secretary of State may by regulations make such modifications of subsection (3) (a) above as appear to him to be appropriate in consequence of section 8(2) above.

#### Textual Amendments

- F281** Word in s. 23(1) substituted (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), **ss. 134(1), 180(2)(a)** (with Sch. 4)
- F282** Words in s. 23(2) inserted (7.2.1994) by [Pension Schemes Act 1993 \(c. 48\)](#), s. 193(2), **Sch. 8 para. 36** (with s. 189, Schs. 6, 9); [S.I. 1994/86](#)
- F283** Words in s. 23(3)(a) inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 8**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F284** Words in s. 23(3)(a) substituted (21.9.2008) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\), s. 6\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 3\(2\)](#)
- F285** S. 23(3A) inserted (21.9.2008) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\), s. 6\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 3\(3\)](#)

[<sup>F286</sup>**23A Contributions credits for relevant parents and carers** **E+W+S**]

- (1) This section applies to the following benefits—
- (a) a Category A retirement pension in a case where the contributor concerned attains pensionable age on or after 6th April 2010;
  - (b) a Category B retirement pension payable by virtue of section 48A [<sup>F287</sup>or 48AA] below in a case where the contributor concerned attains pensionable age on or after that date;
  - (c) a Category B retirement pension payable by virtue of section 48B below in a case where the contributor concerned dies on or after that date without having attained pensionable age before that date;
  - (d) a widowed parent's allowance payable in a case where the contributor concerned dies on or after that date;
  - <sup>F288</sup>(e) .....
- (2) The contributor concerned in the case of a benefit to which this section applies shall be credited with a Class 3 contribution for each week falling after 6th April 2010 in respect of which the contributor was a relevant carer.
- (3) A person is a relevant carer in respect of a week if the person—
- (a) is awarded child benefit for any part of that week in respect of a child under the age of 12,
  - (b) is a foster parent for any part of that week, or
  - (c) is engaged in caring, within the meaning given by regulations, in that week.
- (4) Regulations may make provision for a person's entitlement to be credited with Class 3 contributions by virtue of falling within subsection (3)(b) or (c) above to be conditional on the person—
- (a) applying to be so credited in accordance with the prescribed requirements, and
  - (b) complying with the prescribed requirements as to the provision of information to the Secretary of State [<sup>F289</sup>or to the Commissioners for Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs].
- (5) The contributor concerned in the case of a benefit to which this section applies shall be credited with 52 Class 3 contributions for each tax year ending before 6th April 2010 in which the contributor was precluded from regular employment by responsibilities at home within the meaning of regulations under paragraph 5(7) of Schedule 3.
- (6) But the maximum number of tax years for which a person can be credited with contributions under subsection (5) above is—
- (a) in the case of a benefit mentioned in subsection (1)(a) to (c) above, 22;
  - (b) in the case of a benefit mentioned in subsection (1)(d) <sup>F290</sup>... above, half the requisite number of years of the person's working life.
- (7) The table in paragraph 5(5) of Schedule 3 (requisite number of years of a working life of given duration) applies for the purposes of subsection (6)(b) above as it applies for the purposes of the second condition set out in paragraph 5(3) of that Schedule.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) For the purpose of determining entitlement to a benefit to which this section applies, a week that falls partly in one tax year and partly in another is to be treated as falling in the year in which it begins and not in the following year.
- [ Where this section, or regulations made under it, have the effect that the contributor  
F291(8A) concerned is credited, on or after 6 April 2016, with contributions for a tax year starting before that date, the contributions are to be treated for the purposes of calculating the rate under paragraph 3 of Schedule 1 to the Pensions Act 2014 as having been credited before 6 April 2016.]
- (9) In this section—  
“the contributor concerned” has the meaning given in section 21(5)(a) above;  
“foster parent” has the meaning given by regulations.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F286** S. 23A inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 3(1)**, 30(3)
- F287** Words in s. 23A(1)(b) inserted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 58**
- F288** S. 23A(1)(e) omitted (6.4.2017) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 6(2)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F289** Words in s. 23A(4)(b) inserted (6.4.2010) by [The National Insurance Contribution Credits \(Transfer of Functions\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1377\)](#), arts. 1(1), **5**
- F290** Words in s. 23A(6)(b) omitted (6.4.2017) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 6(3)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F291** S. 23A(8A) inserted (6.4.2016) by [The Pensions Act 2014 \(Consequential and Supplementary Amendments\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/224\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(2)**

## 24 **Records of earnings and calculation of earnings factors in absence of records.** **E** **+W+S**

- (1) Regulations may provide for requiring persons to maintain, in such form and manner as may be prescribed, records of such earnings paid by them as are relevant for the purpose of calculating earnings factors, and to retain such records for so long as may be prescribed.
- (2) Where the Secretary of State is satisfied that records of earnings relevant for the purpose of calculating a person’s earnings factors for the tax year 1987-88 or any subsequent tax year have not been maintained or retained or are otherwise unobtainable, then, for the purpose of determining those earnings factors, he may—
- (a) compute, in such manner as he thinks fit, an amount which shall be regarded as the amount of [F292so much of that person’s earnings as did not exceed the upper earnings limit and] on which primary Class 1 contributions have been paid or treated as paid; or
  - (b) take the amount of those earnings to be such sum as he may specify in the particular case.

#### Textual Amendments

- F292** Words in s. 24(2)(a) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 9**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## Unemployment benefit

### <sup>F293</sup> **25 Unemployment benefit.** **E+W+S**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F293** S. 25 repealed (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b) (and see also [The Jobseekers Allowance \(Transitional Provisions\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/3276\)](#), reg. 9(5))

### <sup>F294</sup> **25A Determination of days for which unemployment benefit is payable.** **E+W+S**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F294** S. 25A repealed (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b) (and see also [The Jobseekers Allowance \(Transitional Provisions\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/3276\)](#), reg. 9(5))

### <sup>F295</sup> **25B Power to amend provisions as to days of entitlement.** **E+W+S**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F295** S. 25B repealed (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b) (and see also [The Jobseekers Allowance \(Transitional Provisions\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/3276\)](#), reg. 9(5))

### <sup>F296</sup> **26 Duration of unemployment benefit.** **E+W+S**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F296** S. 26 repealed (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b) (and see also [The Jobseekers Allowance \(Transitional Provisions\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/3276\)](#), reg. 9(5))

### <sup>F297</sup> **27 Interruption of employment in connection with trade dispute.** **E+W+S**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F297** S. 27 repealed (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b) (and see also [The Jobseekers Allowance \(Transitional Provisions\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/3276\)](#), reg. 9(5))

### <sup>F298</sup>**28 Unemployment benefit - other disqualifications etc.** **E+W+S**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F298** S. 28 repealed (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b) (and see also [The Jobseekers Allowance \(Transitional Provisions\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/3276\)](#), reg. 9(5))

### <sup>F299</sup>**29 Exemptions from disqualification for unemployment benefit.** **E+W+S**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F299** S. 29 repealed (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b) (and see also [The Jobseekers Allowance \(Transitional Provisions\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/3276\)](#), reg. 9(5))

### <sup>F300</sup>**30 Abatement of unemployment benefit on account of payments of occupational or personal pension.** **E+W+S**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F300** S. 30 repealed (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b) (and see also [The Jobseekers Allowance \(Transitional Provisions\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/3276\)](#), reg. 9(5))

### <sup>F301</sup>*Incapacity benefit*

#### Textual Amendments

**F301** S. 30A and cross-heading inserted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 1(1), 16(3)** (with s. 4); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), **Sch. Pt. 4** (with [The Social Security \(Incapacity Benefit\) \(Transitional\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/310\)](#))



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### 30A Incapacity benefit: entitlement. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, a person who satisfies
- <sup>F302</sup>(a) either of the conditions mentioned in subsection (2) below; or
  - (b) if he satisfies neither of those conditions, each of the conditions mentioned in subsection (2A) below,]

is entitled to short-term incapacity benefit in respect of any day of incapacity for work <sup>F303</sup>(“the relevant day”) which forms part of a period of incapacity for work.

- (2) The conditions <sup>F304</sup>mentioned in subsection (1)(a) above] are that—
- (a) he is under pensionable age on <sup>F305</sup>the relevant day] and satisfies the contribution conditions specified for short-term incapacity benefit in Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 2; or
  - (b) on that day he is over pensionable age but not more than 5 years over that age, the period of incapacity for work began before he attained pensionable age, and—
    - (i) he would be entitled to a Category A retirement pension if his entitlement had not been deferred or if he had not made an election under section 54(1) below, or
    - (ii) he would be entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of his deceased spouse <sup>F306</sup>or deceased civil partner], but for any such deferment or election.

[ The conditions mentioned in subsection (1)(b) above are that—

- <sup>F307</sup>(2A) (a) he is aged 16 or over on the relevant day;
- (b) he is under the age of 20 or, in prescribed cases, 25 on a day which forms part of the period of incapacity for work;
  - (c) he was incapable of work throughout a period of 196 consecutive days immediately preceding the relevant day, or an earlier day in the period of incapacity for work on which he was aged 16 or over;
  - (d) on the relevant day he satisfies the prescribed conditions as to residence in Great Britain, or as to presence there; and
  - (e) he is not, on that day, a person who is receiving full-time education.]

- (3) A person is not entitled to short-term incapacity benefit <sup>F308</sup>under subsection (1)(a) above] for the first 3 days of any period of incapacity for work.
- (4) In any period of incapacity for work a person is not entitled to short-term incapacity benefit for more than 364 days.
- (5) Where a person ceases by virtue of subsection (4) above to be entitled to short-term incapacity benefit, he is entitled to long-term incapacity benefit in respect of any subsequent day of incapacity for work in the same period of incapacity for work on which he is not over pensionable age.

<sup>F309</sup>(6) Regulations may provide that persons who have previously been entitled to incapacity benefit shall, in prescribed circumstances, be entitled to short-term incapacity benefit under subsection (1)(b) above notwithstanding that they do not satisfy the condition set out in paragraph (b) of subsection (2A) above.

- (7) Regulations may prescribe the circumstances in which a person is or is not to be treated as receiving full-time education for the purposes of paragraph (e) of that subsection.]]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F302** Words in s. 30A(1) substituted (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 64(1)(a)**, 89(1); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(c)(4)(5) (with arts. 3, 4)
- F303** Words in s. 30A(1) inserted (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 64(1)(b)**, 89(1); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(c)(4)(5) (with arts. 3, 4)
- F304** Words in s. 30A(2) inserted (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 64(2)(a)**, 89(1); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(c)(4)(5) (with arts. 3, 4)
- F305** Words in s. 30A(2) substituted (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 64(2)(b)**, 89(1); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(c)(4)(5) (with arts. 3, 4)
- F306** Words in s. 30A(2)(b)(ii) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 14**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F307** S. 30A(2A) inserted (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 64(3)**, 89(1); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(c)(4)(5) (with arts. 3, 4)
- F308** Words in s. 30A(3) inserted (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 64(4)**, 89(1); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(c)(4)(5) (with arts. 3, 4)
- F309** S. 30A(6)(7) inserted (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 64(5)**, 89(1); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(c)(4)(5) (with arts. 3, 4)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C26** S. 30A modified (5.5.2003) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modifications for Her Majesty's Forces and Incapacity Benefit\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/737\)](#), regs. 1, 2
- C27** S. 30A excluded (1.10.2010) by [The Employment and Support Allowance \(Transitional Provisions, Housing Benefit and Council Tax Benefit\) \(Existing Awards\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1907\)](#), regs. 1(2), **22(a)**

### [<sup>F310</sup>30B Incapacity benefit: rate. **E+W+S**

- (1) The amount payable by way of incapacity benefit in respect of any day is 1/7th of the appropriate weekly rate.
- (2) Subject to the following provisions of this section, the weekly rate of short-term incapacity benefit is the lower or higher rate specified in Schedule 4, Part I, paragraph 2.

The benefit is payable at the lower rate so specified for the first 196 days of entitlement in any period of incapacity for work and at the higher rate so specified thereafter.

- (3) In the case of a person over pensionable age the weekly rate of short-term incapacity benefit is, subject to subsection (4) below, that at which the relevant retirement pension referred to in section 30A(2)(b) above would have been payable.

But in determining that rate any increase of the following descriptions shall be disregarded—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any increase [<sup>F311</sup>(for married people [<sup>F312</sup>or civil partners])] under section 51A(2)] below or (for deferred retirement) under Schedule 5 to this Act;
- <sup>F313</sup>(b) . . . . .
- (c) any increase (for Category A or Category B pensioners) under section 150 of the Administration Act (annual up-rating) of the sums mentioned in subsection (1)(e) of that section.
- (4) In the case of a person who has been entitled to short-term incapacity benefit for 196 days or more in any period of incapacity for work and—
- (a) is terminally ill, or
- (b) he is entitled to the highest rate of the care component of disability living allowance,
- the weekly rate of short-term incapacity benefit payable, if greater than the rate otherwise payable to him under subsection (2) or (3) above, shall be equal to the rate at which long-term incapacity benefit under section 30A above would be payable to him if he were entitled to it.
- For the purposes of this subsection a person is terminally ill if he suffers from a progressive disease and his death in consequence of that disease can reasonably be expected within 6 months.
- (5) References to short-term incapacity benefit at the higher rate shall be construed as including short-term incapacity benefit payable to any person who has been entitled to that benefit for 196 days or more in a period of incapacity for work, notwithstanding that the rate of benefit is determined in accordance with subsection (3) or (4) above.
- (6) Subject as follows, the weekly rate of long-term incapacity benefit under section 30A above is that specified in Schedule 4, Part I, paragraph 2A.
- (7) Regulations may provide that if a person is, on the qualifying date in relation to a period of incapacity for work, under such age as may be prescribed, the rate of long-term incapacity benefit under section 30A above payable to him in respect of any day in that period shall be increased by such amount as may be prescribed.

For this purpose “the qualifying date” means the first day of the period of incapacity for work or such earlier day as may be prescribed.

[ This section has effect subject to sections 30DD (reduction for pension payments) and <sup>F314</sup>(8) section 30E (reduction for councillor’s allowance) below.]]

**Textual Amendments**

- F310** S. 30B inserted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 2(1)**, 16(3); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. 2** (with [The Social Security \(Incapacity Benefit\) \(Transitional\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/310\)](#))
- F311** Words in s. 30B(3) substituted (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 21(3)**
- F312** Words in s. 30B(3)(a) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 15**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F313** S. 30B(3)(b) repealed (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 4(4)**, 27(4)(b), **Sch. 1 para. 12**, **Sch. 7 Pt. 2** (with s. 4(5)-(8))

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F314** S. 30B(8) added (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 22**; S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(e) (4)(5)

**[<sup>F315</sup>30C Incapacity benefit: days and periods of incapacity for work. E+W+S**

- (1) For the purposes of any provisions of this Act relating to incapacity benefit, subject to the following provisions and save as otherwise expressly provided—
- (a) a day of incapacity for work means a day on which a person is incapable of work;
  - (b) a period of incapacity for work means a period of 4 or more consecutive days, each of which is a day of incapacity for work; and
  - (c) any two such periods not separated by a period of more than 8 weeks shall be treated as one period of incapacity for work.
- (2) Any day which falls within the maternity allowance period (as defined in section 35(2) below) shall be treated for the purposes of any provision of this Act relating to incapacity benefit as a day of incapacity for work unless the woman is disqualified for receiving a maternity allowance for that day by virtue of regulations under section 35(3)(a) below.
- (3) Regulations may make provision (subject to the preceding provisions of this section) as to the days which are or are not to be treated as days of incapacity for work for the purposes of any provision of this Act relating to incapacity benefit.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by regulations provide—
- (a) that paragraph (b) of subsection (1) above shall have effect as if the reference there to 4 consecutive days were to such lesser number of days, whether consecutive or not, within such period of consecutive days as may be prescribed; and
  - (b) that paragraph (c) of that subsection shall have effect as if for the reference to 8 weeks there were substituted a reference to such larger number of weeks as may be prescribed.
- [<sup>F316</sup>(5)** Where a person claims the higher rate of short-term incapacity benefit, or long-term incapacity benefit, under section 30A above for a period commencing after he has ceased to be in qualifying remunerative work (within the meaning of Part 1 of the Tax Credits Act 2002) and—
- (a) the day following that on which he so ceased was a day of incapacity for work for him,
  - (b) he has been entitled to the higher rate of short-term incapacity benefit, or to long-term incapacity benefit, under section 30A above within the period of two years ending with that day of incapacity for work, and
  - (c) he satisfied the relevant tax credit conditions on the day before he so ceased, every day during that period on which he satisfied those conditions is to be treated for the purposes of the claim as a day of incapacity for work for him.
- (5A) A person satisfies the relevant tax credit conditions on a day if—
- (a) he is entitled for the day to the disability element of working tax credit (on a claim made by him or by him jointly with another) or would be so entitled but for the fact that the relevant income (within the meaning of Part 1 of the Tax Credits Act 2002) in his or their case is such that he is not so entitled, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) either working tax credit or any element of child tax credit other than the family element is paid in respect of the day on such a claim.]

(6) Where—

- (a) a person becomes engaged in training for work, and  
(b) he was entitled to the higher rate of short-term incapacity benefit, or to long-term incapacity benefit under section 30A above, for one or more of the 56 days immediately before he became so engaged, and  
(c) the first day after he ceases to be so engaged is for him a day of incapacity for work and falls not later than the end of the period of two years beginning with the last day for which he was entitled to such benefit,

any day since that day in which he was engaged in training for work shall be treated for the purposes of any claim for such benefit for a period commencing after he ceases to be so engaged as having been a day of incapacity for work.

In this subsection “training for work” means training for work in pursuance of arrangements made under section 2(1) of the Employment and Training Act 1973 or section 2(3) of the Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990 or training of such other description as may be prescribed.

- (7) For the purposes of this section “week” means any period of 7 days.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F315** Ss. 30C-30E inserted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 3(1)**, 16(3); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2 (with [The Social Security \(Incapacity Benefit\) \(Transitional\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/310\)](#))

**F316** S. 30C(5)(5A) substituted for s. 30C(5) (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, **Sch. 3 para. 25**; S.I. 2003/962, art. 2(3)(d)(iii)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C28** S. 30C power to make regulations modified (21.5.1998) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 77**, 87(2)(a)

**C29** S. 30C modified (31.3.2003) by [The Tax Credits Act 2002 \(Commencement No. 4, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/962\)](#), **art. 5(2)**

[<sup>F315</sup>**30D Incapacity benefit: construction of references to days of entitlement.** **E+W+S**]

- (1) The following provisions have effect in calculating for the purposes of—
- (a) section 30A(4) above (length of entitlement to short-term incapacity benefit),  
(b) section 30B(2) above (period after which short-term incapacity benefit is payable at higher rate),  
(c) section 30B(4) above (period after which incapacity benefit is payable at long-term rate in case of terminal illness), and  
(d) section 30B(5) above (construction of references to short-term incapacity benefit at the higher rate),

the number of days for which a person has been entitled to short-term incapacity benefit.

- (2) There shall be included—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the first three days of the period of incapacity for work, and
  - (b) in the case of a woman, any days for which she was entitled to maternity allowance.
- (3) There shall also be included such days as may be prescribed in respect of which a person was entitled to statutory sick pay, and on the first of which he satisfied the contribution conditions for short-term incapacity benefit.
- (4) There shall be excluded any days in respect of which a person was disqualified for receiving incapacity benefit.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F315** Ss. 30C-30E inserted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 3(1), 16(3)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2 (with [The Social Security \(Incapacity Benefit\) \(Transitional\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/310\)](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C30** S. 30D modified (6.4.2003) by [The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 \(Modifications for Her Majesty's Forces and Incapacity Benefit\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/737\)](#), regs. 1, 3

### [<sup>F317</sup>**30D** ~~Incapacity benefit: reduction for pension payments [<sup>F318</sup> and PPF periodic payments].~~ **E+W+S**

[<sup>F319</sup>(1) Where—

- (a) a person is entitled to incapacity benefit in respect of any period of a week or part of a week,
- (b) there is—
  - (i) a pension payment;
  - (ii) a PPF periodic payment; or
  - (iii) any combination of the payments specified in sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) above,

payable to him in respect of that period (or a period which forms part of that period or includes that period or part of it), and

- (c) the amount of the payment or payments (or, as the case may be, the amount which in accordance with regulations is to be taken as payable to him by way of pension payments or PPF periodic payments in respect of that period), when taken together exceeds the threshold,

the amount of that benefit shall be reduced by an amount equal to 50 per cent. of that excess.]

(2) In subsection (1) above “the threshold” means—

- (a) if the period in question is a week, £85 or such greater amount as may be prescribed; or
- (b) if that period is not a week, such proportion of the amount mentioned in paragraph (a) as falls to be calculated in accordance with regulations on such basis as may be prescribed.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Regulations may secure that a person of any prescribed description does not suffer any reduction under subsection (1) above in any amount of incapacity benefit to which he is entitled.
- (4) Regulations may provide—
- (a) for sums of any specified description to be disregarded for the purposes of this section;
  - (b) for sums of any specified description to be treated for those purposes as payable to persons as pension payments [<sup>F320</sup>or PPF periodic payments] (including, in particular, sums in relation to which there is a deferred right of receipt);
  - (c) for the aggregation of sums of any specified description which are payable as pension payments [<sup>F321</sup>or PPF periodic payments] (or treated as being so payable) in respect of the same or different periods;
  - (d) for such sums or aggregate sums to be apportioned between or otherwise allocated to periods in respect of which persons are entitled to incapacity benefit.
- (5) In this section “pension payment” means—
- (a) a periodical payment made in relation to a person under a personal pension scheme or, in connection with the coming to an end of an employment of his, under an occupational pension scheme or a public service pension scheme;
  - (b) a payment of any specified description, being a payment made under an insurance policy providing benefits in connection with physical or mental illness, disability, infirmity or defect; or
  - (c) a payment of any other specified description;
- and “specified” means prescribed by or determined in accordance with regulations under this section.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (5) “occupational pension scheme”, “personal pension scheme” and “public service pension scheme” each have the meaning given by section 1 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993, except that “personal pension scheme” includes [<sup>F322</sup>an annuity contract or trust scheme approved under section 620 or 621 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988, or a substituted contract within the meaning of section 622(3) of that Act, which is treated as having become a registered pension scheme by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(f) of Schedule 36 to the Finance Act 2004].]

#### Textual Amendments

- F317** S. 30DD inserted (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 63**, 89(1); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(b)(4)(5) (with art. 3(2))
- F318** Words in s. 30DD heading inserted (14.2.2006) by [The Pensions Act 2004 \(PPF Payments and FAS Payments\) \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/343\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 1(1)(a)**
- F319** S. 30DD(1) substituted (14.2.2006) by [The Pensions Act 2004 \(PPF Payments and FAS Payments\) \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/343\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 1(1)(b)**
- F320** Words in s. 30DD(4)(b) inserted (14.2.2006) by [The Pensions Act 2004 \(PPF Payments and FAS Payments\) \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/343\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 1(1)(c)**
- F321** Words in s. 30DD(4)(c) inserted (14.2.2006) by [The Pensions Act 2004 \(PPF Payments and FAS Payments\) \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/343\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 1(1)(c)**



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F322** Words in s. 30DD(6) substituted (6.4.2006) by [The Taxation of Pension Schemes \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/745\)](#), arts. 1, **4(2)**

**[<sup>F315</sup>30E Incapacity benefit: reduction for councillor’s allowance. E+W+S**

- (1) Where the net amount of councillor’s allowance to which a person is entitled in respect of any week exceeds such amount as may be prescribed, an amount equal to the excess shall be deducted from the amount of any incapacity benefit to which he is entitled in respect of that week, and only the balance remaining (if any) shall be payable.
- (2) In this section “councillor’s allowance” means—
  - (a) in England or Wales, an allowance under or by virtue of—
    - (i) section 173 or 177 of the Local Government Act 1972, or
    - (ii) a scheme made by virtue of section 18 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989,
 other than such an allowance as is mentioned in section 173(4) of the Local Government Act 1972, or
  - (b) in Scotland, an allowance under or by virtue of section 49 of the Local Government (Scotland) Act 1973 or a scheme made by virtue of section 18 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989;
 and where any such allowance is paid otherwise than weekly, an amount calculated or estimated in accordance with regulations shall be regarded as the weekly amount of the allowance.
- (3) In subsection (1) above “net amount”, in relation to any councillor’s allowance to which a person is entitled, means the aggregate amount of the councillor’s allowance or allowances to which he is entitled for the week in question, reduced by the amount of any expenses incurred by him in that week in connection with his membership of the council or councils in question.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F315** Ss. 30C-30E inserted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), ss. **3(1)**, 16(3); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2 (with [The Social Security \(Incapacity Benefit\) \(Transitional\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/310\)](#))

*Sickness benefit*

**[<sup>F323</sup>31 Sickness benefit. E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F323** Ss. 31-34 repealed (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 7, **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F323 32** **Sickness benefit - disqualifications etc.** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F323** Ss. 31-34 repealed (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 7, **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

*Invalidity benefits*

**F323 33** **Invalidity pension.** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F323** Ss. 31-34 repealed (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 7, **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

**F323 34** **Invalidity allowance.** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F323** Ss. 31-34 repealed (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 7, **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

*Maternity*

**35** **State maternity allowance** [<sup>F324</sup>**for employed or self-employed earner**]. **E+W+S**

[<sup>F325</sup>(1) A woman shall be entitled to a maternity allowance [<sup>F326</sup>under this section], at the appropriate weekly rate determined under section 35A below, if—

- (a) she has become pregnant and has reached, or been confined before reaching, the commencement of the 11th week before the expected week of confinement; and
- (b) she has been engaged in employment as an employed or self-employed earner for any part of the week in the case of at least 26 of the 66 weeks immediately preceding the expected week of confinement; and
- [<sup>F327</sup>(c) her average weekly earnings (within the meaning of section 35A below) are not less than the maternity allowance threshold for the tax year in which the beginning of the period of 66 weeks mentioned in paragraph (b) above falls;]
- (d) she is not entitled to statutory maternity pay for the same week in respect of the same pregnancy.]

(2) Subject to the following provisions of this section, a maternity allowance [<sup>F328</sup>under this section] shall be payable for the period (“the maternity allowance period”) which,

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

if she were entitled to statutory maternity pay, would be the maternity pay period under section 165 below.

(3) Regulations may provide—

(a) for disqualifying a woman for receiving a maternity allowance [<sup>F329</sup>under this section] if—

[<sup>F330</sup>(i) during the maternity allowance period, except in prescribed cases, she does any work in employment as an employed or self-employed earner;

(ia) during the maternity allowance period she fails without good cause to observe any prescribed rules of behaviour; or]

(ii) at any time before she is confined she fails without good cause to attend for, or submit herself to, any medical examination required in accordance with the regulations;

(b) that this section and [<sup>F331</sup>section 35A below] shall have effect subject to prescribed modifications in relation to cases in which a woman has been confined and—

(i) has not made a claim for a maternity allowance [<sup>F332</sup>under this section] in expectation of that confinement (other than a claim which has been disallowed); or

(ii) has made a claim for a maternity allowance [<sup>F333</sup>under this section] in expectation of that confinement (other than a claim which has been disallowed), but she was confined more than 11 weeks before the expected week of confinement;

[<sup>F334</sup>(c) that subsection (2) above shall have effect subject to prescribed modifications in relation to cases in which a woman fails to satisfy the conditions referred to in subsection (1)(b) [<sup>F335</sup>or (c) above] at the commencement of the 11th week before the expected week of confinement, but subsequently satisfies those conditions at any time before she is confined.]

[<sup>F336</sup>(3A) Regulations may provide for the duration of the maternity allowance period as it applies to a woman to be reduced, subject to prescribed restrictions and conditions.

(3B) Regulations under subsection (3A) are to secure that the reduced period ends at a time—

(a) after a prescribed period beginning with the day on which the woman is confined, and

(b) when at least a prescribed part of the maternity allowance period remains unexpired.

(3C) Regulations under subsection (3A) may, in particular, prescribe restrictions and conditions relating to—

(a) the end of the woman's entitlement to maternity leave;

(b) the doing of work by the woman;

(c) the taking of prescribed steps by the woman or another person as regards leave under section 75E of the Employment Rights Act 1996 in respect of the child;

(d) the taking of prescribed steps by a person other than the woman as regards statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child.

(3D) Regulations may provide for a reduction in the duration of the maternity allowance period as it applies to a woman to be revoked, or to be treated as revoked, subject to prescribed restrictions and conditions.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F337</sup>(3E) A woman who would, but for the reduction in duration of a maternity pay period by virtue of section 165(3A), be entitled to statutory maternity pay for a week is not entitled to a maternity allowance for that week.]
- (4) A woman who has become entitled to a maternity allowance [<sup>F338</sup>under this section] shall cease to be entitled to it if she dies before the beginning of the maternity allowance period; and if she dies after the beginning, but before the end, of that period, the allowance shall not be payable for any week subsequent to that in which she dies.
- (5) Where for any purpose of this Part of this Act or of regulations it is necessary to calculate the daily rate of a maternity allowance [<sup>F339</sup>under this section][<sup>F340</sup>the amount payable by way of that allowance for any day shall be taken as one seventh of the weekly rate of the allowance].
- (6) In this section “confinement” means—
- (a) labour resulting in the issue of a living child, or
  - (b) labour after [<sup>F341</sup>24 weeks] of pregnancy resulting in the issue of a child whether alive or dead,
- and “confined” shall be construed accordingly; and where a woman’s labour begun on one day results in the issue of a child on another day she shall be taken to be confined on the day of the issue of the child or, if labour results in the issue of twins or a greater number of children, she shall be taken to be confined on the day of the issue of the last of them.
- [<sup>F342</sup>(6A) In this section “the maternity allowance threshold”, in relation to a tax year, means (subject to subsection (6B) below) £30.
- (6B) The Secretary of State may, in relation to any tax year after 2001-2002, by order increase the amount for the time being specified in subsection (6A) above to such amount as is specified in the order.
- (6C) When deciding whether, and (if so) by how much, to increase the amount so specified the Secretary of State shall have regard to the movement, over such period as he thinks fit, in the general level of prices obtaining in Great Britain (estimated in such manner as he thinks fit).
- (6D) The Secretary of State shall in each tax year carry out such a review of the amount for the time being specified in subsection (6A) above as he thinks fit.]
- (7) The fact that the mother of a child is being paid maternity allowance [<sup>F343</sup>under this section] shall not be taken into consideration by any court in deciding whether to order payment of expenses incidental to the birth of the child.

#### Textual Amendments

- F324** Words in s. 35 heading inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Social Security \(Maternity Allowance\) \(Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/606\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(3)(a)**
- F325** S. 35(1) substituted for s. 35(1)(1A) (12.1.2000 for specified purposes, 2.4.2000 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 53(1), 89(1)** (with s. 53(4)); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(1)(a)
- F326** Words in s. 35(1) inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Social Security \(Maternity Allowance\) \(Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/606\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(3)(b)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F327** S. 35(1)(c) substituted (6.4.2003) by Employment Act 2002 (c. 22), s. 55(2), **Sch. 7 para. 4(2)**; S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 3
- F328** Words in s. 35(2) inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security (Maternity Allowance) (Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/606), regs. 1(2), **2(3)(b)**
- F329** Words in s. 35(3)(a) inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security (Maternity Allowance) (Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/606), regs. 1(2), **2(3)(b)**
- F330** S. 35(3)(a)(i)(ia) substituted for s. 35(3)(a)(i) (27.6.2006 for specified purposes, 1.10.2006 in so far as not already in force) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 6**; S.I. 2006/1682, arts. 2(d), 3(d)
- F331** Words in s. 35(3) substituted (12.1.2000 for specified purposes, 2.4.2000 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), **ss. 53(2)(a)**, 89(1) (with s. 53(4)); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(1)(a)
- F332** Words in s. 35(3)(b)(i) inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security (Maternity Allowance) (Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/606), regs. 1(2), **2(3)(b)**
- F333** Words in s. 35(3)(b)(ii) inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security (Maternity Allowance) (Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/606), regs. 1(2), **2(3)(b)**
- F334** S. 35(3)(c) added (with effect in accordance with reg. 1(2) of the amending S.I.) by The Maternity Allowance and Statutory Maternity Pay Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/1230), **reg. 2(3)**
- F335** Words in s. 35(3)(c) substituted (6.4.2003) by Employment Act 2002 (c. 22), s. 55(2), **Sch. 7 para. 4(3)**; S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 3
- F336** S. 35(3A)-(3D) inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 120(2)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(d)
- F337** S. 35(3E) inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 120(3)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(d)
- F338** Words in s. 35(4) inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security (Maternity Allowance) (Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/606), regs. 1(2), **2(3)(b)**
- F339** Words in s. 35(5) inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security (Maternity Allowance) (Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/606), regs. 1(2), **2(3)(b)**
- F340** Words in s. 35(5) substituted for s. 35(5)(a)(b) (1.10.2006 in respect of women whose expected week of confinement falls on or after 1.4.2007) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), **ss. 67**, 87(2); S.I. 2006/2376, **art. 2**
- F341** Words in s. 35(6) substituted (1.10.1992) by Still-Birth (Definition) Act 1992 (c. 29), s. **2(1)(a)(2)(a)**, 4(2)
- F342** S. 35(6A)-(6D) inserted (6.4.2003) by Employment Act 2002 (c. 22), s. 55(2), **Sch. 7 para. 4(4)**; S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 3
- F343** Words in s. 35(7) inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security (Maternity Allowance) (Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/606), regs. 1(2), **2(3)(c)**

[<sup>F344</sup>**35A Appropriate weekly rate of maternity allowance** [<sup>F345</sup>**under section 35**]. **E+W+S**

- [<sup>F346</sup>(1) For the purposes of section 35(1) above the appropriate weekly rate is (subject to subsection (5A) below) whichever is the lower rate of—
- (a) a weekly rate equivalent to 90 per cent of the woman's average weekly earnings; and
  - (b) the weekly rate for the time being prescribed under section 166(1)(b) below.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) For the purposes of this section a woman’s “average weekly earnings” shall be taken to be the average weekly amount (as determined in accordance with regulations) of specified payments which—
- (a) were made to her or for her benefit as an employed earner, or
  - (b) are (in accordance with regulations) to be treated as made to her or for her benefit as a self-employed earner,
- during the specified period.
- (5) Regulations may, for the purposes of subsection (4) above, provide—
- (a) for the amount of any payments falling within paragraph (a) or (b) of that subsection to be calculated or estimated in such manner and on such basis as may be prescribed;
  - (b) for a payment made outside the specified period to be treated as made during that period where it was referable to that period or any part of it;
  - (c) for a woman engaged in employment as a self-employed earner to be treated as having received a payment in respect of a week—
    - (i) equal to <sup>F347</sup>an amount 90 per cent of which is equal to the weekly rate prescribed under section 166(1)(b) below that is] in force on the last day of the week, if she <sup>F348</sup>has] paid a Class 2 contribution in respect of the week, or
    - (ii) equal to the maternity allowance threshold in force on that day, if she <sup>F349</sup>could have paid, but has not paid,] such a contribution in respect of the week;
  - (d) for aggregating payments made or treated as made to or for the benefit of a woman where, either in the same week or in different weeks, she was engaged in two or more employments (whether, in each case, as an employed earner or a self-employed earner).

<sup>F350</sup> [ Where subsection (5B) below applies the appropriate weekly rate is the weekly rate (5A) for the time being prescribed under section 166(1)(b) below.

(5B) This subsection applies where a woman is treated by virtue of regulations under sub-paragraph (i) of paragraph (c) of subsection (5) above as having received a payment in respect of each week in the specified period equal to the amount mentioned in that sub-paragraph.]

<sup>F351</sup> (6) In this section “the maternity allowance threshold” has the same meaning as in section 35 above and “specified” means prescribed by or determined in accordance with regulations.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F344** S. 35A inserted (12.1.2000 for specified purposes, 2.4.2000 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), ss. 53(3), 89(1) (with s. 53(4)); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(1)(a)

**F345** Words in s. 35A heading inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security (Maternity Allowance) (Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/606), regs. 1(2), 2(4)

**F346** S. 35A(1) substituted for s. 35A(1)-(3) (6.4.2003) by Employment Act 2002 (c. 22), ss. 48(1)(a), 55(2); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 3

**F347** Words in s. 35A(5)(c)(i) substituted (24.11.2002) by Employment Act 2002 (c. 22), ss. 48(1)(b), 55(2) (with s. 48(2)); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. 1



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F348** Word in s. 35A(5)(c)(i) inserted (with effect for the tax year 2015-16 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\), Sch. 1 paras. 6\(a\), 35](#)
- F349** Words in s. 35A(5)(c)(ii) substituted (with effect for the tax year 2015-16 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\), Sch. 1 paras. 6\(b\), 35](#)
- F350** S. 35A(5A)(5B) inserted (6.4.2003) by [Employment Act 2002 \(c. 22\), ss. 48\(1\)\(c\), 55\(2\); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2\(3\), Sch. 1 Pt. 3](#)
- F351** S. 35A(6) substituted for s. 35A(6)-(8) (6.4.2003) by [Employment Act 2002 \(c. 22\), s. 55\(2\), Sch. 7 para. 5; S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2\(3\), Sch. 1 Pt. 3](#)

**[<sup>F352</sup>35B.State maternity allowance for participating wife or civil partner of self-employed earner E+W+S**

- (1) A woman (W) shall be entitled to a maternity allowance under this section, at the weekly rate given by subsection (3) below, if—
  - (a) W has become pregnant and has reached, or been confined before reaching, the commencement of the 11th week before the expected week of confinement; and
  - (b) for any part of the week in the case of at least 26 of the 66 weeks immediately preceding the expected week of confinement, W has worked with a person (S) who at the time of her doing so—
    - (i) was her spouse or civil partner, and
    - (ii) was engaged in employment as a self-employed earner; and
  - (c) S [<sup>F353</sup>has paid] a Class 2 contribution in respect of the 26 weeks referred to in paragraph (1)(b); and
  - (d) W is not entitled to a maternity allowance under section 35 above, or statutory maternity pay, for the same week in respect of the same pregnancy.
- (2) In this section—
  - (a) a reference to W working with S is a reference to W participating in the activities engaged in by S as a self-employed earner, performing the same tasks or ancillary tasks, without being employed by S or being in partnership with S;
  - (b) a reference to W ceasing to work with S is a reference to W ceasing to do so either permanently or until after her confinement.
- (3) The rate of allowance under this section for any particular week is 90 per cent of the amount of the maternity allowance threshold for the tax year in which the week ends.
- (4) Subject to subsections (10) and (11) below, a maternity allowance under this section shall be payable for the period of 14 weeks (“the 14-week period”) beginning as set out in subsection (5), (6), (7) or (8) below (whichever applies).
- (5) If W ceases to work with S before the commencement of the 11th week before the expected week of confinement, the 14-week period begins with the commencement of the 11th week before the expected week of confinement.
- (6) If W ceases to work with S on a day that falls within the period beginning with the commencement of the 11th week before the expected week of confinement and ending with the end of the fifth week before the expected week of confinement, the 14-week period begins immediately after that day.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) If on a day that falls within the period beginning with the commencement of the fourth week before the expected week of confinement and ending with the date of confinement—
- (a) W ceases to work with S, or
  - (b) she refrains from working with S wholly or partly because of her pregnancy or confinement,
- the 14-week period begins immediately after the day on which she ceases or refrains.
- (8) If none of subsections (5) to (7) above applies, the 14-week period begins immediately after the date of confinement.
- (9) In relation to maternity allowance under this section, a reference in a provision contained in or made under any enactment to the maternity allowance period shall be read as a reference to the 14-week period.
- (10) Subsections (4) to (7) of section 35 above have effect for the purposes of this section as they have effect for the purposes of that section (reading references to the maternity allowance period as references to the 14-week period).
- (11) Regulations under section 35 above may make provision for the purposes of this section corresponding or similar to the provision that may be made by virtue of subsection (3)(a), (b) or (c) of that section.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F352** S. 35B inserted (with application in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Social Security \(Maternity Allowance\) \(Participating Wife or Civil Partner of Self-employed Earner\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/606\)](#), regs. 1(2), **2(5)**
- F353** Words in s. 35B(1)(c) substituted (with effect for the tax year 2015-16 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\)](#), **Sch. 1 paras. 7, 35**

*[<sup>F354</sup>Bereavement benefits: deaths before the day on which section 30 of the Pensions Act 2014 comes into force]*

**Textual Amendments**

- F354** S. 36 cross-heading substituted (6.4.2017) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 7**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)

<sup>F355</sup>**36 Bereavement payment. E+W+S**

**Textual Amendments**

- F355** S. 36 repealed (6.4.2017) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 8**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F356</sup>**36A Cases in which sections 37 to 41 apply.** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F356** S. 36A repealed (6.4.2017) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 9**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)

**37 Widowed mother's allowance** [<sup>F357</sup>: deaths before 9 April 2001]. **E+W+S**

[<sup>F358</sup>(A1) This section applies only in cases where a woman's husband has died before 9 April 2001.]

- (1) A woman who has been widowed shall be entitled to a widowed mother's allowance at the rate determined in accordance with section 39 below if her late husband satisfied the contribution conditions for a widowed mother's allowance specified in Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 5 and either—
  - (a) the woman is entitled to child benefit in respect of a child [<sup>F359</sup>or qualifying young person] falling within subsection (2) below; or
  - (b) the woman is pregnant by her late husband; or
  - (c) if the woman and her late husband were residing together immediately before the time of his death, the woman is pregnant as the result of being artificially inseminated before that time with the semen of some person other than her husband, or as the result of the placing in her before that time of an embryo, of an egg in the process of fertilisation, or of sperm and eggs.
- (2) A child [<sup>F360</sup>or qualifying young person] falls within this subsection if <sup>F361</sup>... the child [<sup>F362</sup>or qualifying young person] is either—
  - (a) a son or daughter of the woman and her late husband; or
  - (b) a child [<sup>F363</sup>or qualifying young person] in respect of whom her late husband was immediately before his death entitled to child benefit; or
  - (c) if the woman and her late husband were residing together immediately before his death, a child [<sup>F363</sup>or qualifying young person] in respect of whom she was then entitled to child benefit.
- (3) The widow shall not be entitled to the allowance for any period after she remarries [<sup>F364</sup>or forms a civil partnership], but, subject to that, she shall continue to be entitled to it for any period throughout which she satisfies the requirements of subsection (1) (a), (b) or (c) above.
- (4) A widowed mother's allowance shall not be payable—
  - (a) for any period falling before the day on which the widow's entitlement is to be regarded as commencing for that purpose by virtue of section 5(1)(k) of the Administration Act; <sup>F365</sup>... [<sup>F366</sup>or]
  - [<sup>F367</sup>(b) for any period during which she and a person whom she is not married to, or in a civil partnership with, are living together [<sup>F368</sup>as if they were a married couple or civil partners].]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F357** Words in s. 37 heading inserted (6.4.2017) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 10(3)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F358** S. 37(A1) inserted (6.4.2017) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 10(2)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F359** Words in s. 37(1)(a) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 2(2)**
- F360** Words in s. 37(2) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 2(3)(a)**
- F361** Words in s. 37(2) repealed (7.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), ss. 50, 70(2), **Sch. 8**; S.I. 2008/2101, art. 2(3)(a); S.I. 2009/775, art. 2(b); for savings see S.I. 2003/938, art. 4; S.I. 2008/2101, art. 3(3); S.I. 2009/775, art. 3
- F362** Words in s. 37(2) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 2(3)(b)**
- F363** Words in s. 37(2) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 2(3)(c)**
- F364** Words in s. 37(3) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 18(2)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F365** Word in s. 37(4)(a) repealed (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(10)(b)(d), **Sch. 30**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(6)
- F366** Word in s. 37(4) inserted (E.W.) (13.3.2014) by The Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 (Consequential and Contrary Provisions and Scotland) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/560), art. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 22(3)**; and inserted (S.) (16.12.2014) by The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3229), art. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 2(3)(a)**
- F367** S. 37(4)(b) substituted for s. 37(4)(b)(c) (E.W.) (13.3.2014) by The Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 (Consequential and Contrary Provisions and Scotland) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/560), art. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 22(3)**; and substituted (S.) (16.12.2014) by The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3229), art. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 2(3)(b)**
- F368** Words in s. 37(4)(b) substituted (2.12.2019) by The Civil Partnership (Opposite-sex Couples) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/1458), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 14(2)(a)**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C31** S. 37(1) modified by The Social Security Benefit (Dependency) Regulations 1977 (S.I. 1977/343), **reg. 4B** (as substituted (9.4.2001) by S.I. 2000/1483, regs. 1, 5)

## 38 Widow's pension [<sup>F369</sup>: deaths before 9 April 2001]. **E+W+S**

[<sup>F370</sup>(A1) This section applies only in cases where a woman's husband has died before 9 April 2001.]

- (1) A woman who has been widowed shall be entitled to a widow's pension at the rate determined in accordance with section 39 below if her late husband satisfied the contribution conditions for a widow's pension specified in Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 5 and either—
  - (a) she was, at the husband's death, over the age of 45 but under the age of 65; or
  - (b) she ceased to be entitled to a widowed mother's allowance at a time when she was over the age of 45 but under the age of 65.
- (2) The widow shall not be entitled to the pension for any period after she remarries [<sup>F371</sup>or forms a civil partnership], but, subject to that, she shall continue to be entitled to it until she attains [<sup>F372</sup>pensionable age].
- (3) A widow's pension shall not be payable—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) for any period falling before the day on which the widow's entitlement is to be regarded as commencing for that purpose by virtue of section 5(1)(k) of the Administration Act;
  - (b) for any period for which she is entitled to a widowed mother's allowance;  
F373 ... [F374 or]
  - [F375](c) for any period during which she and a person whom she is not married to, or in a civil partnership with, are living together [F376 as if they were a married couple or civil partners].]
- (4) In the case of a widow whose late husband died before 11th April 1988 and who either—
- (a) was over the age of 40 but under the age of 55 at the time of her husband's death; or
  - (b) is over the age of 40 but under the age of 55 at the time when she ceases to be entitled to a widowed mother's allowance,
- subsection (1) above shall have effect as if for "45" there were substituted "40".

#### Textual Amendments

- F369** Words in s. 38 heading inserted (6.4.2017) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 11(3)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F370** S. 38(A1) inserted (6.4.2017) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 11(2)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F371** Words in s. 38(2) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 19(2)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F372** Words in s. 38(2) substituted (6.12.2018) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 13(3), **Sch. 1 para. 40**
- F373** Word in s. 38(3)(b) repealed (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(10)(b)(d), **Sch. 30**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(6)
- F374** Word in s. 38(3) inserted (E.W.) (13.3.2014) by The Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 (Consequential and Contrary Provisions and Scotland) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/560), art. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 22(4)**; and inserted (S.) (16.12.2014) by The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3229), art. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 2(4)(a)**
- F375** S. 38(3)(c) substituted for s. 38(3)(c)(d) (E.W.) (13.3.2014) by The Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 (Consequential and Contrary Provisions and Scotland) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/560), art. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 22(4)**; and substituted (S.) (16.12.2014) by The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3229), art. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 2(4)(b)**
- F376** Words in s. 38(3)(c) substituted (2.12.2019) by The Civil Partnership (Opposite-sex Couples) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/1458), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 14(2)(b)**

### 39 Rate of widowed mother's allowance and widow's pension. **E+W+S**

- (1) The weekly rate of—
- (a) a widowed mother's allowance,
  - (b) a widow's pension,
- shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of [F377 sections 44 to [F378 45B]] [F379 ... below as they apply in the case of a Category A retirement pension, but subject, in particular, to the following provisions of this section and section [F380 46] below.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In the application of [F377 sections 44 to [F378 45B]]F379... below by virtue of subsection (1) above—
- (a) where the woman’s husband was over pensionable age when he died, references in those sections to the pensioner shall be taken as references to the husband, and
  - (b) where the husband was under pensionable age when he died, references in those sections to the pensioner and the tax year in which he attained pensionable age shall be taken as references to the husband and the tax year in which he died.
- [F381(2A) In its application by virtue of subsection (1) above, section 44(4) below is to be read as if for the first amount specified in that provision there were substituted a reference to the amount prescribed for the purposes of this subsection.]
- F382(3) .....
- (4) Where a widow’s pension is payable to a woman who was under the age of 55 at the time when the applicable qualifying condition was fulfilled, the weekly rate of the pension shall be reduced by 7 per cent. of what it would be apart from this subsection multiplied by the number of years by which her age at that time was less than 55 (any fraction of a year being counted as a year).
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4) above, the time when the applicable qualifying condition was fulfilled is the time when the woman’s late husband died or, as the case may be, the time when she ceased to be entitled to a widowed mother’s allowance.
- (6) In the case of a widow whose late husband died before 11th April 1988 and who either—
- (a) was over the age of 40 but under the age of 55 at the time of her husband’s death; or
  - (b) is over the age of 40 but under the age of 55 at the time when she ceases to be entitled to a widowed mother’s allowance,
- subsection (4) above shall have effect as if for “55” there were substituted “ 50 ”, in both places where it occurs.

#### Textual Amendments

- F377** Words in s. 39(1)-(3) substituted (with effect in accordance with s. 127(3)-(5) of the amending Act) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), ss. 127(2), 180(2)(a) (with Sch. 4) (and see, as to the continuation of these amendments, Tax Credits Act 2002 (c. 21), s. 61, Sch. 3 para. 27)
- F378** Words in s. 39(1)(2)(3) substituted (1.12.2000) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), Sch. 12 para. 17; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), Sch. Pt. IV
- F379** Words in s. 39 repealed (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), ss. 27(3)(c), 30(3), Sch. 2 para. 3(a), Sch. 7 Pt. 5
- F380** Figure in s. 39(1) substituted (3.1.2012) by Pensions Act 2008 (c. 30), s. 149(1), Sch. 4 para. 3; S.I. 2011/3033, art. 2(c)(ii)
- F381** S. 39(2A) inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2010-2011 and subsequent tax years) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), ss. 6(5), 30(1)(a)(3) (with ss. 5(4)-(6), 6(7)); S.I. 2010/2650
- F382** S. 39(3) repealed (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), ss. 27(3)(c), 30(3), Sch. 2 para. 3(b), Sch. 7 Pt. 5

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**[<sup>F383</sup>39A Widowed parent's allowance. E+W+S**

[<sup>F384</sup>(1) This section applies where—

- (a) a person's [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] has died before the day on which section 30 of the Pensions Act 2014 comes into force (but see subsection (1A)),
- (b) the person has not married or formed a civil partnership [<sup>F386</sup>or a cohabiting partnership] after the death but before that day, and
- (c) the person is under pensionable age on that day.

(1A) This section does not apply in cases where a woman's husband has died before 9 April 2001.]

(2) The surviving [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] shall be entitled to a widowed parent's allowance at the rate determined in accordance with section 39C below if the deceased [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] satisfied the contribution conditions for a widowed parent's allowance specified in Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 5 and—

- (a) the surviving [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] is entitled to child benefit in respect of a child [<sup>F387</sup>or qualifying young person] falling within subsection (3) below; <sup>F388</sup> ...
- (b) the surviving spouse [<sup>F389</sup>or cohabiting partner] is a woman who either—
  - (i) is pregnant by her late husband [<sup>F390</sup>or the deceased cohabiting partner], or
  - (ii) if she and he were residing together immediately before the time of his death, is pregnant in circumstances falling within section 37(1)(c) above [<sup>F391</sup>(which is to be read as if the references to her late husband included a reference to the deceased cohabiting partner)] [<sup>F392</sup>or
- (c) the surviving civil partner [<sup>F393</sup>or cohabiting partner] is a woman who—
  - (i) was residing together with the deceased civil partner [<sup>F393</sup>or cohabiting partner] immediately before the time of the death, and
  - (ii) is pregnant as the result of being artificially inseminated before that time with the semen of some person, or as a result of the placing in her before that time of an embryo, of an egg in the process of fertilisation, or of sperm and eggs.]

(3) A child [<sup>F394</sup>or qualifying young person] falls within this subsection if <sup>F395</sup> ... the child [<sup>F396</sup>or qualifying young person] is either—

- (a) a son or daughter of the surviving [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] and the deceased [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner]; or
- (b) a child [<sup>F397</sup>or qualifying young person] in respect of whom the deceased [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] was immediately before his or her death entitled to child benefit; or
- (c) if the surviving [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] and the deceased [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] were residing together immediately before his or her death, a child [<sup>F397</sup>or qualifying young person] in respect of whom the surviving [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] was then entitled to child benefit.

<sup>F398</sup>(3A) [ Only one person is entitled to a widowed parent's allowance in respect of one death.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3B) Where, apart from subsection (3A), more than one person would be so entitled, entitlement is to be determined in accordance with subsections (3C) and (3D).
- (3C) Where only one of those persons is a member of the same household as the deceased, that person is entitled.
- (3D) Where there is more than one person who is a member of the same household as the deceased and would (apart from subsection (3A)) be entitled—
- (a) if one of those persons is the deceased’s spouse or civil partner and is pregnant or entitled to child benefit as described in subsection (2), that person is entitled;
  - (b) if there is no spouse or civil partner entitled under paragraph (a), the deceased’s cohabiting partner who is pregnant or entitled to child benefit as described in subsection (2) is entitled (but this is subject to paragraphs (c) and (d));
  - (c) if there is more than one cohabiting partner within paragraph (b), the cohabiting partner who has been a member of the same household as the deceased for longest is entitled;
  - (d) if there is more than one cohabiting partner within paragraph (b) and each partner has been a member of the same household as the deceased for the same length of time, the Secretary of State must determine who is entitled.]
- (4) The surviving spouse shall not be entitled to the allowance for any period after she or he remarries [<sup>F399</sup>or forms a civil partnership][<sup>F400</sup>or a cohabiting partnership], but, subject to that, the surviving spouse shall continue to be entitled to it for any period throughout which she or he—
- (a) satisfies the requirements of subsection (2)(a) or (b) above; and
  - (b) is under pensionable age.
- <sup>F401</sup> [ The surviving civil partner shall not be entitled to the allowance for any period after she (4A) or he forms a subsequent civil partnership [<sup>F402</sup>or a cohabiting partnership] or marries, but, subject to that, the surviving civil partner shall continue to be entitled to it for any period throughout which she or he—
- (a) satisfies the requirements of subsection (2)(a) or (b) above; and
  - (b) is under pensionable age.]
- <sup>F403</sup> [ The surviving cohabiting partner shall not be entitled to the allowance for any period (4B) after she or he forms a subsequent cohabiting partnership or a civil partnership or marries, but, subject to that, the surviving cohabiting partner shall continue to be entitled to it for any period throughout which she or he—
- (a) satisfies the requirements of subsection (2)(a), (b) or (c) above; and
  - (b) is under pensionable age.]
- (5) A widowed parent’s allowance shall not be payable—
- (a) for any period falling before the day on which the surviving [<sup>F404</sup>spouse’s, civil partner’s or cohabiting partner’s] entitlement is to be regarded as commencing by virtue of section 5(1)(k) of the Administration Act; <sup>F405</sup>... [<sup>F406</sup>or]
  - <sup>F407</sup> [ for any period during which the surviving [<sup>F385</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] and a person whom she or he is not married to, or in a civil partnership with, are living together [<sup>F408</sup>as if they were a married couple or civil partners].]



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F409</sup>(6) For the purposes of this section, the Secretary of State may by regulations prescribe—
- (a) circumstances in which the fact that two persons are married to each other, or are civil partners or cohabiting partners of each other, is to be disregarded;
  - (b) circumstances in which two persons are to be treated as if they were married to each other or were civil partners or cohabiting partners of each other (or as marrying or forming a civil partnership or a cohabiting partnership);
  - (c) circumstances in which people are to be treated as being, or as not being, members of the same household.
- (7) For the purposes of this section and section 39C, two persons are cohabiting partners if they are not married to, or civil partners of, each other but are living together as if they were married or in a civil partnership (and “cohabiting partnership” is to be read accordingly).
- (8) The Secretary of State must issue a statement of the Secretary of State’s policy with respect to making determinations under subsection (3D)(d).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F383** Ss. 39A-39C inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 55(2)**, 89(1); S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F384** S. 39A(1)(1A) substituted for s. 39A(1) (6.4.2017) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 12**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F385** Words in s. 39A substituted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by [The Bereavement Benefits \(Remedial\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/134\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(a)** (with art. 2)
- F386** Words in s. 39A(1)(b) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by [The Bereavement Benefits \(Remedial\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/134\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(b)** (with art. 2)
- F387** Words in s. 39A(2)(a) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 3(2)**
- F388** Word in s. 39A(2)(a) repealed (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(10)(b)(d), **Sch. 30**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(6)
- F389** Words in s. 39A(2)(b) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by [The Bereavement Benefits \(Remedial\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/134\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(c)(i)** (with art. 2)
- F390** Words in s. 39A(2)(b)(i) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by [The Bereavement Benefits \(Remedial\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/134\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(c)(ii)** (with art. 2)
- F391** Words in s. 39A(2)(b)(ii) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by [The Bereavement Benefits \(Remedial\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/134\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(c)(iii)** (with art. 2)
- F392** S. 39A(2)(c) and preceding word inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 20(4)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F393** Words in s. 39A(2)(c) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by [The Bereavement Benefits \(Remedial\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/134\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(d)** (with art. 2)
- F394** Words in s. 39A(3) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 3(3)(a)**
- F395** Words in s. 39A(3) repealed (7.10.2008) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), ss. 51, 70(2), **Sch. 8**; S.I. 2008/2101, art. 2(3)(b); S.I. 2009/775, art. 2(b); for savings see S.I. 2003/938, art. 4; S.I. 2008/2101, art. 3(3); S.I. 2009/775, art. 3
- F396** Words in s. 39A(3) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 3(3)(b)**
- F397** Words in s. 39A(3) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 3(3)(c)**
- F398** S. 39A(3A)-(3D) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by [The Bereavement Benefits \(Remedial\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/134\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(e)** (with art. 2)
- F399** Words in s. 39A(4) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 20(5)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F400** Words in s. 39A(4) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by [The Bereavement Benefits \(Remedial\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/134\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(f)** (with art. 2)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F401** S. 39A(4A) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 20(6)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F402** Words in s. 39A(4A) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by The Bereavement Benefits (Remedial) Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/134), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(g)** (with art. 2)
- F403** S. 39A(4B) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by The Bereavement Benefits (Remedial) Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/134), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(h)** (with art. 2)
- F404** Words in s. 39A(5)(a) substituted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by The Bereavement Benefits (Remedial) Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/134), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(i)** (with art. 2)
- F405** Word in s. 39A(5)(a) repealed (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(10)(b)(d), **Sch. 30**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(6)
- F406** Word in s. 39A(5) inserted (E.W.) (13.3.2014) by The Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 (Consequential and Contrary Provisions and Scotland) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/560), art. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 22(5)**; and inserted (S.) (16.12.2014) by The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3229), art. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 2(5)(a)**
- F407** S. 39A(5)(b) substituted for s. 39A(5)(b)(c) (E.W.) (13.3.2014) by The Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 (Consequential and Contrary Provisions and Scotland) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/560), art. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 22(5)**; and substituted (S.) (16.12.2014) by The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3229), art. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 2(5)(b)**
- F408** Words in s. 39A(5)(b) substituted (2.12.2019) by The Civil Partnership (Opposite-sex Couples) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/1458), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 14(2)(c)**
- F409** S. 39A(6)-(8) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by The Bereavement Benefits (Remedial) Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/134), arts. 1(3), **5(2)(j)** (with art. 2)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C32** S. 39A(2) modified by The Social Security Benefit (Dependency) Regulations 1977 (S.I. 1977/343), **reg. 4B** (as substituted (9.4.2001) by S.I. 2000/1483, regs. 1, 5)

**<sup>F410</sup>39B Bereavement allowance where no dependent children. E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F410** S. 39B repealed (6.4.2017) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 13**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)

**[<sup>F383</sup>39C Rate of widowed parent's allowance <sup>F411</sup>... E+W+S**

(1) The weekly rate of a widowed parent's allowance shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of sections 44 to [<sup>F412</sup>45AA and Schedules 4A and 4B below as they apply] in the case of a Category A retirement pension, but subject, in particular, to the following provisions of this section and section [<sup>F413</sup>46] below.

[ In its application by virtue of subsection (1) above, section 44(4) below is to be read <sup>F414</sup>(1A) as if for the first amount specified in that provision there were substituted a reference to the amount prescribed for the purposes of this subsection.]

<sup>F415</sup>(2) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In the application of sections 44 to [F416]45AA and Schedules 4A and 4B below by virtue of subsection (1) above] —
- (a) where the deceased [F417]spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] was over pensionable age at his or her death, references in those [F418]provisions] to the pensioner shall be taken as references to the deceased [F417]spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner], and
  - (b) where the deceased [F417]spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] was under pensionable age at his or her death, references in those [F419]provisions] to the pensioner and the tax year in which he attained pensionable age shall be taken as references to the deceased [F417]spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] and the tax year in which he or she died.
- (4) Where a widowed parent's allowance is payable to a person whose [F420]spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] dies after [F421]5th October 2002], the additional pension falling to be calculated under sections 44 to [F422]45AA and Schedules 4A and 4B below] by virtue of subsection (1) above shall be one half of the amount which it would be apart from this subsection.

F423(5) . . . . . ]

#### Textual Amendments

- F383** Ss. 39A-39C inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 55(2)**, 89(1); S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- F411** Words in s. 39C heading omitted (6.4.2017) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 14(4)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F412** Words in s. 39C(1) substituted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 93(2)**
- F413** Word in s. 39C(1) substituted (3.1.2012) by [Pensions Act 2008 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 149(1), **Sch. 4 para. 4(2)(c)**; S.I. 2011/3033, art. 2(c)(iv)
- F414** S. 39C(1A)(2) substituted for s. 39C(2) (with effect in relation to the tax year 2010-2011 and subsequent tax years) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 6(6)(a)**, 30(1)(a)(3) (with ss. 5(4)-(6), 6(7)); S.I. 2010/2650
- F415** S. 39C(2) omitted (6.4.2017) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 14(2)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F416** Words in s. 39C(3) substituted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 93(3)**
- F417** Words in s. 39C(3) substituted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by [The Bereavement Benefits \(Remedial\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/134\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(3)(a)** (with art. 2)
- F418** Word in s. 39C(3)(a) substituted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 30(3), **Sch. 2 para. 4(3)**
- F419** Word in s. 39C(3)(b) substituted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 30(3), **Sch. 2 para. 4(3)**
- F420** Words in s. 39C(4) substituted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by [The Bereavement Benefits \(Remedial\) Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/134\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(3)(b)** (with art. 2)
- F421** Words in s. 39C(4) substituted (with retrospective effect) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), **s. 39(1)(a)(2)(a)**, 86(1)(b)(2) (with s. 83(6))
- F422** Words in s. 39C(4) substituted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 93(4)**
- F423** S. 39C(5) omitted (6.4.2017) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 14(3)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C33** S. 39C modified (6.10.2002) by [The Social Security \(Inherited SERPS\) Regulations 2001 \(S.I. 2001/1085\)](#), regs. 1(1), 2, **Sch.** (as amended (5.12.2005) by S.I. 2005/3030, regs. 1, 2)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### [<sup>F424</sup>40 Long-term incapacity benefit for widows. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, this section applies to a woman who—
  - (a) on her late husband's death is not entitled to a widowed mother's allowance or subsequently ceases to be entitled to such an allowance;
  - (b) is incapable of work at the time when he dies or when she subsequently ceases to be so entitled;
  - (c) either—
    - (i) would have been entitled to a widow's pension if she had been over the age of 45 when her husband died or when she ceased to be entitled to a widowed mother's allowance; or
    - (ii) is entitled to such a pension with a reduction under section 39(4) above; and
  - (d) is not entitled to incapacity benefit apart from this section.
- (2) This section does not apply to a woman unless—
  - (a) her husband died after 5th April 1979; or
  - (b) she ceased to be entitled to a widowed mother's allowance after that date (whenever her husband died).
- (3) A woman to whom this section applies is entitled to long-term incapacity benefit under this section for any day of incapacity for work which—
  - (a) falls in a period of incapacity for work that began before the time when her late husband died or she subsequently ceased to be entitled to a widowed mother's allowance; and
  - (b) is after that time and after the first 364 days of incapacity for work in that period.
- (4) A woman to whom this section applies who is not entitled to long-term incapacity benefit under subsection (3) above, but who is terminally ill, is entitled to short-term incapacity benefit under this section for any day of incapacity for work which—
  - (a) falls in a period of incapacity for work that began before the time when her late husband died or she subsequently ceased to be entitled to a widowed mother's allowance, and
  - (b) is after that time and after the first 196 days of incapacity for work in that period.

For the purposes of this subsection a woman is terminally ill if she suffers from a progressive disease and her death in consequence of that disease can reasonably be expected within 6 months.

- (5) The weekly rate of incapacity benefit payable under this section is—
  - (a) if the woman is not entitled to a widow's pension, that which would apply if she were entitled to long-term incapacity benefit under section 30A above; and
  - (b) if she is entitled to a widow's pension with a reduction under section 39(4) above, the difference between the weekly rate of that pension and the weekly rate referred to in paragraph (a) above.
- (6) A woman is not entitled to incapacity benefit under this section if she is over pensionable age; but if she has attained pensionable age and the period of incapacity for work mentioned in subsection (3)(a) or (4)(a) above did not terminate before she attained that age—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) she shall, if not otherwise entitled to a Category A retirement pension, be entitled to such a pension, and
  - (b) the weekly rate of the Category A retirement pension to which she is entitled (whether by virtue of paragraph (a) above or otherwise) shall be determined in the prescribed manner.
- (7) Where a woman entitled to short-term incapacity benefit under subsection (4) above attains pensionable age and defers her entitlement to a Category A pension or makes an election under section 54(1) below, the days of incapacity for work falling within the period of incapacity for work mentioned in that subsection shall, for the purpose of determining any subsequent entitlement to incapacity benefit under section 30A above or the rate of that benefit, be treated as if they had been days of entitlement to short-term incapacity benefit.
- (8) References to short-term incapacity benefit at the higher rate shall be construed as including short-term incapacity benefit payable under subsection (4) above.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F424** S. 40 substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), s. 16\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 8](#); [S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2\(4\), Sch. Pt. 4](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C34** S. 40 excluded (1.10.2010) by [The Employment and Support Allowance \(Transitional Provisions, Housing Benefit and Council Tax Benefit\) \(Existing Awards\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1907\), regs. 1\(2\), 22\(a\)](#)

### <sup>F425</sup>41 Long-term incapacity benefit for widowers. **E+W+S**

- (1) This section applies to a man whose wife has died on or after 6th April 1979 and who either—
- (a) was incapable of work at the time when she died, or
  - (b) becomes incapable of work within the prescribed period after that time, and is not entitled to incapacity benefit apart from this section.
- (2) A man to whom this section applies is entitled to long-term incapacity benefit under this section for any day of incapacity for work which—
- (a) falls in a period of incapacity for work that began before the time when his wife died or within the prescribed period after that time, and
  - (b) is after that time and after the first 364 days of incapacity for work in that period.
- (3) A man to whom this section applies who is not entitled to long-term incapacity benefit under subsection (2) above, but who is terminally ill, is entitled to short-term incapacity benefit under this section for any day of incapacity for work which—
- (a) falls in a period of incapacity for work that began before the time when his wife died or within the prescribed period after that time, and
  - (b) is after that time and after the first 196 days of incapacity for work in that period.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

For the purposes of this subsection a man is terminally ill if he suffers from a progressive disease and his death in consequence of that disease can reasonably be expected within 6 months.

- (4) The weekly rate of incapacity benefit payable under this section is that which would apply if he were entitled to long-term incapacity benefit under section 30A above.
- (5) A man is not entitled to incapacity benefit under this section if he is over pensionable age; but if he has attained pensionable age, and the period of incapacity for work mentioned in subsection (2)(a) or (3)(a) above did not terminate before he attained that age—
  - (a) he shall, if not otherwise entitled to a Category A retirement pension and also not entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of [<sup>F426</sup>the contributions of his wife], be entitled to a Category A retirement pension; and
  - (b) the weekly rate of the Category A retirement pension to which he is entitled (whether by virtue of paragraph (a) above or otherwise) shall be determined in the prescribed manner.
- (6) Where a man entitled to short-term incapacity benefit under subsection (3) above attains pensionable age and defers his entitlement to a Category A pension or makes an election under section 54(1) below, the days of incapacity for work falling within the period of incapacity for work mentioned in that subsection shall, for the purpose of determining any subsequent entitlement to incapacity benefit under section 30A above or the rate of that benefit, be treated as if they had been days of entitlement to short-term incapacity benefit.
- (7) References to short-term incapacity benefit at the higher rate shall be construed as including short-term incapacity benefit payable under subsection (3) above.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F425** S. 41 substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), s. 16\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 9](#); [S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2\(4\), Sch. Pt. 4](#)

**F426** Words in s. 41(5)(a) substituted (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\), s. 180\(2\)\(a\), Sch. 4 para. 21\(4\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C35** S. 41 excluded (1.10.2010) by [The Employment and Support Allowance \(Transitional Provisions, Housing Benefit and Council Tax Benefit\) \(Existing Awards\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1907\), regs. 1\(2\), 22\(a\)](#)

#### <sup>F427</sup> 42 Entitlement under s. 40 or 41 after period of employment or training for work. **E+W+S**

- <sup>F428</sup>(1) Where a person claims incapacity benefit under section 40 or 41 above for a period commencing after he has ceased to be in qualifying remunerative work (within the meaning of Part 1 of the Tax Credits Act 2002) and—
- (a) the day following that on which he so ceased was a day of incapacity for work for him,
  - (b) he has been entitled to incapacity benefit under that section within the period of two years ending with that day of incapacity for work, and
  - (c) he satisfied the relevant tax credit conditions on the day before he so ceased,

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

every day during that period on which he satisfied those conditions is to be treated for the purposes of the claim as a day of incapacity for work for him.

- (1A) A person satisfies the relevant tax credit conditions on a day if—
- (a) he is entitled for the day to the disability element of working tax credit (on a claim made by him or by him jointly with another) or would be so entitled but for the fact that the relevant income (within the meaning of Part 1 of the Tax Credits Act 2002) in his or their case is such that he is not so entitled, and
  - (b) either working tax credit or any element of child tax credit other than the family element is paid in respect of the day on such a claim.]
- (2) Where—
- (a) a person becomes engaged in training for work, and
  - (b) he was entitled to incapacity benefit under section 40 or 41 above for one or more of the 56 days immediately before he became so engaged, and
  - (c) the first day after he ceases to be so engaged is for him a day of incapacity for work and falls not later than the end of the period of two years beginning with the last day for which he was entitled to incapacity benefit under that section,
- any day since that day in which he was engaged in training for work shall be treated for the purposes of any claim for incapacity benefit under that section for a period commencing after he ceases to be so engaged as having been a day of incapacity for work.
- In this subsection “training for work” means training for work in pursuance of arrangements made under section 2(1) of the Employment and Training Act 1973 or section 2(3) of the Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990 or training of such other description as may be prescribed.
- (3) For the purposes of this section “week” means any period of 7 days.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F427** S. 42 substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), s. 16\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 10](#); [S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2\(4\), Sch. Pt. 4](#)

**F428** S. 42(1)(1A) substituted for s. 42(1) (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\), s. 61, Sch. 3 para. 30](#); [S.I. 2003/962, art. 2\(3\)\(d\)\(iii\)](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C36** S. 42 modified (31.3.2003) by [The Tax Credits Act 2002 \(Commencement No. 4, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/962\), art. 5\(3\)](#)

### *Retirement pensions (Categories A and B)*

#### **43 Persons entitled to more than one retirement pension. E+W+S**

- (1) A person shall not be entitled for the same period to more than one retirement pension under this Part of this Act except as provided by subsection (2) below [<sup>F429</sup>and section 61ZC below (which deals with unusual cases involving units of additional pension)].
- (2) A person who, apart from subsection (1) above, would be entitled for the same period to both—



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a Category A or a Category B retirement pension under this Part; and  
(b) a Category C or a Category D retirement pension under Part III below,  
shall be entitled to both of those pensions for that period, subject to any adjustment of them in pursuance of regulations under section 73 of the Administration Act.
- (3) A person who, apart from subsection (1) above, would be entitled—  
[<sup>F430</sup>(a) to both a Category A retirement pension and one or more Category B retirement pensions under this Part for the same period,  
(aa) to more than one Category B retirement pension (but not a Category A retirement pension) under this Part for the same period, or]  
(b) to both a Category C and a Category D retirement pension under Part III below for the same period,  
may from time to time give notice in writing to the Secretary of State specifying which of the pensions referred to in [<sup>F431</sup>paragraph (a), (aa) or (b) (as the case may be)] he wishes to receive.
- (4) If a person gives such a notice, the pension so specified shall be the one to which he is entitled in respect of any week commencing after the date of the notice.
- (5) If no such notice is given, the person shall be entitled to whichever of the pensions is from time to time the most favourable to him (whether it is the pension which he claimed or not).
- [<sup>F432</sup>(6) For the purposes of this section, a pension under section 55A [<sup>F433</sup>or 55AA] below is not a retirement pension.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F429** Words in s. 43(1) inserted (12.10.2015) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), [Sch. 15 para. 5](#); S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)

**F430** S. 43(3)(a)(aa) substituted for s. 43(3)(a) (18.11.2004) by [Pensions Act 2004 \(c. 35\)](#), [ss. 296\(a\)](#), 322(2)(c)(i)

**F431** Words in s. 43(3) substituted (18.11.2004) by [Pensions Act 2004 \(c. 35\)](#), [ss. 296\(b\)](#), 322(2)(c)(i)

**F432** S. 43(6) inserted (1.12.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), [Sch. 12 para. 18](#); S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), Sch. Pt. IV

**F433** Words in s. 43(6) inserted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), [Sch. 11 para. 4](#)

#### 44 Category A retirement pension. **E+W+S**

- (1) A person shall be entitled to a Category A retirement pension if—  
[<sup>F434</sup>(a) the person attained pensionable age before 6 April 2016,] and  
[<sup>F435</sup>(b) he satisfies the relevant conditions or condition;]  
and, subject to the provisions of this Act, he shall become so entitled on the day on which he attains pensionable age and his entitlement shall continue throughout his life.
- [<sup>F436</sup>(1A) In subsection (1)(b) above “the relevant conditions or condition” means—  
(a) in a case where the person attains pensionable age before 6th April 2010, the conditions specified in Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 5;  
(b) in a case where the person attains pensionable age on or after that date, the condition specified in Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 5A.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A Category A retirement pension shall not be payable in respect of any period falling before the day on which the pensioner’s entitlement is to be regarded as commencing for that purpose by virtue of section 5(1)(k) of the Administration Act.
- (3) A Category A retirement pension shall consist of—
- (a) a basic pension payable at a weekly rate; and
  - (b) an additional pension payable where there are one or more surpluses in the pensioner’s earnings factors for the relevant years [<sup>F437</sup>or where the pensioner has one or more units of additional pension].

[<sup>F438</sup>For units of additional pension, see section 14A.]

- [<sup>F439</sup>(4) The weekly rate of the basic pension shall be [<sup>F440</sup>£156.20] except that, so far as the sum is relevant for the purpose of calculating the lower rate of short-term incapacity benefit under section 30B(3) above, it shall be [<sup>F441</sup>£124.90].

In this subsection “the lower rate” means the rate payable for the first 196 days of entitlement in any period of incapacity for work.]

[<sup>F442</sup>(5) .....

- [<sup>F442</sup>(5A) For the purposes of this section and section 45 [<sup>F443</sup>and [<sup>F444</sup>Schedules 4A and 4B]] below—

- (a) there is a surplus in the pensioner’s earnings factor for a relevant year if that factor exceeds the qualifying earnings factor for [<sup>F445</sup>that year,
- (b) the amount of the surplus is the amount of that excess, and
- (c) for the purposes of section 45(1) and (2)(a) and (b) below, the adjusted amount of the surplus] is the amount of that excess, as increased by the last order under section 148 of the Administration Act to come into force before the end of the final relevant year.]

- (6) [<sup>F446</sup>Subject to subsection (7A) below] any reference in this section or section 45 [<sup>F447</sup>or [<sup>F448</sup>Schedule 4A or 4B]] below to the pensioner’s earnings factor for any relevant year is a reference—

[<sup>F449</sup>(za) where the relevant year is the first appointed year or any subsequent year, to the aggregate of his earnings factors derived from [<sup>F450</sup>so much of his earnings as did not exceed [<sup>F451</sup>the applicable limit] and] upon which primary Class 1 contributions have been paid or treated as paid in respect of that year;]

- (a) where the relevant year is 1987-88 or any subsequent tax year [<sup>F452</sup>before the first appointed year], to the aggregate of—
  - (i) his earnings factors derived from earnings upon which primary Class 1 contributions were paid or treated as paid in respect of that year, and
  - [<sup>F453</sup>(ii) his earnings factors derived from Class 2 and Class 3 contributions actually paid in respect of that year, or, if less, the qualifying earnings factor for that year; and]

[<sup>F454</sup>(b) where the relevant year is an earlier tax year, to the aggregate of—

- (i) his earnings factors derived from Class 1 contributions actually paid by him in respect of that year, and
- (ii) his earnings factors derived from Class 2 and Class 3 contributions actually paid by him in respect of that year, or, if less, the qualifying earnings factor for that year.]

- (7) In this section—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) “relevant year” means 1978-79 or any subsequent tax year in the period between—
- (i) (inclusive) the tax year in which the pensioner attained the age of 16, and
  - (ii) (exclusive) the tax year in which he attained pensionable age;
- (b) “final relevant year” means the last tax year which is a relevant year in relation to the pensioner;
- [<sup>F455</sup>(c) “the applicable limit” means—
- (i) in relation to a tax year before [<sup>F456</sup>2009-10], the upper earnings limit;
  - (ii) in relation to [<sup>F456</sup>2009-10] or any subsequent tax year, the upper accrual point.]
- [<sup>F457</sup>(7A) The Secretary of State may prescribe circumstances in which pensioners’ earnings factors for any relevant year may be calculated in such manner as may be prescribed.]
- (8) For the purposes of this section any order under [<sup>F458</sup>section 21 of the Social Security Pensions Act 1975] (which made provision corresponding to section 148 of the Administration Act) shall be treated as an order under section 148 (but without prejudice to sections 16 and 17 of the <sup>M2</sup>Interpretation Act 1978).

#### Textual Amendments

- F434** S. 44(1)(a) substituted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 55** (with ss. 8, 9, Sch. 5 paras. 2-4)
- F435** S. 44(1)(b) substituted (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 30(3), **Sch. 1 para. 1(2)**
- F436** S. 44(1A) inserted (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 30(3), **Sch. 1 para. 1(3)**
- F437** Words in s. 44(3)(b) inserted (12.10.2015) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 6(a)**; S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)
- F438** Words in s. 44(3) inserted (12.10.2015) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 6(b)**; S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)
- F439** S. 44(4) substituted (8.9.1998) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), **ss. 68**, 87(2); S.I. 1998/2209, art. 2(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F440** Sum in s. 44(4) substituted (with effect in accordance with arts. 1(4)(5), 7 of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security Benefits Up-rating Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/316), arts. 1(3)(c), **4(2)(b)**
- F441** Sum in s. 44(4) substituted (with effect in accordance with arts. 1(4)(5), 7 of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security Benefits Up-rating Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/316), arts. 1(3)(c), **4(2)(a)**
- F442** S. 44(5A) substituted for s. 44(5) (with effect in relation to a person who attains pensionable age after 5.4.2000, subject to s. 128(5)(6) of the amending Act) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), **ss. 128(1)(4)**, 180(2)(a) (with Sch. 4) (see also, as to the application of s. 44(5), Pension Schemes Act 1993 (c. 48), s. 48A(4)(5); The Social Security (Contracting-out and Qualifying Earnings Factor) Regulations 1996 (S.I. 1996/2477), reg. 2 (as amended by S.I. 2016/200, arts. 1(2), 8); Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), s. 38; and The Social Security (Contracting-out and Qualifying Earnings Factor and Revision of Relevant Pensions) Regulations 2000 (S.I. 2000/2736), regs. 2, 3)
- F443** Words in s. 44(5A) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 35(5)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F444** Words in s. 44(5A) substituted (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 30(3), **Sch. 2 para. 5(2)**
- F445** Words in s. 44(5A) substituted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 35(6)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F446** Words in s. 44(6) inserted (temp.) (1.7.1992) by Social Security (Consequential Provisions) Act 1992 (c. 6), s. 7(2), Sch. 4 paras. 1, 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F447** Words in s. 44(6) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), **ss. 35(7)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F448** Words in s. 44(6) substituted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 30(3), **Sch. 2 para. 5(3)**
- F449** S. 44(6)(za) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), **ss. 30(2)(a)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F450** Words in s. 44(6)(za) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 10**
- F451** Words in s. 44(6)(za) substituted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 12(2)(a)**, 30(3)
- F452** Words in s. 44(6)(a) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), **ss. 30(2)(b)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F453** S. 44(6)(a)(ii) substituted (with effect in relation to a person who attains pensionable age after 5.4.2000, subject to s. 128(5)(6) of the amending Act) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), **ss. 128(2)(4)**, 180(2)(a) (with Sch. 4)
- F454** S. 44(6)(b) substituted (with effect in relation to a person who attains pensionable age after 5.4.2000, subject to s. 128(5)(6) of the amending Act) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), **ss. 128(2)(4)**, 180(2)(a) (with Sch. 4)
- F455** S. 44(7)(c) inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 12(2)(b)**, 30(3)
- F456** Words in s. 44(7)(c) substituted (21.9.2008) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\)](#), **ss. 3(3)**, 6(1)
- F457** S. 44(7A) inserted (temp.) (1.7.1992) by [Social Security \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 1992 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 7(2), **Sch. 4 paras. 1, 3**
- F458** Words in s. 44(8) substituted (7.2.1994) by [Pension Schemes Act 1993 \(c. 48\)](#), s. 193(2), **Sch. 8 para. 38** (with s. 189, Schs. 6, 9); S.I. 1994/86

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C37** S. 44(4): power to amend conferred (1.7.1992) by [Social Security Administration Act 1992 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 150(1)(a)(ii)**, 151, 192(4)
- C38** S. 44(5A): power to modify conferred by [Pension Schemes Act 1993 \(c. 48\)](#), **s. 48A(4)(5)** (as read with [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), ss. 38, 86(1)(b)(2)(6))
- C39** S. 44(5A) modified (1.11.2000) by [The Social Security \(Contracting-out and Qualifying Earnings Factor and Revision of Relevant Pensions\) Regulations 2000 \(S.I. 2000/2736\)](#), regs. 1(1), **2** (with reg. 3) (as amended by S.I. 2016/200, arts. 1(2), **18**)

#### Marginal Citations

- M2** 1978 c. 30.

#### <sup>F459</sup>44A Deemed earnings factors. **E+W+S**

[ Subsections (1) to (4) below apply to the first appointed year or any subsequent tax <sup>F460</sup>(A1) year before 2010-11.]

- (1) For the purposes of section 44(6)(za) above, if any of the conditions in subsection (2) below is satisfied for a relevant year <sup>F461</sup>to which this subsection applies], a pensioner is deemed to have an earnings factor for that year which—
- is derived from <sup>F462</sup>so much of his earnings as did not exceed <sup>F463</sup>the applicable limit] and] on which primary Class 1 contributions were paid; and
  - is equal to the amount which, when added to any other earnings factors taken into account under that provision, produces an aggregate of earnings factors equal to the low earnings threshold.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) above are that—
- (a) the pensioner would, apart from this section, have an earnings factor for the year—
    - (i) equal to or greater than the qualifying earnings factor for the year; but
    - (ii) less than the low earnings threshold for the year;
  - (b) [<sup>F464</sup>carer’s allowance]—
    - (i) was payable to the pensioner throughout the year; or
    - (ii) would have been so payable but for the fact that under regulations the amount payable to him was reduced to nil because of his receipt of other benefits;
  - (c) for the purposes of paragraph 5(7)(b) of Schedule 3, the pensioner is taken to be precluded from regular employment by responsibilities at home throughout the year by virtue of—
    - (i) the fact that child benefit was payable to him in respect of a child under the age of six; or
    - (ii) his satisfying such other condition as may be prescribed;
  - (d) the pensioner is a person satisfying the requirement in subsection (3) below to whom long-term incapacity benefit [<sup>F465</sup>or qualifying employment and support allowance] was payable throughout the year, or would have been so payable but for the fact that—
    - (i) he did not satisfy the contribution conditions in paragraph 2 of Schedule 3 [<sup>F466</sup>or, as the case may be, [<sup>F467</sup>in paragraphs 1 and 2] of Schedule 1 to the Welfare Reform Act][<sup>F468</sup>2007]; or
    - (ii) under regulations the amount payable to him was reduced to nil because of his receipt of other benefits or of payments from an occupational pension scheme or personal pension scheme.
- (3) The requirement referred to in subsection (2)(d) above is that—
- (a) for one or more relevant years the pensioner has paid, or (apart from this section) is treated as having paid, primary Class 1 contributions on earnings equal to or greater than the qualifying earnings factor; and
  - (b) the years for which he has such a factor constitute at least one tenth of his working life.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3)(b) above—
- (a) a pensioner’s working life shall not include—
    - (i) any tax year before 1978-79; or
    - (ii) any year in which he is deemed under subsection (1) above to have an earnings factor by virtue of fulfilling the condition in subsection (2) (b) or (c) above; and
  - (b) the figure calculated by dividing his working life by ten shall be rounded to the nearest whole year (and any half year shall be rounded down).
- [ The following do not apply to a pensioner attaining pensionable age on or after 6th <sup>F469</sup>(4A) April 2010—
- (a) the requirement referred to in subsection (2)(d) above, and
  - (b) subsections (3) and (4) above.]
- (5) The low earnings threshold for the first appointed year and subsequent tax years shall be £9,500 (but subject to section 148A of the Administration Act).

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[ In subsection (1)(a) “the applicable limit” has the same meaning as in section 44.]  
F470(5A)

(6) In subsection (2)(d)(ii) above, “occupational pension scheme” and “personal pension scheme” have the meanings given by subsection (6) of section 30DD above for the purposes of subsection (5) of that section.

[ In subsection (2)(d) “qualifying employment and support allowance” means  
F471(7) contributory employment and support allowance where—

- (a) that allowance was payable for a continuous period of 52 weeks;
- (b) that allowance included the support component under section 2(2) of the Welfare Reform Act [F4722007]; or
- (c) in the case of—

(i) a man born between 6th April 1944 and 5th April 1947; or

(ii) a woman born between 6th April 1949 and 5th April 1951,

that allowance was payable for a continuous period of 13 weeks immediately following a period throughout which statutory sick pay was payable.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F459** S. 44A inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 30(3), 86(1)(b)(2) (with s. 30(4)); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F460** S. 44A(A1) inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 30(3), [Sch. 1 para. 34\(2\)](#)
- F461** Words in s. 44A(1) inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 30(3), [Sch. 1 para. 34\(3\)](#)
- F462** Words in s. 44A(1)(a) substituted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 8(2), [Sch. 1 para. 11](#)
- F463** Words in s. 44A(1)(a) substituted (21.9.2008) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\)](#), s. 6(1), [Sch. 1 para. 4\(2\)](#)
- F464** Words in s. 44A(2)(b) substituted (1.9.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), arts. 1(1)(b), 2(2), [Sch. para. 2\(a\)](#)
- F465** Words in s. 44A(2)(d) inserted (27.10.2008) by [The Employment and Support Allowance \(Consequential Provisions\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2008 \(S.I. 2008/1554\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b), [47\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F466** Words in s. 44A(2)(d)(i) added (27.10.2008) by [The Employment and Support Allowance \(Consequential Provisions\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2008 \(S.I. 2008/1554\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b), [47\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F467** Words in s. 44A(2)(d)(i) substituted (28.6.2010) by [The Social Security \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/840\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(a\)\(i\)](#)
- F468** Word in s. 44A(2)(d)(i) inserted (28.6.2010) by [The Social Security \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/840\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(a\)\(ii\)](#)
- F469** S. 44A(4A) inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 30(3), [Sch. 1 para. 34\(4\)](#)
- F470** S. 44A(5A) inserted (21.9.2008) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\)](#), s. 6(1), [Sch. 1 para. 4\(3\)](#)
- F471** S. 44A(7) added (27.10.2008) by [The Employment and Support Allowance \(Consequential Provisions\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2008 \(S.I. 2008/1554\)](#), regs. 1(2)(b), [47\(3\)](#)
- F472** Word in s. 44A(7)(b) inserted (28.6.2010) by [The Social Security \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/840\)](#), regs. 1, [4\(b\)](#)

[F473 **44B Deemed earnings factors: 2010-11 onwards** **E+W+S**]

(1) This section applies to 2010-11 and subsequent tax years.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) For the purposes of section 44(6)(za) above, if any of Conditions A to C in subsections (3) to (5) below is satisfied for a relevant year to which this section applies, a pensioner is deemed to have an earnings factor for that year which—
- (a) is derived from so much of his earnings as did not exceed [<sup>F474</sup>the upper accrual point] and on which primary Class 1 contributions were paid; and
  - (b) is equal to the amount which, when added to any other earnings factors taken into account under that provision, produces an aggregate of earnings factors equal to the low earnings threshold.
- (3) Condition A is that the pensioner would, apart from this section, have an earnings factor for the year—
- (a) equal to or greater than the qualifying earnings factor (“the QEF”) for the year, but
  - (b) less than the low earnings threshold for the year.
- (4) Condition B is that the pensioner—
- (a) would, apart from this section and section 44C below, have an earnings factor for the year less than the QEF for the year, but
  - (b) is entitled to an aggregate amount of earnings factor credits for that year under section 44C below equal to the difference between the QEF for the year and the earnings factor mentioned in paragraph (a) above.
- (5) Condition C is that the pensioner is entitled to 52 earnings factor credits for that year under section 44C below.
- (6) This section has effect in relation to the flat rate introduction year and any subsequent tax year as if—
- (a) subsection (2)(b) referred to an aggregate of earnings factors greater than the QEF, but less than the low earnings threshold, for the year (rather than to one equal to that threshold); and
  - (b) Condition A in subsection (3) (and the reference to it in subsection (2)) were omitted.
- (7) In this section—
- <sup>F475</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) “the low earnings threshold” means the low earnings threshold for the year concerned as specified in section 44A above; and
  - (c) in subsections (3) and (4), any reference to the pensioner's earnings factor for a relevant year is to be construed in accordance with section 44(6)(za) above.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F473** Ss. 44B, 44C inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 9(1)**, 30(3)

**F474** Words in s. 44B(2)(a) substituted (21.9.2008) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\)](#), s. 6(1), **Sch. 1 para. 5**

**F475** S. 44B(7)(a) repealed (21.9.2008) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\)](#), s. 6(1), **Sch. 2**

#### [<sup>F473</sup>44C Earnings factor credits **E+W+S**

- (1) This section applies, for the purposes of Conditions B and C in section 44B(4) and (5) above, to 2010-11 and subsequent tax years.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In respect of each week—
- (a) which falls in a relevant year to which this section applies, and
  - (b) in respect of which a pensioner is eligible for earnings factor enhancement, the pensioner is entitled to an earnings factor credit equal to 1/52 of the QEF for that year.

This is subject to subsection (5) below.

- (3) A pensioner is eligible for earnings factor enhancement in respect of a week if one or more of the following apply—
- (a) he was a relevant carer in respect of that week for the purposes of section 23A above (see section 23A(3));
  - (b) carer's allowance was payable to him for any part of that week, or would have been so payable but for the fact that under regulations the amount payable to him was reduced to nil because of his receipt of other benefits;
  - (c) severe disablement allowance was payable to him for any part of that week;
  - (d) long-term incapacity benefit was payable to him for any part of that week or would have been so payable but for the fact that—
    - (i) he did not satisfy the contribution conditions in paragraph 2 of Schedule 3, or
    - (ii) under regulations the amount payable to him was reduced to nil because of his receipt of other benefits or of payments from an occupational pension scheme or personal pension scheme;
  - (e) he satisfies such other conditions as may be prescribed.
- (4) In subsection (3)(d)(ii) above “occupational pension scheme” and “personal pension scheme” have the meanings given by subsection (6) of section 30DD above for the purposes of subsection (5) of that section.
- (5) For the purposes of Condition B in section 44B(4) above a person is not entitled to an aggregate amount of earnings factor credits in respect of a year that is greater than the difference referred to in that Condition.
- (6) For the purposes of this section a week that falls partly in one tax year and partly in another is to be treated as falling in the year in which it begins and not in the following year.
- (7) In section 44B above and this section—
- (a) “the QEF” means the qualifying earnings factor, and
  - (b) any reference to a person being entitled to an earnings factor credit of a particular amount (or to an aggregate amount of earnings factor credits) for a year is a reference to the person being treated as having for that year an earnings factor (within the meaning of section 44(6)(za) above) of the amount in question by virtue of subsection (2) above.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F473** Ss. 44B, 44C inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), ss. **9(1)**, 30(3)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### 45 The additional pension in a Category A retirement pension. **E+W+S**

- (1) The weekly rate of the additional pension in a Category A retirement pension in any case where the pensioner attained pensionable age in a tax year before 6th April 1999 shall be <sup>[F476]</sup>the sum of the following—
- (a) in relation to any surpluses in the pensioner's earnings factors,] the weekly equivalent of 1 1/4 per cent. of the <sup>[F477]</sup>adjusted] amount of the surpluses mentioned in section 44(3)(b) above<sup>[F478]</sup>; and
  - (b) if the pensioner has one or more units of additional pension, a specified amount for each of those units].
- (2) The weekly rate of the additional pension in a Category A retirement pension in any case where the pensioner attained pensionable age in a tax year after 5th April 1999 shall be <sup>[F479]</sup>the sum of the following]—
- (a) in relation to any surpluses in the pensioner's earnings factors for the tax years in the period beginning with 1978-79 and ending with 1987-88, the weekly equivalent of 25/N per cent. of the <sup>[F477]</sup>adjusted] amount of those surpluses; and
  - (b) in relation to any surpluses in the pensioner's earnings factors in a tax year after 1987-88 <sup>[F480]</sup>but before the first appointed year], the weekly equivalent of the relevant percentage of the <sup>[F477]</sup>adjusted] amount of those surpluses<sup>[F481]</sup>; and
  - (c) in relation to any tax years falling within subsection (3A) below, the weekly equivalent of the amount calculated in accordance with Schedule 4A to this Act<sup>[F482]</sup>; and
  - (d) in relation to the flat rate introduction year and subsequent tax years, the weekly equivalent of the amount calculated in accordance with Schedule 4B to this Act<sup>[F483]</sup>; and
  - (e) if the pensioner has one or more units of additional pension, a specified amount for each of those units].

<sup>[F484]</sup>(2A) For the purposes of subsections (1)(b) and (2)(e) the “specified amount” is an amount to be specified by the Secretary of State in regulations.]

- (3) In subsection (2)(b) above, “relevant percentage” means—
- (a) 20/N per cent., where the pensioner attained pensionable age in 2009-10 or any subsequent tax year;
  - (b) (20+X)/N per cent., where the pensioner attained pensionable age in a tax year falling within the period commencing with 1999-2000 and ending with 2008-9.

<sup>[F485]</sup>(3A) The following tax years fall within this subsection—

- (a) the first appointed year;
- (b) subsequent tax years <sup>[F486]</sup>before the flat rate introduction year].]

(4) In this section—

- (a) X = 0.5 for each tax year by which the tax year in which the pensioner attained pensionable age precedes 2009-10; and
- (b) N = the number of tax years in the pensioner's working life which fall after 5th April 1978;

but paragraph (b) above is subject, in particular, to subsection (5) and, where applicable, section 46 below.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Regulations may direct that in prescribed cases or classes of cases any tax year shall be disregarded for the purpose of calculating N under subsection (4)(b) above, if it is a tax year after 5th April 1978 in which the pensioner—
- (a) was credited with contributions or earnings under this Act by virtue of regulations under section 22(5) above, or
  - (b) was precluded from regular employment by responsibilities at home, or
  - (c) in prescribed circumstances, would have been treated as falling within paragraph (a) or (b) above,
- but not so as to reduce the number of years below 20.
- (6) For the purposes of subsections (1) and (2) above, the weekly equivalent of [<sup>F487</sup>any amount] shall be calculated by dividing that amount by 52 and rounding the result to the nearest whole penny, taking any 1/2p as nearest to the next whole penny.
- (7) Where the amount falling to be rounded under subsection (6) above is a sum less than 1/2p, the amount calculated under that subsection shall be taken to be zero, notwithstanding any other provision of this Act or the Administration Act.
- (8) The sums which are the weekly rate of the additional pension in a Category A retirement pension are subject to alteration by orders made by the Secretary of State under section 150 of the Administration Act.

#### Textual Amendments

- F476** Words in s. 45(1) inserted (1.10.2014 for specified purposes, 12.10.2015 in so far as not already in force) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 7(2)(a)**; S.I. 2014/2377, art. 2(1)(a)(ii)(3)(d)(ii); S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)
- F477** Words in s. 45(1)(2)(a)(b) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 35(8)(a)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, **art. 6**; S.I. 2001/153, **art. 2(a)**
- F478** S. 45(1)(b) and word inserted (1.10.2014 for specified purposes, 12.10.2015 in so far as not already in force) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 7(2)(b)**; S.I. 2014/2377, art. 2(1)(a)(ii)(3)(d)(ii); S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)
- F479** Words in s. 45(2) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 31(1)(a)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, **art. 6**; S.I. 2001/153, **art. 2(a)**
- F480** Words in s. 45(2)(b) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 31(1)(b)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F481** S. 45(2)(c) and word inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 31(1)(c)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F482** S. 45(2)(d) and word inserted (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), **ss. 11(2)**, 30(3)
- F483** S. 45(2)(e) and word inserted (1.10.2014 for specified purposes, 12.10.2015 in so far as not already in force) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 7(3)**; S.I. 2014/2377, art. 2(1)(a)(ii)(3)(d)(ii); S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)
- F484** S. 45(2A) inserted (1.10.2014 for specified purposes, 12.10.2015 in so far as not already in force) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 7(4)**; S.I. 2014/2377, art. 2(1)(a)(ii)(3)(d)(ii); S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)
- F485** S. 45(3A) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 31(2)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, **art. 6**; S.I. 2001/153, **art. 2(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F486** Words in s. 45(3A)(b) inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 11(3)**, 30(3)

**F487** Words in s. 45(6) substituted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), **ss. 35(8)(b)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)

[<sup>F488</sup> **45A** **Effect of working families' tax credit and disabled person's tax credit on earnings factor** **E+W+S**]

- (1) For the purposes of calculating additional pension under sections 44 and 45 where, in the case of any relevant year, working families' tax credit is paid in respect of any employed earner, or disabled person's tax credit is paid to any employed earner, section 44(6)(a)(i) shall have effect as if—
  - (a) where that person had earnings of not less than the qualifying earnings factor for that year, being earnings upon which primary class 1 contributions were paid or treated as paid (“qualifying earnings”) in respect of that year, the amount of those qualifying earnings were increased by the aggregate amount (“AG”) of working families' tax credit, or, as the case may be, disabled person's tax credit paid in respect of that year, and
  - (b) in any other case, that person had qualifying earnings in respect of that year and the amount of those qualifying earnings were equal to AG plus the qualifying earnings factor for that year.
- (2) The reference in subsection (1) to the person in respect of whom working families' tax credit is paid—
  - (a) where it is paid to one of a couple, is a reference to the prescribed member of the couple, and
  - (b) in any other case, is a reference to the person to whom it is paid.
- (3) A person's qualifying earnings in respect of any year cannot be treated by virtue of subsection (1) as exceeding the upper earnings limit for that year multiplied by 53.
- (4) Subsection (1) does not apply to any woman who has made, or is treated as having made, an election under regulations under section 19(4), which has not been revoked, that her liability in respect of primary Class 1 contributions shall be at a reduced rate.
- (5) In this section—

“couple” has the same meaning as in Part 7 (see section 137);  
“relevant year” has the same meaning as in section 44.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F488** S. 45AA inserted (with application in accordance with Sch. 4 para. 5(2)-(5) of the amending Act) by [Pensions Act 2008 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 149(1), **Sch. 4 para. 5(1)**; S.I. 2011/3033, art. 2(c)(v)

[<sup>F489</sup> **45A** **Effect of family credit and disability working allowance on earnings factor** **E+W+S**]

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F489** S. 45A repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, [Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2003/962, art. 2(3)(e), [Sch. 1](#)

### [<sup>F490</sup> 45B Reduction of additional pension in Category A retirement pension: pension sharing. **E+W+S**

- (1) The weekly rate of the additional pension in a Category A retirement pension shall be reduced as follows in any case where—
  - (a) the pensioner has become subject to a state scheme pension debit, and
  - (b) the debit is to any extent referable to the additional pension.
- (2) If the pensioner became subject to the debit in or after the final relevant year, the weekly rate of the additional pension shall be reduced by the appropriate weekly amount.
- (3) If the pensioner became subject to the debit before the final relevant year, the weekly rate of the additional pension shall be reduced by the appropriate weekly amount multiplied by the relevant revaluation percentage.
- (4) The appropriate weekly amount for the purposes of subsections (2) and (3) above is the weekly rate, expressed in terms of the valuation day, at which the cash equivalent, on that day, of the pension mentioned in subsection (5) below is equal to so much of the debit as is referable to the additional pension.
- (5) The pension referred to above is a notional pension for the pensioner by virtue of section 44(3)(b) above which becomes payable on the later of—
  - (a) his attaining pensionable age, and
  - (b) the valuation day.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (3) above, the relevant revaluation percentage is the percentage specified, in relation to earnings factors for the tax year in which the pensioner became subject to the debit, by the last order under section 148 of the Administration Act to come into force before the end of the final relevant year.
- [<sup>F491</sup>(7) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the calculation and verification of cash equivalents for the purposes of this section.
- (7A) The power conferred by subsection (7) above includes power to provide—
  - (a) for calculation or verification in such manner as may be approved by or on behalf of the Government Actuary, and
  - (b) for things done under the regulations to be required to be done in accordance with guidance from time to time prepared by a person prescribed by the regulations.]
  - (8) In this section—
 

“final relevant year” means the tax year immediately preceding that in which the pensioner attains pensionable age;

“state scheme pension debit” means a debit under section 49(1)(a) of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (debit for the purposes of this Part of this Act);



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“valuation day” means the day on which the pensioner became subject to the state scheme pension debit.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F490** S. 45B inserted (11.11.1999 for specified purposes, 1.12.2000 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(5)(a), [Sch. 6 para. 2](#); S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), Sch. Pt. IV
- F491** S. 45B(7)(7A) substituted for s. 45B(7) (29.9.2000) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), [ss. 41\(2\)](#), 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2666, art. 2(1)

#### 46 Modifications of section 45 for calculating the additional pension in certain benefits. **E+W+S**

<sup>F492</sup>(1) .....

- (2) For the purpose of determining the additional pension falling to be calculated under section 45 above by virtue of section 39(1) [<sup>F493</sup> or 39C(1)]<sup>F494</sup> ... above or section <sup>F495</sup> ... [<sup>F496</sup>48B(2)] below in a case where the deceased spouse died under pensionable age [<sup>F497</sup> or by virtue of section 39C(1) above or section <sup>F495</sup> ... [<sup>F496</sup>48B(2)] below in a case where the deceased civil partner died under pensionable age]<sup>F498</sup> or by virtue of section 39C(1) above in a case where the deceased cohabiting partner died under pensionable age], the following definition shall be substituted for the definition of “N” in section 45(4)(b) above—

[<sup>F499</sup>“N” =

- (a) the number of tax years which begin after 5th April 1978 and end before the date when the entitlement to the additional pension commences, or
- (b) the number of tax years in the period—
- (i) beginning with the tax year in which the deceased [<sup>F500</sup> spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] (“S”) attained the age of 16 or if later 1978-79, and
- (ii) ending immediately before the tax year in which S would have attained pensionable age if S had not died earlier,
- whichever is the smaller number.”].

- [<sup>F501</sup>(3) For the purpose of determining the additional pension falling to be calculated under section 45 above by virtue of section 48BB below in a case where the deceased spouse [<sup>F502</sup> or civil partner] died under pensionable age, the following definition shall be substituted for the definition of “N” in section 45(4)(b) above—

“N =

- (a) the number of tax years which begin after 5th April 1978 and end before the date when the deceased spouse [<sup>F502</sup> or civil partner] dies, or
- (b) the number of tax years in the period—
- (i) beginning with the tax year in which the deceased spouse [<sup>F502</sup> or civil partner] (“S”) attained the age of 16 or, if later, 1978-79, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(ii) ending immediately before the tax year in which S would have attained pensionable age if S had not died earlier, whichever is the smaller number.”]

- [<sup>F503</sup>(4) For the purpose of determining the additional pension falling to be calculated under section 45 above by virtue of section 39C(1) above in a case where the deceased [<sup>F504</sup>spouse, civil partner or cohabiting partner] died under pensionable age, section 45 has effect subject to the following additional modifications—
- (a) the omission of subsection (2)(d), and
  - (b) the omission in subsection (3A)(b) of the words “before the flat rate introduction year”.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F492** S. 46(1) repealed (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 12(a), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F493** Words in s. 46 inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 5(a)**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. I
- F494** Words in s. 46(2) repealed (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 12(b), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F495** Words in s. 46(2) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 59**
- F496** Words in s. 46(2) substituted (3.1.2012) by Pensions Act 2008 (c. 30), s. 149(1), **Sch. 4 para. 6(2)**; S.I. 2011/3033, art. 2(c)(vii)
- F497** Words in s. 46(2) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 23(a)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F498** Words in s. 46(2) inserted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by The Bereavement Benefits (Remedial) Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/134), arts. 1(3), **5(4)(a)(i)** (with art. 2)
- F499** Words in s. 46(2) substituted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 5**
- F500** Words in s. 46(2) substituted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by The Bereavement Benefits (Remedial) Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/134), arts. 1(3), **5(4)(a)(ii)** (with art. 2)
- F501** S. 46(3) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 32(1)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(b)
- F502** Words in s. 46(3) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 23(c)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F503** S. 46(4) inserted (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 30(3), **Sch. 2 para. 6**
- F504** Words in s. 46(4) substituted (retrospective to 30.8.2018) by The Bereavement Benefits (Remedial) Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/134), arts. 1(3), **5(4)(b)** (with art. 2)

#### 47 Increase of Category A retirement pension for invalidity. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to section 61 below, the weekly rate of a Category A retirement pension shall be increased if the pensioner was entitled to an [<sup>F505</sup>age addition to long-term incapacity benefit by virtue of regulations under section 30B(7) above] in respect of—
- (a) any day falling within the period of 8 weeks ending immediately before the day on which he attains pensionable age; or
  - (b) the last day before the beginning of that period;
- and the increase shall, subject to subsection (2) below, be of an amount equal to the appropriate weekly rate of the [<sup>F505</sup>age addition to long-term incapacity benefit by virtue of regulations under section 30B(7) above] on that day.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Where for any period the weekly rate of a Category A retirement pension includes an additional pension, for that period the relevant amount shall be deducted from the amount that would otherwise be the increase under subsection (1) above and the pensioner shall be entitled to an increase under that subsection only if there is a balance remaining after that deduction and, if there is such a balance, of an amount equal to it.
- (3) In subsection (2) above the “relevant amount” means an amount equal to the additional pension, reduced by the amount of any reduction in the weekly rate of the Category A retirement pension made by virtue of [F506 section 46] of the Pensions Act.
- [F507(3A) In subsections (2) and (3) above references to additional pension do not include any amount of additional pension attributable to units of additional pension.
- (3B) For units of additional pension, see section 14A.]
- (4) In this section any reference to an additional pension is a reference to that pension after any increase under section 52(3) below but without any increase under paragraphs 1 and 2 of Schedule 5 to this Act.
- (5) In ascertaining for the purposes of subsection (1) above the rate of a pensioner’s [F508 age addition to long-term incapacity benefit by virtue of regulations under section 30B(7) above], regard shall be had to the rates in force from time to time.
- (6) Regulations may provide that subsection (1) above shall have effect as if for the reference to 8 weeks there were substituted a reference to a larger number of weeks specified in the regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

- F505** Words in s. 47(1) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), [Sch. 1 para. 13](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4 (with S.I. 1995/310, regs. 1(1), 23)
- F506** Words in s. 47(3) substituted (7.2.1994) by [Pension Schemes Act 1993 \(c. 48\)](#), s. 193(2), [Sch. 8 para. 39](#) (with s. 189, Sch. ss. 6, 9); S.I. 1994/86
- F507** S. 47(3A)(3B) inserted (12.10.2015) by [The Pensions Act 2014 \(Consequential Amendments\) \(Units of Additional Pension\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3213\)](#), arts. 1(2), 2
- F508** Words in s. 47(5) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), [Sch. 1 para. 13](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4 (with S.I. 1995/310, regs. 1(1), 23)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C40** S. 47(1) modified (7.2.1994) by [Pension Schemes Act 1993 \(c. 48\)](#), [ss. 46\(5\)](#), 193(2) (with s. 189, Schs. 6, 9); S.I. 1994/86
- C41** S. 47(3) modified (7.2.1994) by [Pension Schemes Act 1993 \(c. 48\)](#), [ss. 46\(4\)](#), 193(2) (with s. 189, Schs. 6, 9); S.I. 1994/86

## 48 Use of former spouse’s contributions. **E+W+S**

- (1) Where a person [F509 who attained pensionable age before 6 April 2016]—
- (a) has been [F510 in a relevant relationship], and
- (b) in respect of the tax year in which the [F511 relationship] terminated or any previous tax year, does not with his own contributions satisfy the contribution conditions for a Category A retirement pension,

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

then, for the purpose of enabling him to satisfy those conditions (but only in respect of any claim for a Category A retirement pension), the contributions of his former spouse [<sup>F512</sup>or civil partner] may to the prescribed extent be treated as if they were his own contributions.

(2) Subsection (1) above shall not apply in relation to any person who attained pensionable age before 6th April 1979 if the termination of his [<sup>F513</sup>relevant relationship] also occurred before that date.

[<sup>F514</sup>(2A) Regulations under subsection (1) may not provide for contributions of a person in respect of times on or after 6 April 2016 to be treated as contributions of another person.]

[<sup>F515</sup>(3) Where a person has been in a relevant relationship more than once, this section applies only to the last relevant relationship and the references to his relevant relationship and his former spouse or civil partner shall be construed accordingly.

(4) In this section, “relevant relationship” means a marriage or civil partnership.]

[<sup>F516</sup>(5) For the purposes of this section, a civil partnership is not to be treated as having terminated by reason of its having been converted into a marriage under section 9 of the Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 [<sup>F517</sup>or Part 3 of the Marriage and Civil Partnership (Northern Ireland) (No. 2) Regulations 2020 or Part 3 or 4 of the Marriage of Same Sex Couples (Conversion of Civil Partnership) Regulations 2014].]

[<sup>F518</sup>(5) For the purposes of this section, a civil partnership is not to be treated as having terminated by reason of its having been—

- (a) converted into a marriage under section 9 of the Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 [<sup>F519</sup>or Part 3 of the Marriage and Civil Partnership (Northern Ireland) (No. 2) Regulations 2020 or Part 3 or 4 of the Marriage of Same Sex Couples (Conversion of Civil Partnership) Regulations 2014];
- (b) changed into a marriage under the Marriage (Scotland) Act 1977;
- (c) changed into a marriage in accordance with provision made under section 10 of the Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014; or
- (d) changed into a marriage under Part 5 of the Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2014.]

[<sup>F520</sup>(6) For the purposes of this section, a marriage is not to be treated as having terminated by reason of its having been converted into a civil partnership under Part 3, 4 or 5 of the Marriage and Civil Partnership (Northern Ireland) (No. 2) Regulations 2020.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F509** Words in s. 48(1) inserted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 56(2)** (with ss. 8, 9, Sch. 5 paras. 2-4)

**F510** Words in s. 48(1) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 24(2)(a)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

**F511** Word in s. 48(1) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 24(2)(b)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

**F512** Words in s. 48(1) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 24(2)(c)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

**F513** Words in s. 48(2) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 24(3)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F514** S. 48(2A) inserted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 56(3)**
- F515** S. 48(3)(4) substituted for s. 48(3) (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 24(4)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F516** First s. 48(5) inserted (E.W.) (10.12.2014) by Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 (c. 30), s. 21(3), **Sch. 7 para. 30**; S.I. 2014/3169, **art. 2** (which amending provision was repealed (S.) (16.12.2014) by S.I. 2014/3229, art. 1(2), **Sch. 5 para. 21**)
- F517** Words in first s. 48(5) inserted (E.W.) (7.12.2020) by The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Northern Ireland) (No. 2) Regulations 2020 (S.I. 2020/1143), regs. 1(2), **38(2)**
- F518** Second s. 48(5) inserted (E.W.S.) (16.12.2014) by The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3229), art. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 2(7)** (with art. 3(2))
- F519** Words in s. 48(5)(a) inserted (E.W.S.) (7.12.2020) by The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Northern Ireland) (No. 2) Regulations 2020 (S.I. 2020/1143), regs. 1(2), **38(3)**
- F520** S. 48(6) inserted (7.12.2020) by The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Northern Ireland) (No. 2) Regulations 2020 (S.I. 2020/1143), regs. 1(2), **38(4)**

<sup>F521</sup> <sup>F522</sup> **48A Category B retirement pension for married person or civil partner** **E+W+S**

- (1) A married person is entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of his or her spouse if—
- the person attained pensionable age before 6 April 2016, and
  - the spouse—
    - has attained pensionable age, and
    - satisfies the relevant contribution condition.
- (2) But subsection (1) does not confer a right to a Category B retirement pension on—
- a man whose spouse was born before 6 April 1950, or
  - a woman whose wife was born before 6 April 1950.
- (3) A person who is a civil partner is entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of his or her civil partner (“the contributing civil partner”) if—
- the person attained pensionable age before 6 April 2016, and
  - the contributing civil partner—
    - was born on or after 6 April 1950,
    - has attained pensionable age, and
    - satisfies the condition in paragraph 5A of Schedule 3.
- (4) A Category B retirement pension payable under this section is payable at the weekly rate specified in paragraph 5 of Part 1 of Schedule 4.
- (5) A person ceases to be entitled to a Category B retirement pension under this section if—
- the person's spouse or civil partner dies (but see sections 48B and 51), or
  - the person otherwise ceases to be married or in the civil partnership (but see section 48AA).
- (6) In subsection (1)(b)(ii) “the relevant contribution condition” means—
- in a case where the spouse was born before 6 April 1945, the conditions in paragraph 5 of Schedule 3;
  - in any other case, the condition in paragraph 5A of Schedule 3.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F523</sup>(6A) For the purposes of subsection (5)(b), a person is not to be treated as having ceased to be in a civil partnership by reason of its having been converted into a marriage under—
- (a) Part 3 of the Marriage and Civil Partnership (Northern Ireland) (No. 2) Regulations 2020, or
  - (b) Part 3 or 4 of the Marriage of Same Sex Couples (Conversion of Civil Partnership) Regulations 2014 where the civil partnership is a convertible Northern Ireland civil partnership as defined by regulation 2 of those Regulations.
- (6B) For the purposes of subsection (5)(b), a person is not to be treated as having ceased to be married by reason of the person’s marriage having been converted into a civil partnership under Part 3, 4 or 5 of the Marriage and Civil Partnership (Northern Ireland) (No. 2) Regulations 2020.]
- (7) For the purposes of any provision of this Act as it applies in relation to this section, no account is to be taken of any earnings factors of the spouse or contributing civil partner for the tax year beginning with 6 April 2016 or any later tax year.
- (8) Section 51ZA contains special rules for cases involving changes in gender.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F521** Ss. 48A-48C substituted for ss. 49, 50 (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), s. 180(2)(a), [Sch. 4 para. 3\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 4 para. 3\(2\)\(3\)](#))

**F522** Ss. 48A, 48AA substituted for s. 48A (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), [Sch. 12 para. 60](#) (with ss. 8, 9, [Sch. 5 paras. 2-4](#))

**F523** S. 48A(6A)(6B) inserted (7.12.2020) by [The Marriage and Civil Partnership \(Northern Ireland\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2020 \(S.I. 2020/1143\)](#), regs. 1(2), [38\(5\)](#)

#### [<sup>F522</sup>48A] **Category B retirement pension for divorcee or former civil partner** E+W+S

- (1) A person who has been in a marriage that has been dissolved is entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of his or her former spouse if—
  - (a) the person attained pensionable age—
    - (i) before 6 April 2016, and
    - (ii) before the marriage was dissolved, and
  - (b) the former spouse—
    - (i) attained pensionable age before the marriage was dissolved, and
    - (ii) satisfied the relevant contribution condition.
- (2) But subsection (1) does not confer a right to a Category B retirement pension on—
  - (a) a man whose former spouse was born before 6 April 1950, or
  - (b) a woman whose former wife was born before 6 April 1950.
- (3) A person who has been in a civil partnership that has been dissolved is entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of his or her former civil partner if—
  - (a) the person attained pensionable age—
    - (i) before 6 April 2016, and
    - (ii) before the civil partnership was dissolved, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the former civil partner—
  - (i) was born on or after 6 April 1950,
  - (ii) attained pensionable age before the civil partnership was dissolved, and
  - (iii) satisfied the condition in paragraph 5A of Schedule 3.
- (4) During any period when the person's former spouse or civil partner is alive, a Category B retirement pension payable under this section is payable at the weekly rate specified in paragraph 5 of Part 1 of Schedule 4.
- (5) During any period after the person's former spouse or civil partner is dead, a Category B retirement pension payable under this section is payable at the weekly rate of the basic pension specified in section 44(4).
- (6) In subsection (1)(b)(ii) “the relevant contribution condition” means—
  - (a) in a case where the former spouse was born before 6 April 1945, the conditions in paragraph 5 of Schedule 3;
  - (b) in any other case, the condition in paragraph 5A of Schedule 3.
- (7) For the purposes of any provision of this Act as it applies in relation to this section, no account is to be taken of any earnings factors of the former spouse or civil partner for the tax year beginning with 6 April 2016 or any later tax year.
- (8) A voidable marriage or civil partnership which has been annulled is to be treated for the purposes of this section as if it had been a valid marriage or civil partnership which was dissolved at the date of annulment.
- (9) Section 51ZA contains special rules for cases involving changes in gender.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F522** Ss. 48A, 48AA substituted for s. 48A (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), [Sch. 12 para. 60](#) (with ss. 8, 9, [Sch. 5 paras. 2-4](#))

#### [<sup>F521</sup>48B Category B retirement pension for widows and widowers. **E+W+S**

- [<sup>F524</sup>(1) A person (“the pensioner”) whose spouse died while they were married is entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of his or her spouse if—
  - (a) the pensioner attained pensionable age—
    - (i) before 6 April 2016, and
    - (ii) before the spouse died, and
  - (b) the spouse satisfied the relevant contribution condition.
- (1ZA) But subsection (1) does not confer a right to a Category B retirement pension on—
  - (a) a man who attained pensionable age before 6 April 2010, or
  - (b) a woman who attained pensionable age before 6 April 2010 and whose spouse was a woman.
- (1ZB) In subsection (1)(b) “the relevant contribution condition” means—
  - (a) in a case where the spouse—
    - (i) died before 6 April 2010, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) died on or after that date having attained pensionable age before that date,  
the conditions in paragraph 5 of Schedule 3, and  
(b) in any other case, the condition in paragraph 5A of Schedule 3.
- (1A) A person (“the pensioner”) whose civil partner died while they were civil partners of each other is entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of his or her civil partner if—
- (a) the pensioner attained pensionable age—
- (i) on or after 6 April 2010 but before 6 April 2016, and
- (ii) before the civil partner died, and
- (b) the civil partner satisfied the relevant contribution condition.
- (1B) In subsection (1A)(b) “the relevant contribution condition” means—
- (a) in a case where the deceased civil partner attained pensionable age before 6 April 2010, the conditions in paragraph 5 of Schedule 3, and
- (b) in any other case, the condition in paragraph 5A of Schedule 3.]
- (2) A Category B retirement pension payable by virtue of subsection (1) [<sup>F525</sup>or (1A)] above shall be payable at a weekly rate corresponding to—
- (a) the weekly rate of the basic pension, plus
- (b) half of the weekly rate of the additional pension,  
determined in accordance with the provisions of sections 44 to [<sup>F526</sup>45B] above [<sup>F527</sup>and [<sup>F528</sup>Schedules 4A and 4B] below] as they apply in relation to a Category A retirement pension, but subject to section [<sup>F529</sup>46] above and the modifications in subsection (3) below and section 48C(4) below.
- (3) Where the spouse [<sup>F530</sup>or civil partner] died under pensionable age, references in the provisions of sections 44 to [<sup>F526</sup>45B] above [<sup>F527</sup>and Schedule 4A below] as applied by subsection (2) above to the tax year in which the pensioner attained pensionable age shall be taken as references to the tax year in which the spouse [<sup>F530</sup>or civil partner] died.
- [ For the purposes of any provision of this Act as it applies in relation to this section, no
- <sup>F531</sup>(3A) account is to be taken of any earnings factors of the deceased for the tax year beginning with 6 April 2016 or any later tax year.]
- [<sup>F532</sup>(4) A woman (“the pensioner”) whose husband died before she attained pensionable age is entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of her husband if—
- (a) she attained pensionable age before 6 April 2016, and
- (b) the condition in subsection (5) is satisfied.
- (4A) A man (“the pensioner”) whose wife died before he attained pensionable age is entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of his wife if—
- (a) he attained pensionable age on or after 6 April 2010 but before 6 April 2016, and
- (b) the condition in subsection (5) would have been satisfied on the assumption mentioned in subsection (7).]
- (5) The condition is that the pensioner—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) is entitled (or is treated by regulations as entitled) to a widow's pension by virtue of section 38 above, and
  - (b) became entitled to that pension in consequence of the spouse's death.
- (6) A Category B retirement pension payable by virtue of subsection (4) [<sup>F533</sup>or (4A)] above shall be payable—
- (a) where the pensioner is a woman, at the same weekly rate as her widow's pension, and
  - (b) where the pensioner is a man, at the same weekly rate as that of the pension to which he would have been entitled by virtue of section 38 above on the assumption mentioned in subsection (7) below.
- (7) The assumption referred to in subsections [<sup>F534</sup>(4A)] and (6) above is that a man is entitled to a pension by virtue of section 38 above on the same terms and conditions, and at the same rate, as a woman.
- [ Nothing in subsections (4) to (7) above applies in a case where the spouse dies on or <sup>F535</sup>(8) after [<sup>F536</sup>9 April 2001].]
- [ Section 51ZA contains special rules for cases involving changes in gender.]  
<sup>F537</sup>(9)
- [ Subsection (11) applies in the case of a pensioner entitled to a Category B retirement <sup>F538</sup>(10) pension by virtue of subsection (1) or (1A) whose spouse or civil partner—
- (a) attained pensionable age on or after 6 April 2016, and
  - (b) died after attaining pensionable age.
- (11) Where this subsection applies, the amount determined in accordance with subsection (2) as the weekly rate of the additional pension payable to the pensioner must be increased by such percentage as equals the overall percentage by which, had the pension been in payment as from the date when the spouse or civil partner reached pensionable age until the spouse's or civil partner's death, that weekly rate would have increased during that period by virtue of orders under section 150 of the Administration Act (annual uprating of benefits).]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F521** Ss. 48A-48C substituted for ss. 49, 50 (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 3(1)** (with **Sch. 4 para. 3(2)(3)**)
- F524** S. 48B(1)-(1B) substituted for s. 48B(1)-(1A) (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 61(2)** (with ss. 8, 9, **Sch. 5 paras. 2-4**)
- F525** Words in s. 48B(2) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 26(3)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F526** Words in s. 48B(2)(3) substituted (1.12.2000) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 12 para. 20**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), **Sch. Pt. IV**
- F527** Words in s. 48B(2)(3) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 35(10)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F528** Words in s. 48B(2) substituted (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 30(3), **Sch. 2 para. 8**
- F529** Word in s. 48B(2) substituted (3.1.2012) by Pensions Act 2008 (c. 30), s. 149(1), **Sch. 4 para. 8(b)**; S.I. 2011/3033, art. 2(c)(ix)
- F530** Words in s. 48B(3) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 26(4)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F531** S. 48B(3A) inserted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 61(3)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F532** S. 48B(4)(4A) substituted for s. 48B(4) (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 61(4)** (with ss. 8, 9, **Sch. 5** paras. 2-4)
- F533** Words in s. 48B(6) inserted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 61(5)**
- F534** Word in s. 48B(7) substituted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 61(6)**
- F535** S. 48B(8) added (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 6**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. I
- F536** Words in s. 48B(8) substituted (6.4.2017) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 15**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F537** S. 48B(9) inserted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 61(7)**
- F538** S. 48B(10)(11) inserted (6.4.2016) by The Pensions Act 2014 (Consequential and Supplementary Amendments) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/224), arts. 1(2), 2(3)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C42** S. 48B modified (6.10.2002) by The Social Security (Inherited SERPS) Regulations 2001 (S.I. 2001/1085), regs. 1(1), 2, **Sch.** (as amended (5.12.2005) by S.I. 2005/3030, regs. 1, 2)

**[<sup>F539</sup>48B] Category B retirement pension: entitlement by reference to benefits under section 39A or 39B. **E+W+S****

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies where a person (“the pensioner”) [<sup>F540</sup>who attained pensionable age before 6 April 2016] —
  - (a) was, immediately before attaining that age, entitled to a widowed parent’s allowance in consequence of the death of his or her spouse [<sup>F541</sup>or civil partner]; and
  - (b) has not [<sup>F542</sup>following that death married or formed a civil partnership].
- (2) The pensioner shall be entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of the spouse [<sup>F541</sup>or civil partner], which shall be payable at the same weekly rate as the widowed parent’s allowance.
- (3) Subsections (4) to (10) below apply where a person (“the pensioner”) [<sup>F543</sup>who attained pensionable age before 6 April 2016] —
  - (a) was in consequence of the death of his or her spouse [<sup>F541</sup>or civil partner] either—
    - (i) entitled to a bereavement allowance [<sup>F544</sup>under section 39B (before that section was repealed)] at any time prior to attaining that age, or
    - (ii) entitled to a widowed parent’s allowance at any time when over the age of 45 (but not immediately before attaining pensionable age); and
  - (b) has not [<sup>F545</sup>following that death married or formed a civil partnership].
- (4) The pensioner shall be entitled to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of the spouse [<sup>F541</sup>or civil partner].
- (5) A Category B retirement pension payable by virtue of subsection (4) above shall be payable at a weekly rate corresponding to the weekly rate of the additional pension determined in accordance with the provisions of sections 44 to [<sup>F546</sup>45AA][<sup>F547</sup>and 45B] above [<sup>F548</sup>and [<sup>F549</sup>Schedules 4A and 4B] below] as they apply in relation to a Category A retirement pension, but [<sup>F550</sup>subject to section [<sup>F551</sup>46] above and to the following provisions of this section and the modification in section 48C(4) below.]
- (6) Where the spouse [<sup>F541</sup>or civil partner] died under pensionable age, references in the provisions of sections 44 to [<sup>F552</sup>45AA][<sup>F553</sup>and 45B] above [<sup>F548</sup>and Schedule 4A

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- below], as applied by subsection (5) above, to the tax year in which the pensioner attained pensionable age shall be taken as references to the tax year in which the spouse [F541 or civil partner] died.
- (7) Where the spouse [F541 or civil partner] dies after [F554 5th October 2002], the pension payable by virtue of subsection (4) above shall (before making any reduction required by subsection (8) below) be one half of the amount which it would be apart from this subsection.
- (8) Where the pensioner was under the age of 55 at the relevant time, the weekly rate of the pension shall be reduced by 7 per cent. of what it would be apart from this subsection multiplied—
- (a) by the number of years by which the pensioner’s age at that time was less than 55 (any fraction of a year being counted as a year), or
- (b) by ten, if that number exceeds ten.
- (9) In subsection (8) above “the relevant time” means—
- (a) where the pensioner became entitled to a widowed parent’s allowance in consequence of the death of the spouse [F541 or civil partner], the time when the pensioner’s entitlement to that allowance ended; and
- (b) otherwise, the time of the spouse’s [F555 or civil partner's] death.
- (10) The amount determined in accordance with subsections (5) to (9) above as the weekly rate of the pension payable to the pensioner by virtue of subsection (4) above shall be increased by such percentage as equals the overall percentage by which, had the pension been in payment as from the date of the spouse’s [F555 or civil partner's] death until the date when the pensioner attained pensionable age, that weekly rate would have been increased during that period by virtue of any orders under section 150 of the Administration Act (annual up-rating of benefits).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F539** S. 48BB inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), [ss. 56, 89\(1\)](#); [S.I. 2000/1047](#), [art. 2\(2\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- F540** Words in s. 48BB(1) substituted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), [s. 56\(4\)](#), [Sch. 12 para. 62\(2\)](#) (with [ss. 8, 9](#), [Sch. 5 paras. 2-4](#))
- F541** Words in s. 48BB inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), [s. 263\(8\)\(d\)](#), [Sch. 24 para. 27\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2005/3175](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#)
- F542** Words in s. 48BB(1)(b) substituted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), [s. 263\(8\)\(d\)](#), [Sch. 24 para. 27\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/3175](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#)
- F543** Words in s. 48BB(3) substituted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), [s. 56\(4\)](#), [Sch. 12 para. 62\(3\)](#) (with [ss. 8, 9](#), [Sch. 5 paras. 2-4](#))
- F544** Words in s. 48BB(3)(a)(i) inserted (6.4.2017) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), [s. 56\(1\)](#), [Sch. 16 para. 16](#); [S.I. 2017/297](#), [art. 3\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 4, 5](#))
- F545** Words in s. 48BB(3)(b) substituted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), [s. 263\(8\)\(d\)](#), [Sch. 24 para. 27\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2005/3175](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#)
- F546** Word in s. 48BB(5) substituted (with application in accordance with [Sch. 4 para. 5\(2\)-\(5\)](#) of the amending Act) by [Pensions Act 2008 \(c. 30\)](#), [s. 149\(1\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 9\(2\)\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2011/3033](#), [art. 2\(c\)\(xi\)](#)
- F547** Words in s. 48BB(5) inserted (3.1.2012) by [Pensions Act 2008 \(c. 30\)](#), [s. 149\(1\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 9\(2\)\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2011/3033](#), [art. 2\(c\)\(xi\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F548** Words in s. 48BB(5)(6) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by **Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000** (c. 19), **ss. 35(11), 86(1)(b)(2)**; S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F549** Words in s. 48BB(5) substituted (26.9.2007) by **Pensions Act 2007** (c. 22), s. 30(3), **Sch. 2 para. 9(a)**
- F550** Words in s. 48BB(5) substituted (26.9.2007) by **Pensions Act 2007** (c. 22), s. 30(3), **Sch. 2 para. 9(b)**
- F551** Word in s. 48BB(5) substituted (3.1.2012) by **Pensions Act 2008** (c. 30), s. 149(1), **Sch. 4 para. 9(2)(d)**; S.I. 2011/3033, art. 2(c)(xi)
- F552** Word in s. 48BB(6) substituted (with application in accordance with Sch. 4 para. 5(2)-(5) of the amending Act) by **Pensions Act 2008** (c. 30), s. 149(1), **Sch. 4 para. 9(3)(a)**; S.I. 2011/3033, art. 2(c)(xi)
- F553** Words in s. 48BB(6) inserted (3.1.2012) by **Pensions Act 2008** (c. 30), s. 149(1), **Sch. 4 para. 9(3)(b)**; S.I. 2011/3033, art. 2(c)(xi)
- F554** Words in s. 48BB(7) substituted (with retrospective effect) by **Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000** (c. 19), **ss. 39(1)(a)(2)(b), 86(1)(b)(2)** (with s. 83(6))
- F555** Words in s. 48BB inserted (5.12.2005) by **Civil Partnership Act 2004** (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 27(3)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C43** S. 48BB modified by **The Social Security (Widow's Benefit and Retirement Pensions) Regulations 1979** (S.I. 1979/642), **reg. 7A** (as inserted (9.4.2001) by S.I. 2000/1483, regs. 1, **7(4)**)
- C44** S. 48BB modified (6.10.2002) by **The Social Security (Inherited SERPS) Regulations 2001** (S.I. 2001/1085), **regs. 1(1), 2, Sch.** (as amended (5.12.2005) by S.I. 2005/3030, regs. 1, **2**)

#### [<sup>F521</sup>48C Category B retirement pension: general. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act, a person's entitlement to a Category B retirement pension shall begin on the day on which the conditions of entitlement become satisfied and shall continue for life.
- (2) In any case where—
  - (a) a person would, apart from section 43(1) above, be entitled both to a Category A and to a Category B retirement pension, and
  - (b) section 47(1) above would apply for the increase of the Category A retirement pension,
 section 47(1) above shall be taken as applying also for the increase of the Category B retirement pension, subject to reduction or extinguishment of the increase by the application of section 47(2) above or section 46(5) of the Pensions Act.
- (3) In the case of a pensioner whose spouse died on or before [<sup>F556</sup>5th October 2002], [<sup>F557</sup>section] 48B(2)(b) above shall have effect with the omission of the words "half of".
- (4) In the application of the provisions of sections 44 to [<sup>F558</sup>45B] above [<sup>F559</sup>and [<sup>F560</sup>Schedules 4A and 4B] below] by virtue of sections <sup>F561</sup>... [<sup>F562</sup>48B(2) or 48BB(5)] above, references in those provisions to the pensioner shall be taken as references to the spouse [<sup>F563</sup>or civil partner]].

#### Textual Amendments

- F521** Ss. 48A-48C substituted for ss. 49, 50 (19.7.1995) by **Pensions Act 1995** (c. 26), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 3(1)** (with **Sch. 4 para. 3(2)(3)**)



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F556** Words in s. 48C(3) substituted (with retrospective effect) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), **ss. 39(1)(a)(2)(b)**, 86(1)(b)(2) (with s. 83(6))
- F557** Words in s. 48C(3) substituted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 63(2)**
- F558** Word in s. 48C(4) substituted (1.12.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), **Sch. 12 para. 21**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), Sch. Pt. IV
- F559** Words in s. 48C(4) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by [Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 \(c. 19\)](#), **ss. 35(12)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)
- F560** Words in s. 48C(4) substituted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 30(3), **Sch. 2 para. 10**
- F561** Word in s. 48C(4) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 63(3)**
- F562** Words in s. 48C(4) substituted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 7**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. I
- F563** Words in s. 48C(4) inserted (5.12.2005) by [The Civil Partnership \(Pensions and Benefit Payments\) \(Consequential, etc. Provisions\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2053\)](#), art. 1(3), **Sch. para. 1**

<sup>F521</sup>**49** **Category B retirement pension for women.** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F521** [Ss. 48A-48C](#) substituted for [ss. 49, 50 \(19.7.1995\)](#) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 3(1)** (with [Sch. 4 para. 3\(2\)\(3\)](#))

<sup>F521</sup>**50** **Rate of Category B retirement pension for women.** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F521** [Ss. 48A-48C](#) substituted for [ss. 49, 50 \(19.7.1995\)](#) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 3(1)** (with [Sch. 4 para. 3\(2\)\(3\)](#))

<sup>F564</sup>**51** **Category B retirement pension for widows, widowers and surviving civil partners who attained pensionable age before 6 April 2010** **E+W+S**

- (1) A person (“the pensioner”) whose spouse died while they were married is entitled to a Category B retirement pension if—
  - (a) they were both over pensionable age at the time of the death,
  - (b) the pensioner attained pensionable age before 6 April 2010, and
  - (c) the spouse satisfied the relevant contribution condition.
- (2) But subsection (1) does not confer a right to a Category B retirement pension on—
  - (a) a woman whose husband has died, or
  - (b) a man whose wife died before 6 April 1979.
- (3) In subsection (1)(c) “the relevant contribution condition” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in a case where the spouse attained pensionable age before 6 April 2010, the conditions in paragraph 5 of Schedule 3, and
  - (b) in a case where the spouse attained pensionable age on or after 6 April 2010, the condition in paragraph 5A of Schedule 3.
- (4) A person (“the pensioner”) whose civil partner died while they were civil partners of each other is entitled to a Category B retirement pension if—
- (a) they were both over pensionable age at the time of the death,
  - (b) the pensioner attained pensionable age before 6 April 2010, and
  - (c) the deceased civil partner satisfied the relevant contribution condition.
- (5) In subsection (4)(c) “the relevant contribution condition” means—
- (a) in a case where the deceased civil partner attained pensionable age before 6 April 2010, the conditions in paragraph 5 of Schedule 3, and
  - (b) in a case where the deceased civil partner attained pensionable age on or after 6 April 2010, the condition in paragraph 5A of Schedule 3.
- (6) The weekly rate of a person's Category B retirement pension under this section is to be determined in accordance with sections 44 to 45AA and [F565 Schedules 4A and 4B] as they apply in the case of a Category A retirement pension taking references in those sections to the pensioner as references to the spouse or deceased civil partner.
- (7) But in the case of—
- (a) a man whose wife dies after 5 October 2002,
  - (b) a surviving party to a marriage of a same sex couple, or
  - (c) a surviving civil partner,
- any amount of additional pension falling to be calculated under subsection (6) is to be halved.
- (8) For the purposes of any provision of this Act as it applies in relation to this section, no account is to be taken of any earnings factors of the spouse or deceased civil partner for the tax year beginning with 6 April 2016 or any later tax year.
- (9) Subject to the provisions of this Act, a person becomes entitled to a Category B retirement pension under this section on the day on which the conditions of entitlement become satisfied and the entitlement continues throughout the person's life.
- (10) Section 51ZA contains special rules for cases involving changes in gender.
- [F566(11) Subsection (12) applies in the case of a pensioner whose spouse or civil partner—
- (a) attained pensionable age on or after 6 April 2016, and
  - (b) died after attaining pensionable age.
- (12) Where this subsection applies, the amount determined in accordance with this section as the weekly rate of the additional pension payable to the pensioner must be increased by such percentage as equals the overall percentage by which, had the pension been in payment as from the date when the spouse or civil partner reached pensionable age until the spouse's or civil partner's death, that weekly rate would have increased during that period by virtue of orders under section 150 of the Administration Act (annual uprating of benefits).]]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F564** S. 51 substituted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\), s. 56\(4\)](#), [Sch. 12 para. 64](#)
- F565** Words in s. 51(6) substituted (6.4.2016) by [The Pensions Act 2014 \(Consequential and Supplementary Amendments\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/224\)](#), arts. 1(2), [2\(4\)\(a\)](#)
- F566** S. 51(11)(12) inserted (6.4.2016) by [The Pensions Act 2014 \(Consequential and Supplementary Amendments\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/224\)](#), arts. 1(2), [2\(4\)\(b\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C45** S. 51 modified (6.10.2002) by [The Social Security \(Inherited SERPS\) Regulations 2001 \(S.I. 2001/1085\)](#), regs. 1(1), 2, [Sch.](#) (as amended (5.12.2005) by [S.I. 2005/3030](#), regs. 1, 2)

### [<sup>F567</sup> **51ZA** **Special provision for married person whose spouse changed gender** **E+W+S**]

- (1) Section 48A(2)(b) does not prevent a woman from being entitled to a Category B retirement pension under that section in a case where—
  - (a) her spouse is a woman by virtue of a full gender recognition certificate having been issued under the Gender Recognition Act 2004, and
  - (b) the marriage subsisted before the time when that certificate was issued.
- (2) Section 48AA(2)(b) does not prevent a woman from being entitled to a Category B retirement pension under that section in a case where—
  - (a) her former spouse was, at the time the marriage was dissolved, a woman by virtue of a full gender recognition certificate having been issued under the Gender Recognition Act 2004, and
  - (b) the marriage subsisted before the time when that certificate was issued.
- (3) Section 48B(1ZA)(b) does not prevent a woman from being entitled to a Category B retirement pension under that section in a case where—
  - (a) her dead spouse was, at the time of death, a woman by virtue of a full gender recognition certificate having been issued under the Gender Recognition Act 2004, and
  - (b) the marriage subsisted before the time when that certificate was issued, and in such a case the reference in section 48B(1ZB)(a)(ii) to the spouse having attained pensionable age before 6 April 2010 is to be read as a reference to the spouse having been born before 6 April 1945.
- (4) Section 51(1) does not confer a right to a Category B retirement pension on a woman if—
  - (a) her dead spouse was, at the time of death, a woman by virtue of a full gender recognition certificate having been issued under the Gender Recognition Act 2004, and
  - (b) the marriage subsisted before the time when that certificate was issued.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F567** S. 51ZA inserted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\), s. 56\(4\)](#), [Sch. 12 para. 65](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**[<sup>F568</sup>51A Special provision for married people. E+W+S**

- (1) This section has effect where, apart from section 43(1) above, a married person [<sup>F569</sup>or civil partner] would be entitled both—
  - (a) to a Category A retirement pension, and
  - (b) to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of the other party to the marriage [<sup>F570</sup>or civil partnership].
- (2) If by reason of a deficiency of contributions the basic pension in the Category A retirement pension falls short of the weekly rate specified in Schedule 4, Part I, paragraph 5, that basic pension shall be increased by the lesser of—
  - (a) the amount of the shortfall, or
  - (b) the amount of the weekly rate of the Category B retirement pension.
- (3) This section does not apply in any case where both parties to the marriage attained pensionable age before 6th April 1979]

**Textual Amendments**

**F568** S. 51A inserted (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), s. 180(2)(a), [Sch. 4 para. 21\(6\)](#)

**F569** Words in s. 51A(1) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), [Sch. 24 para. 29\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2005/3175](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

**F570** Words in s. 51A(1) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), [Sch. 24 para. 29\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2005/3175](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

**52 Special provision for surviving spouses. E+W+S**

- (1) This section has effect where, apart from section 43(1) above, a person would be entitled both—
    - (a) to a Category A retirement pension; and
    - [<sup>F571</sup>(b) to a Category B retirement pension by virtue of the contributions of a spouse [<sup>F572</sup>or civil partner] who has died].
  - (2) If by reason of a deficiency of contributions the basic pension in the Category A retirement pension falls short of the full amount, that basic pension shall be increased by the lesser of—
    - (a) the amount of the shortfall, or
    - (b) the amount of the basic pension in the rate of the Category B retirement pension,

“full amount” meaning for this purpose the sum specified in section 44(4) above as the weekly rate of the basic pension in a Category A retirement pension.
  - (3) If the additional pension in the Category A retirement pension falls short of the [<sup>F573</sup>maximum amount specified in regulations], that additional pension shall be increased by the lesser of—
    - (a) the amount of the shortfall, or
    - (b) the amount of the additional pension in the Category B retirement pension.
- [<sup>F574</sup>(3A) In subsection (3) the references to additional pension in a Category A or Category B retirement pension do not include any amount of additional pension attributable to units of additional pension.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3B) If an amount of additional pension in the Category B retirement pension is attributable to units of additional pension, the additional pension in the Category A retirement pension is increased by that amount (in addition to any increase under subsection (3)).]
- (4) This section does not apply in any case where the death of the wife or husband, as the case may be, occurred before 6th April 1979 and the surviving spouse had attained pensionable age before that date.

**Textual Amendments**

- F571** S. 52(1)(b) substituted (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), s. 180(2)(a), [Sch. 4 para. 21\(7\)](#)
- F572** Words in s. 52(1) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), [Sch. 24 para. 30](#); S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)
- F573** Words in s. 52(3) substituted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), [Sch. 12 para. 66](#)
- F574** S. 52(3A)(3B) inserted (12.10.2015) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), [Sch. 15 para. 8](#); S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)

<sup>F575</sup> **53 Special provision for married women. E+W+S**

**Textual Amendments**

- F575** S. 53 repealed (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), s. 180(2)(a), [Sch. 4 para. 21\(6\)](#), [Sch. 7](#)

**54 Category A and Category B retirement pensions: supplemental provisions. E+W+S**

- (1) Regulations may provide that in the case of a person of any prescribed description who—
- (a) has become entitled to a Category A or Category B retirement pension <sup>F576</sup> ... ; and
  - (b) elects in such manner and in accordance with such conditions as may be prescribed that the regulations shall apply in his case,
- this Part of this Act shall have effect as if that person had not become entitled to such a retirement pension [<sup>F577</sup> or to a shared additional pension].
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) above may make such modifications of the provisions of this Part of this Act, or of those of [<sup>F578</sup> Chapter II of Part I of the Social Security Act 1998] as those provisions apply in a case where a person makes an election under the regulations, as may appear to the Secretary of State necessary or expedient.

<sup>F579</sup> (3) .....

<sup>F580</sup> (4) .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F576** Words in s. 54(1)(a) repealed (6.4.2010) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 6\(1\)\(5\)](#), [Sch. 7 Pt. 2](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F577** Words in s. 54(1) inserted (1.12.2000) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 12 para. 22**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), Sch. Pt. IV
- F578** Words in s. 54(2) substituted (6.9.1999 for specified purposes) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), s. 87(2), **Sch. 7 para. 62**; S.I. 1999/2422, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 14)
- F579** S. 54(3) repealed (6.4.2010) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), ss. 2(5), 27(4)(a), Sch. 1 para. 6, **Sch. 7 Pt. 1**
- F580** S. 54(4) repealed (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), ss. 134(2), 180(2)(a), **Sch. 7 Pt. 2** (with Sch. 4)

**[<sup>F581</sup>55 Pension increase or lump sum where entitlement to retirement pension is deferred **E+W+S****

- (1) Where a person's entitlement to a Category A or Category B retirement pension is deferred, Schedule 5 to this Act has effect.
- (2) In that Schedule—
- paragraph A1 makes provision enabling an election to be made where the pensioner's entitlement is deferred
  - paragraphs 1 to 3 make provision about increasing pension where the pensioner's entitlement is deferred
  - paragraphs 3A and 3B make provision about lump sum payments where the pensioner's entitlement is deferred
  - paragraph 3C makes provision enabling an election to be made where the pensioner's deceased spouse [<sup>F582</sup>or civil partner] has deferred entitlement
  - paragraphs 4 to 7 make provision about increasing pension where the pensioner's deceased spouse [<sup>F582</sup>or civil partner] has deferred entitlement
  - paragraphs 7A and 7B make provision about lump sum payments where the pensioner's deceased spouse [<sup>F582</sup>or civil partner] has deferred entitlement
  - paragraphs 7C to 9 make supplementary provision.
- (3) For the purposes of this Act a person's entitlement to a Category A or Category B retirement pension is deferred if and so long as that person—
- [<sup>F583</sup>(a) does not become entitled to that pension by reason only of not satisfying the conditions of section 1 of the Administration Act (entitlement to benefit dependent on claim), or]
  - (b) in consequence of an election under section 54(1), falls to be treated as not having become entitled to that pension,
- and, in relation to any such pension, "period of deferment" shall be construed accordingly.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F581** S. 55 substituted (18.11.2004 for specified purposes, 6.4.2005 in so far as not already in force) by Pensions Act 2004 (c. 35), ss. **297(1)**, 322(3)(a)
- F582** Words in s. 55(2) inserted (5.12.2005) by The Civil Partnership (Pensions and Benefit Payments) (Consequential, etc. Provisions) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/2053), art. 1(3), **Sch. para. 3(2)**
- F583** S. 55(3)(a) substituted (6.4.2010) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 2(5), **Sch. 1 para. 7**



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### <sup>F584</sup>Shared additional pension

#### Textual Amendments

**F584** Ss. 55A-55C inserted (11.11.1999 for specified purposes, 1.12.2000 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(5)(a), **Sch. 6 para. 3**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(d), Sch. Pt. IV

### **55A** **Shared additional pension** [<sup>F585</sup>because of an old state scheme pension credit] **E** **+W+S**

- [<sup>F586</sup>(1) A person is entitled to a shared additional pension under this section if—
- (a) the person attained pensionable age before 6 April 2016, and
  - (b) the person is entitled to an old state scheme pension credit.]
- (2) A person’s entitlement to a shared additional pension [<sup>F587</sup>under this section] shall continue throughout his life.
- (3) The weekly rate of a shared additional pension [<sup>F588</sup>under this section] shall be the appropriate weekly amount, unless the pensioner’s entitlement to the [<sup>F589</sup>old] state scheme pension credit arose before the final relevant year, in which case it shall be that amount multiplied by the relevant revaluation percentage.
- (4) The appropriate weekly amount for the purposes of subsection (3) above is the weekly rate, expressed in terms of the valuation day, at which the cash equivalent, on that day, of the pensioner’s entitlement, or prospective entitlement, to the shared additional pension is equal to the [<sup>F590</sup>old] state scheme pension credit.
- (5) The relevant revaluation percentage for the purposes of that subsection is the percentage specified, in relation to earnings factors for the tax year in which the entitlement to the [<sup>F591</sup>old] state scheme pension credit arose, by the last order under section 148 of the Administration Act to come into force before the end of the final relevant year.
- [<sup>F592</sup>(6) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the calculation and verification of cash equivalents for the purposes of this section.
- (6A) The power conferred by subsection (6) above includes power to provide—
- (a) for calculation or verification in such manner as may be approved by or on behalf of the Government Actuary, and
  - (b) for things done under the regulations to be required to be done in accordance with guidance from time to time prepared by a person prescribed by the regulations.]
- (7) In this section—
- “final relevant year” means the tax year immediately preceding that in which the pensioner attains pensionable age;
- “[<sup>F593</sup>old] state scheme pension credit” means a credit under section 49(1)(b) of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (credit for the purposes of this Part of this Act);
- “valuation day” means the day on which the pensioner becomes entitled to the [<sup>F593</sup>old] state scheme pension credit.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F585** Words in *s. 55A heading* inserted (6.4.2016) by *Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), Sch. 11 para. 5(5)*
- F586** *S. 55A(1)* substituted (6.4.2016) by *Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), Sch. 11 para. 5(2)*
- F587** Words in *s. 55A(2)* inserted (6.4.2016) by *Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), Sch. 11 para. 5(3)*
- F588** Words in *s. 55A(3)* inserted (6.4.2016) by *Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), Sch. 11 para. 5(3)*
- F589** Word in *s. 55A(3)* inserted (6.4.2016) by *Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), Sch. 11 para. 5(4)*
- F590** Word in *s. 55A(4)* inserted (6.4.2016) by *Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), Sch. 11 para. 5(4)*
- F591** Word in *s. 55A(5)* inserted (6.4.2016) by *Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), Sch. 11 para. 5(4)*
- F592** *S. 55A(6)(6A)* substituted for *s. 55A(6)* (29.9.2000) by *Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), ss. 41(3), 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2666, art. 2(1)*
- F593** Word in *s. 55A(7)* inserted (6.4.2016) by *Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), Sch. 11 para. 5(4)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C46** *S. 55A*: sums amended (coming into force in accordance with arts. 1(4)(5), 7 of the amending S.I.) by *The Social Security Benefits Up-rating Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/316), arts. 1(3)(c), 4(4)(a)*

### **55AA** **Shared additional pension because of a new state scheme pension credit** **E+W**

- (1) A person is entitled to a shared additional pension under this section if—
- the person reached pensionable age before 6 April 2016, and
  - the person is entitled to a new state scheme pension credit.
- (2) A person's entitlement to a shared additional pension under this section continues throughout his or her life.
- (3) The weekly rate of a shared additional pension under this section is equal to the amount of the new state scheme pension credit.
- (4) In this section “new state scheme pension credit” means a credit under section 49A(2)(b) of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F594** *S. 55AA* inserted (6.4.2016) by *Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), Sch. 11 para. 6*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C47** *S. 55AA*: sums amended (coming into force in accordance with arts. 1(4)(5), 7 of the amending S.I.) by *The Social Security Benefits Up-rating Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/316), arts. 1(3)(c), 4(4)(a)*

### **55B** **Reduction of shared additional pension: pension sharing.** **E+W+S**

- (1) The weekly rate of a shared additional pension shall be reduced as follows in any case where—
- the pensioner has become subject to [<sup>F595</sup>an old] state scheme pension debit, and
  - the debit is to any extent referable to the pension.
- (2) If the pensioner became subject to the debit in or after the final relevant year, the weekly rate of the pension shall be reduced by the appropriate weekly amount.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) If the pensioner became subject to the debit before the final relevant year, the weekly rate of the additional pension shall be reduced by the appropriate weekly amount multiplied by the relevant revaluation percentage.
- (4) The appropriate weekly amount for the purposes of subsections (2) and (3) above is the weekly rate, expressed in terms of the valuation day, at which the cash equivalent, on that day, of the pension mentioned in subsection (5) below is equal to so much of the debit as is referable to the shared additional pension.
- (5) The pension referred to above is a notional pension for the pensioner by virtue of section [F596 55A or 55AA (as the case may be)] which becomes payable on the later of—
- (a) his attaining pensionable age, and
  - (b) the valuation day.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (3) above, the relevant revaluation percentage is the percentage specified, in relation to earnings factors for the tax year in which the pensioner became subject to the debit, by the last order under section 148 of the Administration Act to come into force before the end of the final relevant year.
- [F597 (7) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the calculation and verification of cash equivalents for the purposes of this section.
- (7A) The power conferred by subsection (7) above includes power to provide—
- (a) for calculation or verification in such manner as may be approved by or on behalf of the Government Actuary, and
  - (b) for things done under the regulations to be required to be done in accordance with guidance from time to time prepared by a person prescribed by the regulations.]

(8) In this section—

    - “final relevant year” means the tax year immediately preceding that in which the pensioner attains pensionable age;
    - “[F598 old] state scheme pension debit”, means a debit under section 49(1) (a) of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (debit for the purposes of this Part of this Act);
    - “valuation day” means the day on which the pensioner became subject to the state scheme pension debit.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F595** Words in s. 55B(1)(a) substituted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 11 para. 7(2)**

**F596** Words in s. 55B(5) substituted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 11 para. 7(3)**

**F597** S. 55B(7)(7A) substituted for s. 55B(7) (29.9.2000) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 41(4), 86(1)(b)(2)**; S.I. 2000/2666, art. 2(1)

**F598** Word in s. 55B(8) inserted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 11 para. 7(4)**

#### [F599 55CPension increase or lump sum where entitlement to shared additional pension is deferred **E+W+S**

- (1) Where a person’s entitlement to a shared additional pension is deferred, Schedule 5A to this Act has effect.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In that Schedule—
- paragraph 1 makes provision enabling an election to be made where the person's entitlement is deferred
  - paragraphs 2 and 3 make provision about increasing pension where the person's entitlement is deferred
  - paragraphs 4 and 5 make provision about lump sum payments where the person's entitlement is deferred.
- (3) For the purposes of this Act, a person's entitlement to a shared additional pension is deferred—
- (a) where he would be entitled to a Category A or Category B retirement pension but for the fact that his entitlement is deferred, if and so long as his entitlement to such a pension is deferred, and
  - (b) otherwise, if and so long as he does not become entitled to the shared additional pension by reason only of not satisfying the conditions of section 1 of the Administration Act (entitlement to benefit dependent on claim),
- and, in relation to a shared additional pension, "period of deferment" shall be construed accordingly.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F599** S. 55C substituted (18.11.2004 for specified purposes, 6.4.2005 in so far as not already in force) by Pensions Act 2004 (c. 35), ss. 297(2), 322(3)(a)

### *Child's special allowance*

#### 56 **Child's special allowance - existing beneficiaries.** E+W+S

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act <sup>F600</sup>... , a woman whose marriage has been terminated by divorce shall be entitled to a child's special allowance at the weekly rate specified in Schedule 4, Part I, paragraph 6, if—
- (a) the husband of that marriage is dead and satisfied the contribution condition for a child's special allowance specified in Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 6; and
  - (b) she is entitled to child benefit in respect of a child and either—
    - (i) she was so entitled immediately before that husband's death; or
    - (ii) in such circumstances as may be prescribed, he was then so entitled; and
  - (c) either—
    - (i) that husband had before his death been contributing at not less than the prescribed weekly rate to the cost of providing for that child; or
    - (ii) at the date of that husband's death she was entitled, under an order of a court, trust or agreement which she has taken reasonable steps to enforce, to receive (whether from that husband or from another person) payments in respect of that child at not less than that rate provided or procured by that husband.
- (2) A child's special allowance shall not be payable to a woman—
- (a) for any period after her remarriage; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) for any period during which she and a man to whom she is not married are living together as husband and wife.
- (3) Where, apart from this subsection, a person is entitled to receive, in respect of a particular child, payment of an amount by way of a child's special allowance, that amount shall not be payable unless one of the conditions specified in subsection (4) below is satisfied.
- (4) Those conditions are—
  - (a) that the beneficiary would be treated for the purposes of Part IX of this Act as having the child living with him; or
  - (b) that the requisite contributions are being made to the cost of providing for the child.
- (5) The condition specified in subsection (4)(b) above is to be treated as satisfied if, but only if—
  - (a) such contributions are being made at a weekly rate not less than the amount referred to in subsection (3) above—
    - (i) by the beneficiary; or
    - (ii) where the beneficiary is one of two spouses residing together, by them together; and
  - (b) except in prescribed cases, the contributions are over and above those required for the purpose of satisfying section 143(1)(b) below.
- (6) A child's special allowance shall not be payable for any period after 5th April 1987 except to a woman who immediately before 6th April 1987—
  - (a) satisfied the conditions set out in paragraphs (a) to (c) of subsection (1) above; and
  - (b) was not barred from payment of the allowance for either of the reasons mentioned in subsection (2) above,and who has so continued since 6th April 1987.

**Textual Amendments**

**F600** Words in s. 56(1) repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, **Sch. 6**; S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, **Sch.** (with art. 3)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C48** S. 56 modified by [The Social Security Benefit \(Dependency\) Regulations 1977 \(S.I. 1977/343\)](#), **reg. 4B** (as substituted (9.4.2001) by S.I. 2000/1483, regs. 1, 5)

*Provisions relating to unemployment benefit, sickness benefit and invalidity benefit*

<sup>F601</sup>**57** **Determination of days for which benefit is payable.** **E+W+S**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F601** S. 57 repealed (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 14, [Sch. 2](#); [S.I. 1994/2926](#), art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

**<sup>F602</sup>58 Incapacity for work: work as councillor to be disregarded. E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F602** S. 58 repealed (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 15, [Sch. 2](#); [S.I. 1994/2926](#), art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

*Invalidity benefit—disqualifications etc.*

**<sup>F603</sup>59 Invalidity benefit— disqualifications etc. E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F603** S. 59 repealed (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 16, [Sch. 2](#); [S.I. 1994/2926](#), art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

*Complete or partial failure to satisfy contribution conditions*

**60 Complete or partial failure to satisfy contribution conditions. E+W+S**

(1) Subject to the provisions of this section, regulations may provide for persons to be entitled to any of the following benefits, namely—

- (a) a widowed mother’s allowance,
- <sup>F604</sup>(aa) a widowed parent’s allowance,
- <sup>F605</sup>(ab) .....
- (b) a widow’s pension,
- (c) a Category A retirement pension,
- (d) a Category B retirement pension,

in cases where the first contribution condition specified in relation to that benefit in paragraph 5 of Schedule 3 to this Act is satisfied and the second contribution condition so specified is not.

(2) Subject to subsection (8) below, in any case where—

- (a) an employed earner who is married [<sup>F606</sup> or a civil partner] dies as a result of—
  - (i) a personal injury of a kind mentioned in section 94(1) below, or
  - (ii) a disease or injury such as is mentioned in section 108(1) below, and
- (b) the contribution conditions are not wholly satisfied in respect of [<sup>F607</sup>the employed earner],



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

those conditions shall be taken to be satisfied for the purposes of [<sup>F608</sup>the entitlement of the employed earner's [<sup>F609</sup>widow, widower or surviving civil partner]] to any of the benefits specified in subsection (3) below.

- (3) The benefits referred to in subsection (2) above are the following—
- <sup>F610</sup>(a) . . . . .
  - (b) a widowed mother's allowance;
  - [<sup>F611</sup>(ba) a widowed parent's allowance;]
  - <sup>F610</sup>(bb) . . . . .
  - (c) a widow's pension;
  - [<sup>F612</sup>(d) a Category B retirement pension payable by virtue of section 48B [<sup>F613</sup>or 48BB] above].
- (4) Subject to [<sup>F614</sup>subsection (7)] below, regulations under subsection (1) above shall provide for benefit payable by virtue of any such regulations to be payable at a rate, or to be of an amount, less than that which would be applicable under this Part of this Act had both of the relevant contribution conditions been fully satisfied.
- (5) Subject to [<sup>F614</sup>subsection (7)] below, the rate or amount prescribed by regulations under subsection (1) above may vary with the extent to which the relevant contribution conditions are satisfied (and may be nil).
- <sup>F615</sup>(6) . . . . .
- (7) Regulations may provide that where—
- (a) a person is entitled by virtue of subsection (1) above to a Category A or Category B retirement pension consisting only of the additional pension with no basic pension, and
  - (b) that retirement pension, and any graduated retirement benefit to which he may be entitled, together amount to less than the prescribed rate,
- that person's entitlement as respects that retirement pension shall be satisfied either altogether or for a prescribed period by the making of a single payment of the prescribed amount.
- (8) Subsection (2) above only has effect where the employed earner's death occurred on or after 11th April 1988.
- [<sup>F616</sup>(9) References in this section to a Category A or Category B retirement pension do not include one to which Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 5A applies.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F604** S. 60(1)(aa)(ab) inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 8(2)**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. I
- F605** S. 60(1)(ab) omitted (6.4.2017) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 17(2)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F606** Words in s. 60(2) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 31(a)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F607** Words in s. 60(2) substituted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 21(9)(a)**
- F608** Words in s. 60(2) substituted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 21(9)(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F609** Words in s. 60(2) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 31(b)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F610** S. 60(3)(a)(bb) omitted (6.4.2017) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 16 para. 17(3)**; S.I. 2017/297, art. 3(2) (with arts. 4, 5)
- F611** S. 60(3)(ba)(bb) inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 8(3)(b)**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. I
- F612** S. 60(3)(d) substituted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 21(9)(b)**
- F613** Words in s. 60(3)(d) inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 8(3)(c)**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. I
- F614** Words in s. 60(4)(5) substituted (6.4.2003) by Tax Credits Act 2002 (c. 21), s. 61, **Sch. 3 para. 33**; S.I. 2003/962, art. 2(3)(d)(iii)
- F615** S. 60(6) repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by Tax Credits Act 2002 (c. 21), s. 61, **Sch. 6**; S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, Sch. (with art. 3)
- F616** S. 60(9) inserted (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 30(3), **Sch. 1 para. 4**

[<sup>F617</sup> **60A Failure to satisfy contribution condition in paragraph 5A of Schedule 3** **E+W**  
**+S**

- (1) Subsection (2) below applies if the contribution condition in Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 5A is not satisfied in relation to a benefit to which that paragraph applies.
- (2) A person who would have been entitled to the benefit had the condition been satisfied shall nevertheless be entitled to a prescribed proportion of that benefit in respect of each of the years of the contributor's working life that falls within subsection (3) below.
- (3) A year of the contributor's working life falls within this subsection if it is a year in relation to which the requirements in paragraph 5A(2)(a) and (b) of Part I of Schedule 3 are satisfied.
- (4) "The contributor" means the person by whom the condition is to be satisfied.
- (5) In any case where—
  - (a) an employed earner who is married or a civil partner dies on or after 6th April 2010 as a result of—
    - (i) a personal injury of a kind mentioned in section 94(1) below, or
    - (ii) a disease or injury such as is mentioned in section 108(1) below, and
  - (b) the contribution condition specified in Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 5A is not satisfied in respect of the employed earner,
 that condition shall be taken to be satisfied for the purposes of the entitlement of the employed earner's widow, widower or surviving civil partner to a Category B retirement pension payable by virtue of section 48B.
- (6) In subsections (1) to (3) any reference—
  - (a) to the contribution condition in Schedule 3, Part I, paragraph 5A, or
  - (b) to the requirements of paragraph 5A(2)(a) and (b),
 includes a reference to that condition or those requirements as modified by virtue of paragraph 5A(4).]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F617** S. 60A inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 30(3), [Sch. 1 para. 5](#)

### 61 **Exclusion of increase of benefit for failure to satisfy contribution condition.** **E** **+W+S**

(1) A Category A or Category B retirement pension which is payable by virtue of section 60(1) above and a widowed mother's allowance [<sup>F618</sup>or widowed parent's allowance] which is so payable shall not be increased under section 47(1) above or under Part IV below <sup>F619</sup>... if the pension or allowance contains no basic pension in consequence of a failure to satisfy a contribution condition.

[<sup>F620</sup>(2) Where a person is entitled to short-term incapacity benefit at a rate determined under section 30B(3) above and the retirement pension by reference to which the rate of the benefit is determined—

- (a) would have been payable only by virtue of section 60 above, and
- (b) would, in consequence of a failure to satisfy a contribution condition, have contained no basic pension,

the benefit shall not be increased under section 47(1) above or under Part IV below <sup>F619</sup>...]

#### Textual Amendments

**F618** Words in s. 61(1) inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), [Sch. 8 para. 9](#); S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2) (a), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

**F619** Words in s. 61(1)(2) repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, [Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, [Sch.](#) (with art. 3)

**F620** S. 61(2) substituted (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), [Sch. 2 para. 23](#); S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C49** S. 61 modified (13.4.1995) by [The Social Security \(Incapacity Benefit\)\(Transitional\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/310\)](#), regs. 1(1), [23](#)

### [<sup>F621</sup>61ZA] **Shortfall in contributions: people with units of additional pension** **E+W+S**

(1) This section applies to a person who has one or more units of additional pension if the person—

- (a) is not entitled to a Category A retirement pension, but
- (b) would be entitled to a Category A retirement pension if the relevant contribution conditions were satisfied.

(2) The relevant contribution conditions are to be taken to be satisfied for the purposes of the person's entitlement to a Category A retirement pension.

(3) But where a person is entitled to a Category A retirement pension because of this section, the only element of that pension to which the person is so entitled is the additional pension attributable to the units of additional pension.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(4) For units of additional pension, see section 14A.

#### Textual Amendments

**F621** Ss. 61ZA-61ZC inserted (12.10.2015) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), Sch. 15 para. 9; S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)

### 61ZB Shortfall in contributions: people whose dead spouse had units of additional pension **E+W+S**

- (1) This section applies to a person whose spouse or civil partner died with one or more units of additional pension if the person—
  - (a) is not entitled to a Category B retirement pension as a result of the death, but
  - (b) would be entitled to a Category B retirement pension as a result of the death if the relevant contribution conditions were satisfied.
- (2) The relevant contribution conditions are to be taken to be satisfied for the purposes of the person's entitlement to that Category B retirement pension.
- (3) But where a person is entitled to a Category B retirement pension because of this section, the only element of that pension to which the person is so entitled is the additional pension attributable to the units of additional pension.
- (4) For units of additional pension, see section 14A.

#### Textual Amendments

**F621** Ss. 61ZA-61ZC inserted (12.10.2015) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), Sch. 15 para. 9; S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)

### 61ZC Entitlement to more than one pension: sections 61ZA and 61ZB **E+W+S**

- (1) Section 43 does not prevent a person from being entitled for the same period to both—
  - (a) a Category A retirement pension because of section 61ZA, and
  - (b) one Category B retirement pension.
- (2) Section 43 does not prevent a person from being entitled for the same period to both—
  - (a) a Category A retirement pension, and
  - (b) one Category B retirement pension because of section 61ZB (or, if there is more than one such Category B retirement pension, the most favourable of them).
- (3) Accordingly—
  - (a) in section 43(2)(a) the reference to “a Category A or a Category B retirement pension”, in a case in which subsection (1) or (2) of this section applies, includes “a Category A and a Category B retirement pension”,
  - (b) in sections 43(3)(a) and (aa), 51A and 52 “Category A retirement pension” does not include a pension to which a person is entitled because of section 61ZA, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) in sections 43(3)(a) and 52 “Category B retirement pension” does not include a pension to which a person is entitled because of section 61ZB.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F621** Ss. 61ZA–61ZC inserted (12.10.2015) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(1), [Sch. 15 para. 9](#); [S.I. 2015/1475](#), art. 3(b)

### [<sup>F622</sup>61A Contributions paid in error **E+W+S**

- (1) This section applies in the case of any individual if—
- the individual has paid amounts by way of primary Class 1 contributions which, because the individual was not an employed earner, were paid in error, and
  - prescribed conditions are satisfied.
- (2) Regulations may, where—
- this section applies in the case of any individual, and
  - the [<sup>F623</sup>Inland Revenue are] of the opinion that it is appropriate for the regulations to apply to the individual, provide for entitlement to, and the amount of, additional pension to be determined as if the individual had been an employed earner and, accordingly, those contributions had been properly paid.
- (3) The reference in subsection (2) above to additional pension is to additional pension for the individual or the individual’s spouse [<sup>F624</sup>or civil partner] falling to be calculated under section 45 above for the purposes of—
- Category A retirement pension,
  - Category B retirement pension for [<sup>F625</sup>widows, widowers or surviving civil partners][<sup>F626</sup>(payable by virtue of section 48B or 48BB above)],
  - widowed mother’s allowance and widow’s pension, [<sup>F627</sup>and] [<sup>F628</sup>(ca) widowed parent’s allowance,] and
  - incapacity benefit (except in transitional cases).
- (4) Regulations may, where—
- this section applies in the case of any individual, and
  - the [<sup>F629</sup>Inland Revenue are] of the opinion that it is appropriate for regulations made by virtue of section 4(8) of the Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (provision during transition from invalidity benefit to incapacity benefit for incapacity benefit to include the additional pension element of invalidity pension) to have the following effect in the case of the individual, provide for the regulations made by virtue of that section to have effect as if, in relation to the provisions in force before the commencement of that section with respect to that additional pension element, the individual had been an employed earner and, accordingly, the contributions had been properly paid.
- (5) Where such provision made by regulations as is mentioned in subsection (2) or (4) above applies in respect of any individual, regulations under paragraph 8(1)(m) of Schedule 1 to this Act may not require the amounts paid by way of primary Class 1 contributions to be repaid.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Regulations may provide, where—
- (a) such provision made by regulations as is mentioned in subsection (2) or (4) above applies in respect of any individual,
  - (b) prescribed conditions are satisfied, and
  - (c) any amount calculated by reference to the contributions in question has been paid in respect of that individual by way of minimum contributions under section 43 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 (contributions to personal pension schemes),
- for that individual to be treated for the purposes of that Act as if that individual had been an employed earner and, accordingly, the amount had been properly paid.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F622** S. 61A inserted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), ss. 133, 180(2)(a) (with Sch. 4)
- F623** Words in s. 61A(2)(b) substituted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(2)(a), Sch. 1 para. 8; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F624** Words in s. 61A(3) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), Sch. 24 para. 32(a); S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F625** Words in s. 61A(3)(b) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), Sch. 24 para. 32(b); S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F626** Words in s. 61A(3)(b) inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), Sch. 8 para. 10(a); S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F627** Word in s. 61A(3) inserted (27.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), s. 70(2), Sch. 3 para. 9(6); S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(f)
- F628** S. 61A(3)(ca) inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), Sch. 8 para. 10(b); S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. 1
- F629** Words in s. 61A(4)(b) substituted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(2)(a), Sch. 1 para. 8; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

#### Graduated retirement benefit

### 62 Graduated retirement benefit. **E+W+S**

- (1) So long as sections 36 and 37 of the National Insurance Act 1965 (graduated retirement benefit) continue in force by virtue of regulations made under Schedule 3 to the Social Security (Consequential Provisions) Act 1975 or under Schedule 3 to the Consequential Provisions Act, regulations may make provision—
- (a) for <sup>F630</sup>amending section 36(2) of the National Insurance Act 1965 (value of unit of graduated contributions) so that the value is the same for women as it is for men and for replacing section 36(4) of that Act] (increase of graduated retirement benefit in cases of deferred retirement) with provisions corresponding to those of <sup>F631</sup>paragraphs A1 to 3B and 7C] of Schedule 5 to this Act;
  - <sup>F632</sup>(aa) for amending section 36(7) of that Act (persons to be treated as receiving nominal retirement pension) so that where a person has claimed a Category A or Category B retirement pension but—



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) because of an election under section 54(1) above, or
    - (ii) because he has withdrawn his claim for the pension,he is not entitled to such a pension, he is not to be treated for the purposes of the preceding provisions of that section as receiving such a pension at a nominal weekly rate;]
  - [<sup>F633</sup>(ab) for extending section 37 of that Act (increase of woman’s retirement pension by reference to her late husband’s graduated retirement benefit) to civil partners and their late civil partners and for that section (except subsection (5)) so to apply as it applies to women and their late husbands;]
  - [<sup>F634</sup>(ac) for extending section 37 of that Act (increase of woman’s retirement pension by reference to her late husband’s graduated retirement benefit) to civil partners and their late civil partners who attain pensionable age before 6th April 2010 and for that section (except subsection (5)) so to apply as it applies to men and their late wives;]
  - [<sup>F635</sup>(ad) for extending section 37 of that Act (increase of woman’s retirement pension by reference to her late husband’s graduated retirement benefit) to—
    - (i) men and their late husbands, and
    - (ii) women and their late wives,and for that section (except subsection (5)) so to apply as it applies to women and their late husbands;
  - (ae) for extending section 37 of that Act (increase of woman’s retirement pension by reference to her late husband’s graduated retirement benefit) to—
    - (i) men and their late husbands, and
    - (ii) women and their late wives,who attained pensionable age before 6th April 2010 and for that section (except subsection (5)) so to apply as it applies to men and their late wives;]
  - (b) for extending section 37 of that Act (increase of woman’s retirement pension by reference to her late husband’s graduated retirement benefit) to men and their late wives [<sup>F636</sup>and for that section (except subsection (5)) so to apply as it applies to women and their late husbands];
  - [<sup>F637</sup>(c) for amending that section in order to make provisions corresponding to those of paragraphs 3C, 4(1) and (1A) and 7A to 7C of Schedule 5 to this Act enabling a widowed person [<sup>F638</sup>or surviving civil partner] to elect to receive a lump sum, rather than an increase in the weekly rate of retirement pension, in respect of the graduated retirement benefit of his or her deceased spouse [<sup>F639</sup>or civil partner].]
- (2) This section is without prejudice to any power to modify the said sections 36 and 37 conferred by Schedule 3 to the Consequential Provisions Act.
- [<sup>F640</sup>(3) In relevant gender change cases, women and their late wives are to be treated for the purposes of sections 36 and 37 of the National Insurance Act 1965 in the same way as women and their late husbands.
- (4) For that purpose “relevant gender change case”, in relation to a woman (“the pensioner”) and her late wife, means a case where—
  - (a) the late wife was, at the time of her death, a woman by virtue of a full gender recognition certificate having been issued under the Gender Recognition Act 2004, and
  - (b) the marriage of the pensioner and her late wife subsisted before the time when the certificate was issued.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F630** Words in s. 62(1)(a) substituted (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\), s. 180\(2\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 7\(a\)](#)
- F631** Words in s. 62(1)(a) substituted (18.11.2004 for specified purposes, 6.4.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [Pensions Act 2004 \(c. 35\), s. 322\(3\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 11 para. 17\(a\)](#)
- F632** S. 62(1)(aa) inserted (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\), ss. 131\(1\), 180\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 4](#))
- F633** S. 62(1)(ab) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\), s. 263\(8\)\(d\)](#), [Sch. 24 para. 33](#); [S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#)
- F634** S. 62(1)(ac) inserted (29.10.2005) by [The Civil Partnership \(Miscellaneous and Consequential Provisions\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/3029\), art. 1\(2\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 1](#)
- F635** S. 62(1)(ad)(ae) inserted (E.W) (31.10.2013 for specified purposes, 13.3.2014 for specified purposes, 10.12.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [Marriage \(Same Sex Couples\) Act 2013 \(c. 30\), s. 21\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 14\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2013/2789, art. 2\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2014/93, art. 3\(j\)\(ii\)](#); [S.I. 2014/3169, art. 2](#); and inserted (S.) (16.12.2014) by [The Marriage and Civil Partnership \(Scotland\) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3229\), art. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 2\(11\)\(a\)](#)
- F636** Words in s. 62(1)(b) added (19.7.1995) by [Pensions Act 1995 \(c. 26\), s. 180\(2\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 7\(b\)](#)
- F637** S. 62(1)(c) inserted (18.11.2004 for specified purposes, 6.4.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [Pensions Act 2004 \(c. 35\), s. 322\(3\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 11 para. 17\(b\)](#)
- F638** Words in s. 62(1)(c) inserted (26.7.2005 for specified purposes, 5.12.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Civil Partnership \(Pensions and Benefit Payments\) \(Consequential, etc. Provisions\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2053\), art. 1\(2\)\(a\)\(3\)](#), [Sch. para. 4\(a\)](#)
- F639** Words in s. 62(1)(c) added (26.7.2005 for specified purposes, 5.12.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Civil Partnership \(Pensions and Benefit Payments\) \(Consequential, etc. Provisions\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2053\), art. 1\(2\)\(a\)\(3\)](#), [Sch. para. 4\(b\)](#)
- F640** S. 62(3)(4) inserted (E.W) (31.10.2013 for specified purposes, 13.3.2014 for specified purposes, 10.12.2014 in so far as not already in force) by [Marriage \(Same Sex Couples\) Act 2013 \(c. 30\), s. 21\(3\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 14\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2013/2789, art. 2\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2014/93, art. 3\(j\)\(ii\)](#); [S.I. 2014/3169, art. 2](#); and inserted (S.) (16.12.2014) by [The Marriage and Civil Partnership \(Scotland\) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3229\), art. 1\(2\)](#), [Sch. 4 para. 2\(11\)\(b\)](#)

## PART III **E+W+S**

### NON-CONTRIBUTORY BENEFITS

#### 63 Descriptions of non-contributory benefits. **E+W+S**

Non-contributory benefits under this Part of this Act are of the following descriptions, namely—

- (a) attendance allowance;
- <sup>F641</sup>(b) .....
- (c) [<sup>F642</sup>carer's allowance]<sup>F643</sup> ...;
- (d) disability living allowance;
- (e) guardian's allowance;
- (f) retirement pensions of the following categories—
  - (i) Category C, [<sup>F644</sup>payable in certain cases to a widow whose husband was over pensionable age on 5 July 1948 or to a woman whose

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- marriage to a husband who was over pensionable age on that date was terminated otherwise than by his death] (with increase for adult <sup>F645</sup> ... dependants), and
- (ii) Category D, payable to persons over the age of 80;
- (g) age addition payable, in the case of persons over the age of 80, by way of increase of a retirement pension of any category [<sup>F646</sup> under this Act] or of some other pension or allowance from the Secretary of State.

#### Textual Amendments

- F641** S. 63(b) repealed (with savings for those entitled to severe disablement allowance for days immediately before 6.4.2001) (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(1), [Sch. 13 Pt. IV](#); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(g)(4)(5) (with art. 4)
- F642** Words in s. 63(c) substituted (1.9.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), arts. 1(1)(b), 2(2), [Sch. para. 2\(b\)](#)
- F643** Words in s. 63(c) repealed (6.4.2010) by [Welfare Reform Act 2009 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 58(2)(a), 61(2), [Sch. 7 Pt. 2](#)
- F644** Words in s. 63(f)(i) substituted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), [Sch. 12 para. 79](#)
- F645** Words in s. 63(f)(i) repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, [Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, [Sch.](#) (with art. 3)
- F646** Words in s. 63(g) inserted (6.4.2016) by [Pensions Act 2014 \(c. 19\)](#), s. 56(4), [Sch. 12 para. 85](#)

#### Attendance allowance

#### 64 Entitlement. **E+W+S**

- (1) A person shall be entitled to an attendance allowance if he [<sup>F647</sup> has attained pensionable age], he is not entitled to [<sup>F648</sup> an allowance within subsection (1A)] and he satisfies either—
- (a) the condition specified in subsection (2) below (“the day attendance condition”), or
- (b) the condition specified in subsection (3) below (“the night attendance condition”),

and prescribed conditions as to residence and presence in Great Britain.

[<sup>F649</sup>(1A) The following allowances are within this subsection—

- (a) personal independence payment;  
[ adult disability payment;]  
<sup>F650</sup>(aa)  
(b) the care component of a disability living allowance.]

- (2) A person satisfies the day attendance condition if he is so severely disabled physically or mentally that, by day, he requires from another person either—
- (a) frequent attention throughout the day in connection with his bodily functions, or
- (b) continual supervision throughout the day in order to avoid substantial danger to himself or others.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) A person satisfies the night attendance condition if he is so severely disabled physically or mentally that, at night,—
- (a) he requires from another person prolonged or repeated attention in connection with his bodily functions, or
  - (b) in order to avoid substantial danger to himself or others he requires another person to be awake for a prolonged period or at frequent intervals for the purpose of watching over him.
- [<sup>F651</sup>(4) Circumstances may be prescribed in which a person is to be taken to satisfy or not to satisfy such of the conditions mentioned in subsections (2) and (3) above as may be prescribed.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F647** Words in s. 64(1) substituted (6.12.2018) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\), s. 13\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 41](#)
- F648** Words in s. 64(1) substituted (8.4.2013 for specified purposes, 10.6.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\), s. 150\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 5\(2\)](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 7(1)(2)(k), Sch. 3; S.I. 2013/1250, art. 2
- F649** S. 64(1A) inserted (8.4.2013 for specified purposes, 10.6.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\), s. 150\(3\), Sch. 9 para. 5\(3\)](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 7(1)(2)(k), Sch. 3; S.I. 2013/1250, art. 2
- F650** S. 64(1A)(aa) inserted (21.3.2022 with effect in accordance with reg. 1(1) of the amending S.I.) by [The Scotland Act 2016 \(Social Security\) \(Adult Disability Payment and Child Disability Payment\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2022 \(S.I. 2022/335\), reg. 2\(2\)](#)
- F651** S. 64(4) added (12.1.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\), ss. 66\(1\), 89\(1\)](#); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(3)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C50** S. 64 modified (1.7.1992) by [Social Security \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 1992 \(c. 6\), Sch. 3 para. 20](#)

## 65 Period and rate of allowance. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this Act, the period for which a person is entitled to an attendance allowance shall be—
- (a) a period throughout which he has satisfied or is likely to satisfy the day or the night attendance condition or both; and
  - (b) a period preceded immediately, or within such period as may be prescribed, by one of not less than 6 months throughout which he satisfied, or is likely to satisfy, one or both of those conditions.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) above a person who suffers from renal failure and is undergoing such form of treatment as may be prescribed shall, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, be deemed to satisfy or to be likely to satisfy the day or the night attendance condition or both.
- (3) The weekly rate of the attendance allowance payable to a person for any period shall be the higher rate specified in Schedule 4, Part III, paragraph 1, if both as regards that period and as regards the period of 6 months mentioned in subsection (1)(b) above he has satisfied or is likely to satisfy both the day and the night attendance conditions, and shall be the lower rate in any other case.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) A person shall not be entitled to an attendance allowance for any period preceding the date on which he makes or is treated as making a claim for it.
- (5) Notwithstanding anything in subsection (4) above, provision may be made by regulations for a person to be entitled to an attendance allowance for a period preceding the date on which he makes or is treated as making a claim for it if such an allowance has previously been paid to or in respect of him.
- (6) Except in so far as regulations otherwise provide and subject to section 66(1) below—
  - (a) a claim for an attendance allowance may be made during the period of 6 months immediately preceding the period for which the person to whom the claim relates is entitled to the allowance; and
  - (b) an award may be made in pursuance of a claim so made, subject to the condition that, throughout that period of 6 months, that person satisfies—
    - (i) both the day and the night attendance conditions, or
    - (ii) if the award is at the lower rate, one of those conditions.
- [<sup>F652</sup>(7) A person to whom either Regulation (EC) No 1408/71 or Regulation (EC) No 883/2004 applies shall not be entitled to an attendance allowance for a period unless during that period the United Kingdom is competent for payment of sickness benefits in cash to the person for the purposes of Chapter 1 of Title III of the Regulation in question.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F652** S. 65(7) inserted (31.10.2011) by [The Social Security \(Disability Living Allowance, Attendance Allowance and Carers Allowance\) \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2426\)](#), [reg. 5\(2\)](#)

## 66 Attendance allowance for the terminally ill. **E+W+S**

- (1) If a terminally ill person makes a claim expressly on the ground that he is such a person, then—
  - (a) he shall be taken—
    - (i) to satisfy, or to be likely to satisfy, both the day attendance condition and the night attendance condition [<sup>F653</sup>for so much of the period for which he is terminally ill as does not fall before the date of the claim]; and
    - (ii) to have satisfied those conditions for the period of 6 months immediately preceding [<sup>F654</sup>the date of the claim or, if later, the first date on which he is terminally ill] (so however that no allowance shall be payable by virtue of this sub-paragraph for any period preceding that date); and
  - (b) the period for which he is entitled to attendance allowance shall be [<sup>F655</sup>so much of the period for which he is terminally ill as does not fall before the date of the claim].
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) above—
  - (a) a person is “terminally ill” at any time if at that time he suffers from a progressive disease and his death in consequence of that disease can reasonably be expected within [<sup>F656</sup>12] months; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) where a person purports to make a claim for an attendance allowance by virtue of that subsection on behalf of another, that other shall be regarded as making the claim, notwithstanding that it is made without his knowledge or authority.

#### Textual Amendments

- F653** Words in s. 66(1)(a)(i) substituted (12.1.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 66(2)(a)**, 89(1); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(3)
- F654** Words in s. 66(1)(a)(ii) substituted (12.1.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 66(2)(b)**, 89(1); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(3)
- F655** Words in s. 66(1)(b) substituted (12.1.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 66(2)(c)**, 89(1); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(3)
- F656** Word in s. 66(2)(a) substituted (3.4.2023) by [Social Security \(Special Rules for End of Life\) Act 2022 \(c. 42\)](#), **ss. 1(1)**, 2(2); S.I. 2023/383, **reg. 2**

#### 67 Exclusions by regulation. **E+W+S**

- (1) Regulations may provide that, in such circumstances, and for such purposes as may be prescribed, a person who is, or is treated under the regulations as, undergoing treatment for renal failure in a hospital or other similar institution otherwise than as an in-patient shall be deemed not to satisfy or to be unlikely to satisfy the day attendance condition or the night attendance condition, or both of them.
- [<sup>F657</sup>(2) Regulations may provide that an attendance allowance shall not be payable in respect of a person for a period when he is a resident of a care home in circumstances in which any of the costs of any qualifying services provided for him are borne out of public or local funds under a specified enactment.
- (3) The reference in subsection (2) to a care home is to an establishment that provides accommodation together with nursing or personal care.
- (4) The following are qualifying services for the purposes of subsection (2)—
- (a) accommodation,
  - (b) board, and
  - (c) personal care.
- (5) The reference in subsection (2) to a specified enactment is to an enactment which is, or is of a description, specified for the purposes of that subsection by regulations.
- (6) The power to specify an enactment for the purposes of subsection (2) includes power to specify it only in relation to its application for a particular purpose.
- (7) In this section, “enactment” includes an enactment comprised in, or in an instrument made under, an Act of the Scottish Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F657** S. 67(2)-(7) substituted for s. 67(2) (1.10.2007 for specified purposes, 29.10.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 60(1)**, 70(2); S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(2)(a)(b)



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Severe disablement allowance*

#### <sup>F658</sup> **68 Entitlement and rate.** **E+W+S**

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F658** Ss. 68, 69 repealed (with savings for those entitled to severe disablement allowance for days immediately before 6.4.2001) (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), ss. 65, 89(1), **Sch. 13 Pt. IV**; S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(d)(4)(5) (with art. 4) (and see also [The Employment and Support Allowance \(Transitional Provisions, Housing Benefit and Council Tax Benefit\) \(Existing Awards\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1907\)](#), regs. 1(2), 22(b))

#### <sup>F658</sup> **69 Severe disablement allowance: age related addition.** **E+W+S**

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F658** Ss. 68, 69 repealed (with savings for those entitled to severe disablement allowance for days immediately before 6.4.2001) (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), ss. 65, 89(1), **Sch. 13 Pt. IV**; S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(d)(4)(5) (with art. 4) (and see also [The Employment and Support Allowance \(Transitional Provisions, Housing Benefit and Council Tax Benefit\) \(Existing Awards\) \(No. 2\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1907\)](#), regs. 1(2), 22(b))

### *[<sup>F659</sup>Carer's allowance]*

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F659** Words in s. 70 (and cross-heading) substituted (1.9.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), art. 1(1)(b), **2(1)**

#### **70** [<sup>F659</sup>**Carer's allowance**]. **E+W**

- (1) A person shall be entitled to [<sup>F660</sup>a carer's allowance] for any day on which he is engaged in caring for a severely disabled person if—
- (a) he is regularly and substantially engaged in caring for that person;
  - (b) he is not gainfully employed; and
  - (c) the severely disabled person is either such relative of his as may be prescribed or a person of any such other description as may be prescribed.

[<sup>F661</sup>(1A) A person who was entitled to an allowance under this section immediately before the death of the severely disabled person referred to in subsection (1) shall continue to be entitled to it, even though he is no longer engaged in caring for a severely disabled person (and the requirements of subsection (1)(a) and (c) are not satisfied), until—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the end of the week in which he ceases to satisfy any other requirement as to entitlement to the allowance; or
  - (b) the expiry of the period of eight weeks beginning with the Sunday following the death (or beginning with the date of death if the death occurred on Sunday), whichever occurs first.]
- (2) In this section, “severely disabled person” means a person in respect of whom there is payable either an attendance allowance or a disability living allowance by virtue of entitlement to the care component at the highest or middle rate [<sup>F662</sup>or personal independence payment by virtue of entitlement to the daily living component at the standard or enhanced rate][<sup>F663</sup>or [<sup>F664</sup>adult disability payment by virtue of entitlement to the daily living component at the standard or enhanced rate or child disability payment by virtue of entitlement to the care component at the middle or highest rate]][<sup>F665</sup>or armed forces independence payment under the Armed Forces and Reserve Forces (Compensation Scheme) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/517)][<sup>F666</sup>or [<sup>F667</sup>adult disability payment by virtue of entitlement to the daily living component at the standard or enhanced rate or child disability payment by virtue of entitlement to the care component at the middle or highest rate]] or such other payment out of public funds on account of his need for attendance as may be prescribed.
- (3) A person shall not be entitled to an allowance under this section if he is under the age of 16 or receiving full-time education.
- (4) A person shall not be entitled to an allowance under this section unless he satisfies prescribed conditions as to residence or presence in Great Britain.
- <sup>F668</sup>(4A) A person to whom either Regulation (EC) No 1408/71 or Regulation (EC) No 883/2004 applies shall not be entitled to an allowance under this section for a period unless during that period the United Kingdom is competent for payment of sickness benefits in cash to the person for the purposes of Chapter 1 of Title III of the Regulation in question.]
- <sup>F669</sup>(5) .....
- <sup>F669</sup>(6) .....
- (7) No person shall be entitled for the same day to more than one allowance under this section; and where, apart from this subsection, two or more persons would [<sup>F670</sup>have a relevant entitlement for the same day] in respect of the same severely disabled person, one of them only [<sup>F671</sup>shall have that entitlement] and that shall be such one of them—
- (a) as they may jointly elect in the prescribed manner, or
  - (b) as may, in default of such an election, be determined by the Secretary of State in his discretion.
- <sup>F672</sup>(7A) For the purposes of subsection (7) a person has a “relevant entitlement” if—
- (a) the person is entitled to a carer’s allowance, or
  - (b) the person is entitled under section 12 of the Welfare Reform Act 2012 to the inclusion in an award of universal credit of an amount in respect of the fact that the person has regular and substantial caring responsibilities for a severely disabled person.]
- (8) Regulations may prescribe the circumstances in which a person is or is not to be treated for the purposes of this section as engaged, or regularly and substantially engaged, in caring for a severely disabled person, as gainfully employed or as receiving full-time education.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(9) [<sup>F673</sup>A carer’s allowance] shall be payable at the weekly rate specified in Schedule 4, Part III, paragraph 4.

<sup>F674</sup>(10) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F660** Words in s. 70(1) substituted (1.9.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), arts. 1(1)(b), 2(2), **Sch. para. 2(c)**
- F661** S. 70(1A) inserted (28.10.2002) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), arts. 1(1)(a), **3(1)**
- F662** Words in s. 70(2) inserted (8.4.2013) by [The Personal Independence Payment \(Supplementary Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/388\)](#), reg. 2, **Sch. para. 5**
- F663** Words in s. 70(2) inserted (S.) (26.7.2021) by [The Disability Assistance for Children and Young People \(Scotland\) Regulations 2021 \(S.S.I. 2021/174\)](#), reg. 1, **sch. para. 15(2)**
- F664** Words in s. 70(2) substituted (S.) (21.3.2022) by [The Disability Assistance for Working Age People \(Scotland\) Regulations 2022 \(S.S.I. 2022/54\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 16(4)**
- F665** Words in s. 70(2) inserted (8.4.2013) by [The Armed Forces and Reserve Forces \(Compensation Scheme\) \(Consequential Provisions: Primary Legislation\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/796\)](#), arts. 1, **3(2)**
- F666** Words in s. 70(2) inserted (E.W.) (17.11.2021) by [The Social Security \(Scotland\) Act 2018 \(Disability Assistance for Children and Young People\) \(Consequential Modifications\) \(No. 2\) Order 2021 \(S.I. 2021/1301\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(2)**
- F667** Words in s. 70(2) substituted (E.W.) (21.3.2022) by [The Social Security \(Scotland\) Act 2018 \(Disability Assistance and Information-Sharing\) \(Consequential Provision and Modifications\) Order 2022 \(S.I. 2022/332\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13(2)**
- F668** S. 70(4A) inserted (31.10.2011) by [The Social Security \(Disability Living Allowance, Attendance Allowance and Carers Allowance\) \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2426\)](#), **reg. 5(3)**
- F669** S. 70(5)(6) repealed (28.10.2002) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), arts. 1(1)(a), **3(2)** (with art. 4)
- F670** Words in s. 70(7) substituted (3.11.2015 with effect in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Universal Credit and Miscellaneous Amendments Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1754\)](#), regs. 1(1), **11(2)(a)**
- F671** Words in s. 70(7) substituted (3.11.2015 with effect in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Universal Credit and Miscellaneous Amendments Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1754\)](#), regs. 1(1), **11(2)(b)**
- F672** S. 70(7A) inserted (3.11.2015 with effect in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Universal Credit and Miscellaneous Amendments Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1754\)](#), regs. 1(1), **11(3)**
- F673** Words in s. 70(9) substituted (1.9.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), arts. 1(1)(b), 2(2), **Sch. para. 2(c)**
- F674** S. 70(10) omitted (28.10.1994) by virtue of [The Social Security \(Severe Disablement Allowance and Invalid Care Allowance\) Amendment Regulations 1994 \(S.I. 1994/2556\)](#), **reg. 2(3)(c)**

70 [<sup>F1236</sup>Carer’s allowance]. **S**

- (1) A person shall be entitled to [<sup>F1237</sup>a carer’s allowance] for any day on which he is engaged in caring for a severely disabled person if—
- (a) he is regularly and substantially engaged in caring for that person;
  - (b) he is not gainfully employed; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) the severely disabled person is either such relative of his as may be prescribed or a person of any such other description as may be prescribed.

[<sup>F1238</sup>(1A) A person who was entitled to an allowance under this section immediately before the death of the severely disabled person referred to in subsection (1) shall continue to be entitled to it, even though he is no longer engaged in caring for a severely disabled person (and the requirements of subsection (1)(a) and (c) are not satisfied), until—

- (a) the end of the week in which he ceases to satisfy any other requirement as to entitlement to the allowance; or
- (b) the expiry of the period of eight weeks beginning with the Sunday following the death (or beginning with the date of death if the death occurred on Sunday),

whichever occurs first.]

(2) In this section, “severely disabled person” means a person in respect of whom there is payable either an attendance allowance or a disability living allowance by virtue of entitlement to the care component at the highest or middle rate [<sup>F1239</sup> or personal independence payment by virtue of entitlement to the daily living component at the standard or enhanced rate][<sup>F1240</sup> or [<sup>F1241</sup> adult disability payment by virtue of entitlement to the daily living component at the standard or enhanced rate or child disability payment by virtue of entitlement to the care component at the middle or highest rate]][<sup>F1242</sup> or armed forces independence payment under the Armed Forces and Reserve Forces (Compensation Scheme) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/517)][<sup>F1243</sup> or [<sup>F1244</sup> adult disability payment by virtue of entitlement to the daily living component at the standard or enhanced rate or child disability payment by virtue of entitlement to the care component at the middle or highest rate]] or such other payment out of public funds on account of his need for attendance as may be prescribed.

(3) A person shall not be entitled to an allowance under this section if he is under the age of 16 or receiving full-time education.

(4) A person shall not be entitled to an allowance under this section unless he satisfies prescribed conditions as to residence or presence in Great Britain.

[<sup>F1245</sup>(4A) A person to whom either Regulation (EC) No 1408/71 or Regulation (EC) No 883/2004 applies shall not be entitled to an allowance under this section for a period unless during that period the United Kingdom is competent for payment of sickness benefits in cash to the person for the purposes of Chapter 1 of Title III of the Regulation in question.]

<sup>F1246</sup>(5) .....

<sup>F1246</sup>(6) .....

(7) No person shall be entitled for the same day to more than one allowance under this section; and where, apart from this subsection, two or more persons would [<sup>F1247</sup> have a relevant entitlement for the same day] in respect of the same severely disabled person, one of them only [<sup>F1248</sup> shall have that entitlement] and that shall be such one of them—

- (a) as they may jointly elect in the prescribed manner, or
- (b) as may, in default of such an election, be determined by the Secretary of State in his discretion.

[<sup>F1249</sup>(7A) For the purposes of subsection (7) a person has a “relevant entitlement” if—

- (a) the person is entitled to a carer’s allowance, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the person is entitled under section 12 of the Welfare Reform Act 2012 to the inclusion in an award of universal credit of an amount in respect of the fact that the person has regular and substantial caring responsibilities for a severely disabled person.]
- (8) Regulations may prescribe the circumstances in which a person is or is not to be treated for the purposes of this section as engaged, or regularly and substantially engaged, in caring for a severely disabled person, as gainfully employed or as receiving full-time education.
- (9) [<sup>F1250</sup> A carer's allowance] shall be payable at the weekly rate specified in Schedule 4, Part III, paragraph 4.

<sup>F1251</sup>(10) . . . . .

#### Textual Amendments

- F1236** Words in s. 70 (and cross-heading) substituted (1.9.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), art. 1(1)(b), **2(1)**
- F1237** Words in s. 70(1) substituted (1.9.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), arts. 1(1)(b), 2(2), **Sch. para. 2(c)**
- F1238** S. 70(1A) inserted (28.10.2002) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), arts. 1(1)(a), **3(1)**
- F1239** Words in s. 70(2) inserted (8.4.2013) by [The Personal Independence Payment \(Supplementary Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2013 \(S.I. 2013/388\)](#), reg. 2, **Sch. para. 5**
- F1240** Words in s. 70(2) inserted (S.) (26.7.2021) by [The Disability Assistance for Children and Young People \(Scotland\) Regulations 2021 \(S.S.I. 2021/174\)](#), reg. 1, **sch. para. 15(2)**
- F1241** Words in s. 70(2) substituted (S.) (21.3.2022) by [The Disability Assistance for Working Age People \(Scotland\) Regulations 2022 \(S.S.I. 2022/54\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 16(4)**
- F1242** Words in s. 70(2) inserted (8.4.2013) by [The Armed Forces and Reserve Forces \(Compensation Scheme\) \(Consequential Provisions: Primary Legislation\) Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/796\)](#), arts. 1, **3(2)**
- F1243** Words in s. 70(2) inserted (E.W.) (17.11.2021) by [The Social Security \(Scotland\) Act 2018 \(Disability Assistance for Children and Young People\) \(Consequential Modifications\) \(No. 2\) Order 2021 \(S.I. 2021/1301\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(2)**
- F1244** Words in s. 70(2) substituted (E.W.) (21.3.2022) by [The Social Security \(Scotland\) Act 2018 \(Disability Assistance and Information-Sharing\) \(Consequential Provision and Modifications\) Order 2022 \(S.I. 2022/332\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13(2)**
- F1245** S. 70(4A) inserted (31.10.2011) by [The Social Security \(Disability Living Allowance, Attendance Allowance and Carers Allowance\) \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2426\)](#), **reg. 5(3)**
- F1246** S. 70(5)(6) repealed (28.10.2002) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), arts. 1(1)(a), **3(2)** (with art. 4)
- F1247** Words in s. 70(7) substituted (3.11.2015 with effect in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Universal Credit and Miscellaneous Amendments Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1754\)](#), regs. 1(1), **11(2)(a)**
- F1248** Words in s. 70(7) substituted (3.11.2015 with effect in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Universal Credit and Miscellaneous Amendments Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1754\)](#), regs. 1(1), **11(2)(b)**
- F1249** S. 70(7A) inserted (3.11.2015 with effect in accordance with reg. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Universal Credit and Miscellaneous Amendments Regulations 2015 \(S.I. 2015/1754\)](#), regs. 1(1), **11(3)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1250** Words in s. 70(9) substituted (1.9.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [The Regulatory Reform \(Carers Allowance\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1457\)](#), arts. 1(1)(b), 2(2), [Sch. para. 2\(c\)](#)
- F1251** S. 70(10) omitted (28.10.1994) by virtue of [The Social Security \(Severe Disablement Allowance and Invalid Care Allowance\) Amendment Regulations 1994 \(S.I. 1994/2556\)](#), [reg. 2\(3\)\(c\)](#)

### *Disability living allowance*

#### 71 **Disability living allowance.** **E+W+S**

- (1) Disability living allowance shall consist of a care component and a mobility component.
- (2) A person's entitlement to a disability living allowance may be an entitlement to either component or to both of them.
- (3) A person may be awarded either component for a fixed period or [<sup>F675</sup>for an indefinite period], but if his award of a disability living allowance consists of both components, he may not be awarded the components for different fixed periods.
- (4) The weekly rate of a person's disability living allowance for a week for which he has only been awarded one component is the appropriate weekly rate for that component as determined in accordance with this Act or regulations under it.
- (5) The weekly rate of a person's disability living allowance for a week for which he has been awarded both components is the aggregate of the appropriate weekly rates for the two components as so determined.
- (6) A person shall not be entitled to a disability living allowance unless he satisfies prescribed conditions as to residence and presence in Great Britain.
- [<sup>F676</sup>(7) A person shall not be entitled to a disability living allowance while they are entitled to [<sup>F677</sup>adult disability payment or child disability payment].]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F675** Words in s. 71(3) substituted (12.1.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), [ss. 67\(1\), 89\(1\)](#); [S.I. 1999/3309](#), art. 2(3)
- F676** S. 71(7) inserted (26.7.2021) by [The Scotland Act 2016 \(Social Security\) \(Consequential Provision\) \(Miscellaneous Amendment\) Regulations 2021 \(S.I. 2021/804\)](#), regs. 1(2), [2\(2\)](#)
- F677** Words in s. 71(7) substituted (21.3.2022 with effect in accordance with reg. 1(1) of the amending S.I.) by [The Scotland Act 2016 \(Social Security\) \(Adult Disability Payment and Child Disability Payment\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2022 \(S.I. 2022/335\)](#), [reg. 2\(3\)](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C51** S. 71(7) excluded (29.8.2022) by [The Disability Assistance for Working Age People \(Transitional Provisions and Miscellaneous Amendment\) \(Scotland\) Regulations 2022 \(S.S.I. 2022/217\)](#), regs. 1(1), [7\(2\)\(a\)](#)

#### 72 **The care component.** **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act, a person shall be entitled to the care component of a disability living allowance for any period throughout which—



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) he is so severely disabled physically or mentally that—
  - (i) he requires in connection with his bodily functions attention from another person for a significant portion of the day (whether during a single period or a number of periods); or
  - (ii) he cannot prepare a cooked main meal for himself if he has the ingredients; or
- (b) he is so severely disabled physically or mentally that, by day, he requires from another person—
  - (i) frequent attention throughout the day in connection with his bodily functions; or
  - (ii) continual supervision throughout the day in order to avoid substantial danger to himself or others; or
- (c) he is so severely disabled physically or mentally that, at night,—
  - (i) he requires from another person prolonged or repeated attention in connection with his bodily functions; or
  - (ii) in order to avoid substantial danger to himself or others he requires another person to be awake for a prolonged period or at frequent intervals for the purpose of watching over him.

[<sup>F678</sup>(1A) In its application to a person in relation to so much of a period as falls before the day on which he reaches the age of 16, subsection (1) has effect subject to the following modifications—

- (a) the condition mentioned in subsection (1)(a)(ii) shall not apply, and
- (b) none of the other conditions mentioned in subsection (1) shall be taken to be satisfied unless—
  - (i) he has requirements of a description mentioned in the condition substantially in excess of the normal requirements of persons of his age, or
  - (ii) he has substantial requirements of such a description which younger persons in normal physical and mental health may also have but which persons of his age and in normal physical and mental health would not have.]

(2) Subject to the following provisions of this section, a person shall not be entitled to the care component of a disability living allowance unless—

- (a) throughout—
  - (i) the period of 3 months immediately preceding the date on which the award of that component would begin; or
  - (ii) such other period of 3 months as may be prescribed,he has satisfied or is likely to satisfy one or other of the conditions mentioned in subsection (1)(a) to (c) above; and
- (b) he is likely to continue to satisfy one or other of those conditions throughout—
  - (i) the period of 6 months beginning with that date; or
  - (ii) (if his death is expected within the period of 6 months beginning with that date) the period so beginning and ending with his death.

[<sup>F679</sup>(2A) The modifications mentioned in subsection (1A) shall have effect in relation to the application of subsection (1) for the purposes of subsection (2), but only—

- (a) in the case of a person who is under the age of 16 on the date on which the award of the care component would begin, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in relation to so much of any period mentioned in subsection (2) as falls before the day on which he reaches the age of 16.]
- (3) Three weekly rates of the care component shall be prescribed.
- (4) The weekly rate of the care component payable to a person for each week in the period for which he is awarded that component shall be—
- (a) the highest rate, if he falls within subsection (2) above by virtue of having satisfied or being likely to satisfy both the conditions mentioned in subsection (1)(b) and (c) above throughout both the period mentioned in paragraph (a) of subsection (2) above and that mentioned in paragraph (b) of that subsection;
  - (b) the middle rate, if he falls within that subsection by virtue of having satisfied or being likely to satisfy one or other of those conditions throughout both those periods; and
  - (c) the lowest rate in any other case.
- (5) For the purposes of this section, a person who is terminally ill, as defined in section 66(2) above, and makes a claim expressly on the ground that he is such a person, shall <sup>F680</sup>(notwithstanding subsection (1A)(b)) be taken—
- (a) to have satisfied the conditions mentioned in subsection (1)(b) and (c) above for the period of 3 months immediately preceding the date of the claim, or, if later, the first date on which he is terminally ill (so however that the care component shall not be payable by virtue of this paragraph for any period preceding that date); and
  - (b) to satisfy or to be likely to satisfy those conditions for <sup>F681</sup>for so much of the period for which he is terminally ill as does not fall before the date of the claim].
- <sup>F682</sup>(6) .....
- (7) Subject to <sup>F683</sup>subsection (5)] above, circumstances may be prescribed in which a person is to be taken to satisfy or not to satisfy such of the conditions mentioned in subsection (1)(a) to (c) above as may be prescribed.
- <sup>F684</sup>(7A) Subsection (1A) has effect subject to regulations made under subsection (7) (except as otherwise prescribed).]
- <sup>F685</sup>(7B) A person to whom either Regulation (EC) No 1408/71 or Regulation (EC) No 883/2004 applies shall not be entitled to the care component of a disability living allowance for a period unless during that period the United Kingdom is competent for payment of sickness benefits in cash to the person for the purposes of Chapter 1 of Title III of the Regulation in question.]
- <sup>F686</sup>(8) Regulations may provide that no amount in respect of a disability living allowance which is attributable to entitlement to the care component shall be payable in respect of a person for a period when he is a resident of a care home in circumstances in which any of the costs of any qualifying services provided for him are borne out of public or local funds under a specified enactment.
- (9) The reference in subsection (8) to a care home is to an establishment that provides accommodation together with nursing or personal care.
- (10) The following are qualifying services for the purposes of subsection (8)—
- (a) accommodation,

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) board, and
  - (c) personal care.
- (11) The reference in subsection (8) to a specified enactment is to an enactment which is, or is of a description, specified for the purposes of that subsection by regulations.
- (12) The power to specify an enactment for the purposes of subsection (8) includes power to specify it only in relation to its application for a particular purpose.
- (13) In this section, “enactment” includes an enactment comprised in, or in an instrument made under, an Act of the Scottish Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F678** S. 72(1A) inserted (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 52(2)**, 70(2); S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(b)
- F679** S. 72(2A) inserted (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 52(3)**, 70(2); S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(b)
- F680** Words in s. 72(5) inserted (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 52(4)**, 70(2); S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(b)
- F681** Words in s. 72(5)(b) substituted (12.1.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 67(2)**, 89(1); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(3)
- F682** S. 72(6) repealed (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 52(5)**, 70(2), **Sch. 8**; S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(b)(e)
- F683** Words in s. 72(7) substituted (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 52(6)**, 70(2); S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(b)
- F684** S. 72(7A) inserted (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 52(7)**, 70(2); S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(b)
- F685** S. 72(7B) inserted (31.10.2011) by [The Social Security \(Disability Living Allowance, Attendance Allowance and Carers Allowance\) \(Miscellaneous Amendments\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2426\)](#), **reg. 5(4)**
- F686** S. 72(8)-(13) substituted for s. 72(8) (1.10.2007 for specified purposes, 29.10.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 60(2)**, 70(2); S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(2)(a)(b)

### 73 The mobility component. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act, a person shall be entitled to the mobility component of a disability living allowance for any period in which he is over [<sup>F687</sup>the relevant age] and throughout which—
- (a) he is suffering from physical disablement such that he is either unable to walk or virtually unable to do so; or
  - [<sup>F688</sup>(ab) he falls within subsection (1AB) below; or
  - (b) he does not fall within that subsection but does fall within subsection (2) below; or]
  - (c) he falls within subsection (3) below; or
  - (d) he is able to walk but is so severely disabled physically or mentally that, disregarding any ability he may have to use routes which are familiar to him on his own, he cannot take advantage of the faculty out of doors without guidance or supervision from another person most of the time.

[<sup>F689</sup>(1A) In subsection (1) above “the relevant age” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in relation to the conditions mentioned in paragraph (a), [<sup>F690</sup>(ab),] (b) or (c) of that subsection, the age of 3;
- (b) in relation to the conditions mentioned in paragraph (d) of that subsection, the age of 5.]

[<sup>F691</sup>(1AB) A person falls within this subsection if—

- (a) he has such severe visual impairment as may be prescribed; and
- (b) he satisfies such other conditions as may be prescribed.]

(2) A person falls within this subsection if—

- (a) he is both blind and deaf; and
- (b) he satisfies such other conditions as may be prescribed.

(3) A person falls within this subsection if—

- (a) he is severely mentally impaired; and
- (b) he displays severe behavioural problems; and
- (c) he satisfies both the conditions mentioned in section 72(1)(b) and (c) above.

[<sup>F692</sup>(4A) In its application to a person in relation to so much of a period as falls before the day on which he reaches the age of 16, subsection (1) has effect subject to the modification that the condition mentioned in paragraph (d) shall not be taken to be satisfied unless—

- (a) he requires substantially more guidance or supervision from another person than persons of his age in normal physical and mental health would require, or
- (b) persons of his age in normal physical and mental health would not require such guidance or supervision.]

(5) <sup>F693</sup>... circumstances may be prescribed in which a person is to be taken to satisfy or not to satisfy a condition mentioned in subsection (1)(a) or (d) or subsection (2)(a) above.

[<sup>F694</sup>(5A) Subsection (4A) has effect subject to regulations made under subsection (5) (except as otherwise prescribed).]

(6) Regulations shall specify the cases which fall within subsection (3)(a) and (b) above.

(7) A person who is to be taken for the purposes of section 72 above to satisfy or not to satisfy a condition mentioned in subsection (1)(b) or (c) of that section is to be taken to satisfy or not to satisfy it for the purposes of subsection (3)(c) above.

(8) A person shall not be entitled to the mobility component for a period unless during most of that period his condition will be such as permits him from time to time to benefit from enhanced facilities for locomotion.

(9) A person shall not be entitled to the mobility component of a disability living allowance unless—

- (a) throughout—
  - (i) the period of 3 months immediately preceding the date on which the award of that component would begin; or
  - (ii) such other period of 3 months as may be prescribed,
 he has satisfied or is likely to satisfy one or other of the conditions mentioned in subsection (1)[<sup>F695</sup>(a) to (d)] above; and
- (b) he is likely to continue to satisfy one or other of those conditions throughout—
  - (i) the period of 6 months beginning with that date; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(ii) (if his death is expected within the period of 6 months beginning with that date) the period so beginning and ending with his death.

[<sup>F696</sup>(9A) The modifications mentioned in subsection (4A) shall have effect in relation to the application of subsection (1) for the purposes of subsection (9), but only—

- (a) in the case of a person who is under the age of 16 on the date on which the award of the mobility component would begin, and
- (b) in relation to so much of any period mentioned in subsection (9) as falls before the day on which he reaches the age of 16.]

(10) Two weekly rates of the mobility component shall be prescribed.

(11) The weekly rate of the mobility component payable to a person for each week in the period for which he is awarded that component shall be—

- (a) the higher rate, if he falls within subsection (9) above by virtue of having satisfied or being likely to satisfy one or other of the conditions mentioned in subsection (1)(a), [<sup>F697</sup>(ab),] (b) and (c) above throughout both the period mentioned in paragraph (a) of subsection (9) above and that mentioned in paragraph (b) of that subsection; and
- (b) the lower rate in any other case.

(12) For the purposes of this section in its application to a person who is terminally ill, as defined in section 66(2) above, and who makes a claim expressly on the ground that he is such a person—

- (a) subsection (9)(a) above shall be omitted; and
- (b) subsection (11)(a) above shall have effect as if for the words from “both” to “subsection”, in the fourth place where it occurs, there were substituted the words “the period mentioned in subsection (9)(b) above”.

(13) Regulations may prescribe cases in which a person who has the use—

- (a) of an invalid carriage or other vehicle provided by [<sup>F698</sup>the Welsh Ministers under paragraph 9 of Schedule 1 to the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006, or the Secretary of State under paragraph 9 of Schedule 1 to the National Health Service Act 2006] or under section 46 of the <sup>M3</sup>National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 or provided under Article 30(1) of the <sup>M4</sup>Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972; or
- (b) of any prescribed description of appliance supplied under the enactments relating to the National Health Service being such an appliance as is primarily designed to afford a means of personal and independent locomotion out of doors,

is not to be paid any amount attributable to entitlement to the mobility component or is to be paid disability living allowance at a reduced rate in so far as it is attributable to that component.

(14) A payment to or in respect of any person which is attributable to his entitlement to the mobility component, and the right to receive such a payment, shall (except in prescribed circumstances and for prescribed purposes) be disregarded in applying any enactment or instrument under which regard is to be had to a person’s means.

#### Textual Amendments

**F687** Words in s. 73(1) substituted (9.4.2001) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\), ss. 67\(3\), 89\(1\)](#) (with s. 67(4)); [S.I. 2000/1382, art. 2\(d\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F688** S. 73(1)(ab)(b) substituted for s. 73(1)(b) (11.4.2010 for specified purposes, 15.10.2010 for specified purposes, 11.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2009 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 14(2)**, 61(3); S.I. 2010/293, art. 2(2)(a)(b)(c)
- F689** S. 73(1A) inserted (9.4.2001) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 67(3)**, 89(1) (with s. 67(4)); S.I. 2000/1382, art. 2(d)
- F690** Word in s. 73(1A)(a) inserted (11.4.2010 for specified purposes, 15.10.2010 for specified purposes, 11.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2009 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 14(3)**, 61(3); S.I. 2010/293, art. 2(2)(a)(b)(c)
- F691** S. 73(1AB) inserted (11.4.2010 for specified purposes, 15.10.2010 for specified purposes, 11.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2009 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 14(4)**, 61(3); S.I. 2010/293, art. 2(2)(a)(b)(c)
- F692** S. 73(4A) substituted for s. 73(4) (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 53(2)**, 70(2); S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(b)
- F693** Words in s. 73(5) repealed (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 53(3)**, 70(2), **Sch. 8**; S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(b)(e)
- F694** S. 73(5A) inserted (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 53(4)**, 70(2); S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(b)
- F695** Words in s. 73(9)(a) inserted (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 70(2), **Sch. 7 para. 2(2)**; S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(d)
- F696** S. 73(9A) inserted (1.10.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 53(5)**, 70(2); S.I. 2007/2819, art. 2(1)(b)
- F697** Word in s. 73(11)(a) inserted (11.4.2010 for specified purposes, 15.10.2010 for specified purposes, 11.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2009 \(c. 24\)](#), **ss. 14(5)**, 61(3); S.I. 2010/293, art. 2(2)(a)(b)(c)
- F698** Words in s. 73(13)(a) substituted (1.3.2007) by [National Health Service \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 2006 \(c. 43\)](#), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 145** (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)

#### Marginal Citations

- M3** 1978 c. 29.  
**M4** S.I.1972/1265 (N.I.14).

## 74 Mobility component for certain persons eligible for invalid carriages. **E+W+S**

- (1) Regulations may provide for the issue, variation and cancellation of certificates in respect of prescribed categories of persons to whom this section applies; and a person in respect of whom such a certificate is issued shall, during any period while the certificate is in force, be deemed for the purposes of section 73 above to satisfy the condition mentioned in subsection (1)(a) of that section and to fall within paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (9) by virtue of having satisfied or being likely to satisfy that condition throughout both the periods mentioned in those paragraphs.
- (2) This section applies to any person whom the Secretary of State considers—
- was on 1st January 1976 in possession of an invalid carriage or other vehicle provided in pursuance of section 33 of the <sup>M5</sup>Health Services and Public Health Act 1968 (which related to vehicles for persons suffering from physical defect or disability) or receiving payments in pursuance of subsection (3) of that section; or
  - had at that date, or at a later date specified by the Secretary of State, made an application which the Secretary of State approved for such a carriage or vehicle or for such payments; or



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) was, both at some time during a prescribed period before that date and at some time during a prescribed period after that date, in possession of such a carriage or vehicle or receiving such payments; or
- (d) would have been, by virtue of any of the preceding paragraphs, a person to whom this section applies but for some error or delay for which in the opinion of the Secretary of State the person was not responsible and which was brought to the attention of the Secretary of State within the <sup>M6</sup>period of one year beginning with 30th March 1977 (the date of the passing of the Social Security (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1977, section 13 of which made provision corresponding to the provision made by this section).

#### Marginal Citations

- M5** 1968 c. 46.
- M6** 1977 c. 5.

#### 75 [F699 Persons who have attained pensionable age] E+W+S

- (1) Except to the extent to which regulations provide otherwise, no person shall be entitled to either component of a disability living allowance for any period after he attains [F700 pensionable age] otherwise than by virtue of an award made before he attains that age.
- (2) Regulations may provide in relation to persons who are entitled to a component of a disability living allowance by virtue of subsection (1) above that any provision of this Act which relates to disability living allowance, other than section 74 above, so far as it so relates, and any provision of the Administration Act which is relevant to disability living allowance—
  - (a) shall have effect subject to modifications, additions or amendments; or
  - (b) shall not have effect.

#### Textual Amendments

- F699** S. 75 heading substituted (6.12.2018) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 13(3), Sch. 1 para. 42(3)
- F700** Words in s. 75(1) substituted (6.12.2018) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 13(3), Sch. 1 para. 42(2)

#### 76 Disability living allowance - supplementary. E+W+S

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, a person shall not be entitled to a disability living allowance for any period preceding the date on which a claim for it is made or treated as made by him or on his behalf.
- (2) Notwithstanding anything in subsection (1) above, provision may be made by regulations for a person to be entitled to a component of a disability living allowance for a period preceding the date on which a claim for such an allowance is made or treated as made by him or on his behalf if he has previously been entitled to that component.
- (3) For the purposes of sections 72(5) and 73(12) above where—
  - (a) a person purports to make a claim for a disability living allowance on behalf of another; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the claim is made expressly on the ground that the person on whose behalf it purports to be made is terminally ill,  
that person shall be regarded as making the claim notwithstanding that it is made without his knowledge or authority.

### *Guardian's allowance*

## 77 **Guardian's allowance.** **E+W+S**

- (1) A person shall be entitled to a guardian's allowance in respect of a child [<sup>F701</sup>or qualifying young person] if—
- (a) he is entitled to child benefit in respect of that child [<sup>F702</sup>or qualifying young person], and
  - (b) the circumstances are any of those specified in subsection (2) below.
- <sup>F703</sup> ...
- (2) The circumstances referred to in subsection (1)(b) above are—
- (a) that both of the [<sup>F704</sup>parents of the child or qualifying young person] are dead; or
  - (b) that one of the [<sup>F704</sup>parents of the child or qualifying young person] is dead and the person claiming a guardian's allowance shows that he was at the date of the death unaware of, and has failed after all reasonable efforts to discover, the whereabouts of the other parent; or
  - (c) that one of the [<sup>F704</sup>parents of the child or qualifying young person] is dead and the other is in prison.
- (3) There shall be no entitlement to a guardian's allowance in respect of a child [<sup>F705</sup>or qualifying young person] unless at least one of the [<sup>F706</sup>parents of the child or qualifying young person] satisfies, or immediately before his death satisfied, such conditions as may be prescribed as to nationality, residence, place of birth or other matters.
- (4) Where, apart from this subsection, a person is entitled to receive, in respect of a particular child [<sup>F707</sup>or qualifying young person], payment of an amount by way of a guardian's allowance, that amount shall not be payable unless one of the conditions specified in subsection (5) below is satisfied.
- (5) Those conditions are—
- (a) that the beneficiary would be treated for the purposes of Part IX of this Act as having the child [<sup>F708</sup>or qualifying young person] living with him; or
  - (b) that the requisite contributions are being made to the cost of providing for the child [<sup>F708</sup>or qualifying young person].
- (6) The condition specified in subsection (5)(b) above is to be treated as satisfied if, but only if—
- (a) such contributions are being made at a weekly rate not less than the amount referred to in subsection (4) above—
    - (i) by the beneficiary; or
    - (ii) where the beneficiary is one of two spouses [<sup>F709</sup>or civil partners] residing together, by them together; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) except in prescribed cases, the contributions are over and above those required for the purpose of satisfying section 143(1)(b) below.
- (7) A guardian's allowance in respect of a child [<sup>F710</sup>or qualifying young person] shall be payable at the weekly rate specified in Schedule 4, Part III, paragraph 5.
- (8) Regulations—
- (a) may modify subsection (2) or (3) above in relation to cases in which a child [<sup>F711</sup>or qualifying young person] has been adopted or is illegitimate, or the marriage of [<sup>F712</sup>the parents of a child or qualifying young person] has been terminated by divorce [<sup>F713</sup>or the civil partnership of the child's parents has been dissolved];
- (b) shall prescribe the circumstances in which a person is to be treated for the purposes of this section as being in prison (by reference to his undergoing a sentence of imprisonment for life or of a prescribed minimum duration, or to his being in legal custody in prescribed circumstances); and
- (c) may, for cases where entitlement to a guardian's allowance is established by reference to a person being in prison, provide—
- (i) for requiring him to pay to the National Insurance Fund sums paid by way of a guardian's allowance;
- (ii) for suspending payment of an allowance where a conviction, sentence or order of a court is subject to appeal, and for matters arising from the decision of an appeal;
- (iii) for reducing the rate of an allowance in cases where the person in prison contributes to the cost of providing for the child [<sup>F711</sup>or qualifying young person].
- (9) Where [<sup>F714</sup>a man and woman are married to, or civil partners of, each other and are residing together,] and, apart from this subsection, they would each be entitled to a guardian's allowance in respect of the same child [<sup>F715</sup>or qualifying young person], only [<sup>F716</sup>the woman] shall be entitled, but payment may be made either to her or to him unless she elects in the prescribed manner that payment is not to be made to him.
- (10) Subject to subsection (11) below, no person shall be entitled to a guardian's allowance in respect of a child [<sup>F717</sup>or qualifying young person] of which he or she is the parent.
- (11) Where a person—
- (a) has adopted a child [<sup>F718</sup>or qualifying young person ]; and
- (b) was entitled to guardian's allowance in respect of the child [<sup>F718</sup>or qualifying young person ] immediately before the adoption, subsection (10) above shall not terminate his entitlement.

#### Textual Amendments

- F701** Words in s. 77(1) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F702** Words in s. 77(1) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F703** Words in s. 77(1) repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\), s. 61, Sch. 6; S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, Sch. \(with art. 3\)](#)
- F704** Words in s. 77(2) substituted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(3\)](#)
- F705** Words in s. 77(3) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(4\)\(a\)](#)
- F706** Words in s. 77(3) substituted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(4\)\(b\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F707** Words in s. 77(4) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(5\)](#)
- F708** Words in s. 77(5) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(6\)](#)
- F709** Words in s. 77(6)(a)(ii) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\), s. 263\(8\)\(d\), Sch. 24 para. 34\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#)
- F710** Words in s. 77(7) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(7\)](#)
- F711** Words in s. 77(8) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(8\)\(a\)](#)
- F712** Words in s. 77(8) substituted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(8\)\(b\)](#)
- F713** Words in s. 77(8)(a) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\), s. 263\(8\)\(d\), Sch. 24 para. 34\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#)
- F714** Words in s. 77(9) substituted (2.12.2019) by [The Civil Partnership \(Opposite-sex Couples\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1458\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 3 para. 14\(3\)\(a\)](#)
- F715** Words in s. 77(9) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(9\)](#)
- F716** Words in s. 77(9) substituted (2.12.2019) by [The Civil Partnership \(Opposite-sex Couples\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1458\), reg. 1\(2\), Sch. 3 para. 14\(3\)\(b\)](#)
- F717** Words in s. 77(10) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(10\)](#)
- F718** Words in s. 77(11) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4\(11\)](#)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C52** S. 77 modified by [The Social Security Benefit \(Dependency\) Regulations 1977 \(S.I. 1977/343\), reg. 4B](#) (as substituted (9.4.2001) by [S.I. 2000/1483, regs. 1, 5](#))

*Benefits for the aged*

**78 Category C and Category D retirement pensions and other benefits for the aged. E+W+S**

- F719** (1) .....
- F720** (2) .....
- (3) A person who is over the age of 80 [<sup>F721</sup>, who reached pensionable age before 6 April 2016 and who satisfies] such conditions as may be prescribed shall be entitled to a Category D retirement pension at the appropriate weekly rate if—
  - (a) he is not entitled to a Category A, Category B or Category C retirement pension; or
  - (b) he is entitled to such a pension, but it is payable at a weekly rate which, disregarding those elements specified in subsection (4) below, is less than the appropriate weekly rate.
- (4) The elements referred to in subsection (3)(b) above are—
  - (a) any additional pension;
  - (b) any increase so far as attributable to—
    - (i) any additional pension, or
    - (ii) any increase in a guaranteed minimum pension;
  - (c) any graduated retirement benefit; and
  - F722** (d) .....
- F723** (5) .....
- (6) The appropriate weekly rate of a Category D retirement pension shall be that specified in Schedule 4, Part III, paragraph 7.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) Entitlement to a <sup>F724</sup>... Category D retirement pension shall continue throughout the pensioner's life.
- (8) A <sup>F725</sup>... Category D retirement pension shall not be payable for any period falling before the day on which the pensioner's entitlement is to be regarded as commencing for that purpose by virtue of section 5(1)(k) of the Administration Act.
- (9) Regulations may provide for the payment—
- (a) to a widow whose husband was over pensionable age on 5th July 1948; or
  - (b) to a woman whose marriage to a husband who was over pensionable age on that date was terminated otherwise than by his death,
- of a Category C retirement pension or of benefit corresponding to a widow's pension or a widowed mother's allowance; and any such retirement pension or any such benefit shall be at the prescribed rate.

#### Textual Amendments

- F719** S. 78(1) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 80(2)**
- F720** S. 78(2) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 80(2)**
- F721** Words in s. 78(3) substituted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 84**
- F722** S. 78(4)(d) repealed (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), ss. 4(4), 27(4)(b), Sch. 1 para. 13, **Sch. 7 Pt. 2** (with s. 4(5)-(8))
- F723** S. 78(5) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 80(2)**
- F724** Words in s. 78(7) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 80(3)**
- F725** Words in s. 78(8) omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 80(3)**

#### 79 Age addition. **E+W+S**

- (1) A person who is over the age of 80 and entitled to a retirement pension of any category [<sup>F726</sup>under this Act] shall be entitled to an increase of the pension, to be known as "age addition".
- (2) Where a person is in receipt of a pension or allowance payable by the Secretary of State by virtue of any prescribed enactment or instrument (whether passed or made before or after this Act) and—
- (a) he is over the age of 80; and
  - (b) he fulfils such other conditions as may be prescribed,
- he shall be entitled to an increase of that pension or allowance, also known as age addition.
- (3) Age addition shall be payable for the life of the person entitled, at the weekly rate specified in Schedule 4, Part III, paragraph 8.

#### Textual Amendments

- F726** Words in s. 79(1) inserted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 85**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART IV **E+W+S**

### INCREASES FOR DEPENDANTS

#### *Child dependants*

#### <sup>F727F728F729</sup>**80** Beneficiary's dependent children. **E+W+S**

.....

##### Textual Amendments

- F727** S. 80 repealed (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, [Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, [Sch.](#) (with savings in [art. 3](#))
- F728** S. 80 (in so far as still in force) amended (1.4.2023 with effect in accordance with art. 1(3)(d) of the amending S.I.) by [The Social Security Benefits Up-rating Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/316\)](#), arts. 1(3)(d), **8**
- F729** S. 80 (in so far as still in force) amended (1.4.2023 with effect in accordance with art. 1(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Social Security Up-rating \(Scotland\) Order 2023 \(S.S.I. 2023/110\)](#), arts. 1(3), **2**

#### <sup>F730</sup>**81** Restrictions on increase - child not living with beneficiary etc. **E+W+S**

.....

##### Textual Amendments

- F730** S. 81 repealed (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, [Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, [Sch.](#) (with savings in [art. 3](#)); and as to this section as so saved see also [Welfare Reform Act 2009 \(c. 24\)](#), s. **37(1)**; [The Social Security Benefits Up-rating Order 2013 \(S.I. 2013/574\)](#), arts. 1(2)(d), **7(b)**

#### *Adult dependants*

#### <sup>F731</sup>**82** Short-term benefit: increase for adult dependants. **E+W+S**

.....

##### Textual Amendments

- F731** S. 82 repealed (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by [Welfare Reform Act 2009 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 15(1)(a), 61(2), [Sch. 7 Pt. 2](#) (with s. 15(2)(3))

#### <sup>F732</sup>**83** Pension increase (wife) **E+W+S**

.....

##### Textual Amendments

- F732** S. 83 repealed (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 4(1)(a), 27(4)(b), [Sch. 7 Pt. 2](#) (with s. 4(5)-(8))



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C53** S. 83 continued (with modifications) (10.12.2014) by [Marriage \(Same Sex Couples\) Act 2013 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 21(3), [Sch. 4 para. 15\(1\)](#); S.I. 2014/3169, [art. 2](#)
- C54** S. 83 modified (S.) (in so far as continues to apply) (16.12.2014) by [The Marriage and Civil Partnership \(Scotland\) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3229\)](#), arts. 1(2), [11\(1\)](#)

<sup>F733</sup>**84 Pension increase (husband).** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F733** S. 84 repealed (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 4(1)(b), 27(4)(b), [Sch. 7 Pt. 2](#) (with s. 4(5)-(8))

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C55** S. 84 continued (with modifications) (10.12.2014) by [Marriage \(Same Sex Couples\) Act 2013 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 21(3), [Sch. 4 para. 15\(2\)](#); S.I. 2014/3169, [art. 2](#)
- C56** S. 84 continued (with modifications) (S.) (16.12.2014) by [The Marriage and Civil Partnership \(Scotland\) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3229\)](#), arts. 1(2), [11\(2\)](#)

<sup>F734</sup>**85 Pension increase (person with care of children).** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F734** S. 85 repealed (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 4(1)(c), 27(4)(b), [Sch. 7 Pt. 2](#) (with s. 4(5)-(8))

<sup>F735</sup>**86 Increase of woman's invalidity pension (husband).** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F735** S. 86 repealed (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), [Sch. 1 para. 23](#), [Sch. 2](#); S.I. 1994/2926, [art. 2\(4\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 4](#)

[<sup>F736</sup>**86A Incapacity benefit: increase for adult dependants.** **E+W+S**

- (1) The weekly rates of short-term and long-term incapacity benefit shall, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, be increased for adult dependants by the appropriate amount specified in relation to benefit of that description in Schedule 4, Part IV, column (3).

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Regulations may provide that where the person in respect of whom an increase of benefit is claimed has earnings in excess of such amount as may be prescribed there shall be no increase of benefit under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F736** S. 86A inserted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), **ss. 2(5), 16(3)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2

### 87 Rate of increase where associated retirement pension is attributable to reduced contributions. **E+W+S**

- (1) Where a person—
- [<sup>F737</sup>(a) is entitled to short-term incapacity benefit under section 30A(2)(b) above; and]
  - (b) would have been entitled only by virtue of section 60(1) above to the retirement pension by reference to which the rate of that benefit <sup>F738</sup>... is determined,
- [<sup>F739</sup>the amount of any increase of the benefit attributable to sections 82 to 86A above shall be determined in accordance with regulations under this section.]
- (2) The regulations shall not provide for any such increase in a case where the retirement pension by reference to which the rate of the said benefit <sup>F740</sup>... is determined—
- (a) would have been payable only by virtue of section 60 above; and
  - (b) would, in consequence of a failure to satisfy a contribution condition, have contained no basic pension.

#### Textual Amendments

**F737** S. 87(1)(a) substituted (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 26**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)

**F738** Words in s. 87(1)(b) repealed (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 24(3), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

**F739** Words in s. 87(1) substituted (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 24(4)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

**F740** Words in s. 87(2) repealed (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 24(3), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

### [<sup>F741</sup>88 Increases to be in respect of only one adult dependant. **E+W+S**

A person shall not [<sup>F742</sup>by virtue of section 86A] above be entitled for the same period to an increase of benefit in respect of more than one person.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F741** S. 88 substituted (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 25**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F742** Words in s. 88 substituted (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\), s. 4\(4\), Sch. 1 para. 14](#) (with s 4(5)-(8))

### Miscellaneous

## 89 Earnings to include occupational and personal pensions <sup>F743</sup> etc.] for purposes of provisions relating to increases of benefits in respect of <sup>F744</sup> ... adult dependants. **E+W+S**

- (1) Except as may be prescribed, in <sup>F745</sup> ... [<sup>F746</sup> <sup>F747</sup> sections 82 and 86A] above, and in regulations under section 86A above,] any reference to earnings includes a reference to payments by way of occupational or personal pension.
- <sup>F748</sup>(1A) Except as may be prescribed, in [<sup>F747</sup> sections 82 and 86A] above, and in regulations under section 86A above, any reference to earnings includes a reference to payments by way of PPF periodic payments.]
- (2) For the purposes of the provisions mentioned in [<sup>F749</sup> subsections (1) and (1A) above], the Secretary of State may by regulations provide, in relation to cases where payments by way of occupational or personal pension [<sup>F750</sup> or PPF periodic payments] are made otherwise than weekly, that any necessary apportionment of the payments shall be made in such manner and on such basis as may be prescribed.
- <sup>F751</sup>(3) In this section “PPF periodic payments” means—
- any periodic compensation payments made in relation to a person, payable under the pension compensation provisions as specified in section 162(2) of the Pensions Act 2004 or Article 146(2) of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (the pension compensation provisions); or
  - any periodic payments made in relation to a person, payable under section 166 of the Pensions Act 2004 or Article 150 of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (duty to pay scheme benefits unpaid at assessment date etc.),
- other than payments made to a surviving dependant of a person entitled to such compensation.]

### Textual Amendments

- F743** Word in s. 89 heading inserted (14.2.2006) by [The Pensions Act 2004 \(PPF Payments and FAS Payments\) \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/343\), art. 1\(1\), Sch. para. 1\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F744** Words in s. 89 heading repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\), s. 61, Sch. 6; S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, Sch.](#) (with art. 3)
- F745** Words in s. 89(1) repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\), s. 61, Sch. 6; S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, Sch.](#) (with art. 3)
- F746** Words in s. 89(1) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), s. 16\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 26; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2\(4\), Sch. Pt. 4](#)
- F747** Words in s. 89(1)(1A) substituted (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\), s. 4\(4\), Sch. 1 para. 15](#) (with s 4(5)-(8))
- F748** S. 89(1A) inserted (14.2.2006) by [The Pensions Act 2004 \(PPF Payments and FAS Payments\) \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/343\), art. 1\(1\), Sch. para. 1\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F749** Words in s. 89(2) substituted (14.2.2006) by [The Pensions Act 2004 \(PPF Payments and FAS Payments\) \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/343\), art. 1\(1\), Sch. para. 1\(2\)\(c\)\(i\)](#)
- F750** Words in s. 89(2) inserted (14.2.2006) by [The Pensions Act 2004 \(PPF Payments and FAS Payments\) \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/343\), art. 1\(1\), Sch. para. 1\(2\)\(c\)\(ii\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F751** S. 89(3) added (14.2.2006) by [The Pensions Act 2004 \(PPF Payments and FAS Payments\) \(Consequential Provisions\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/343\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 1(2)(d)**

**F752** **90 Beneficiaries under sections 68 and 70.** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F752** S. 90 repealed (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by [Welfare Reform Act 2009 \(c. 24\)](#), ss. 15(1)(b), 61(2), **Sch. 7 Pt. 2** (with s. 15(2)(3))

**91 Effect of trade disputes on entitlement to increases.** **E+W+S**

- (1) A beneficiary shall not be entitled—
- (a) to an increase in any benefit [<sup>F753</sup>under or by virtue of sections 82 to 88 above]; or
  - (b) to an increase in benefit <sup>F754</sup>... by virtue of regulations under section 90 above, if the person in respect of whom he would be entitled to the increase falls within subsection (2) below.

- [<sup>F755</sup>(2) A person falls within this subsection if—
- (a) he is prevented from being entitled to a jobseeker’s allowance by section 14 of the Jobseekers Act 1995 (trade disputes); or
  - (b) he would be so prevented if he were otherwise entitled to that benefit.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F753** Words in s. 91(1)(a) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 27**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

**F754** Words in s. 91(1)(b) repealed with savings (6.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, **Sch. 6**; S.I. 2003/938, art. 2, Sch. (with art. 3)

**F755** S. 91(2) substituted (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 27**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)

**92 Dependency increases: continuation of awards in cases of fluctuating earnings.** **E+W+S**

- (1) Where a beneficiary—
- (a) has been awarded an increase of benefit under this Part of this Act, but
  - (b) ceases to be entitled to the increase by reason only that the weekly earnings of some other person (“the relevant earner”) exceed the amount of the increase or, as the case may be, some specified amount,

then, if and so long as the beneficiary would have continued to be entitled to the increase, disregarding any such excess of earnings, the award shall continue in force but the increase shall not be payable for any week if the earnings relevant to that week exceed the amount of the increase or, as the case may be, the specified amount.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In this section the earnings which are relevant to any week are those earnings of the relevant earner which, apart from this section, would be taken into account in determining whether the beneficiary is entitled to the increase in question for that week.

**93 Dependency increases on termination of employment after period of entitlement to disability working allowance. E+W+S**

Where—

- [<sup>F756</sup>(a) a person becomes entitled—
- (i) to the higher rate of short-term incapacity benefit, or to long-term incapacity benefit, by virtue of section 30C(5) or (6) or section 42 above, <sup>F757</sup>...
  - <sup>F757</sup>(ii) .....
- (b) when he was last entitled to that [<sup>F758</sup>benefit]<sup>F759</sup>... , it was increased in respect of a dependant by virtue of—
- (i) regulation 8(6) of the <sup>M7</sup>Social Security Benefit (Dependency) Regulations 1977;
  - (ii) regulation 2 of the <sup>M8</sup>Social Security (Savings for Existing Beneficiaries) Regulations 1984;
  - (iii) regulation 3 of the <sup>M9</sup>Social Security Benefit (Dependency) Amendment Regulations 1984; or
  - (iv) regulation 4 of the <sup>M10</sup>Social Security Benefit (Dependency and Computation of Earnings) Amendment Regulations 1989,

for the purpose of determining whether his [<sup>F760</sup>benefit]<sup>F759</sup>... should be increased by virtue of that regulation for any period beginning with the day on which he again becomes entitled to his [<sup>F760</sup>benefit]<sup>F759</sup>... , the increase in respect of that dependant shall be treated as having been payable to him on each day between the last day on which his [<sup>F760</sup>benefit]<sup>F759</sup>... was previously payable and the day on which he again becomes entitled to it.

**Textual Amendments**

- F756** S. 93(a) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), s. 16\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 28\(a\)](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F757** S. 93(a)(ii) and preceding word repealed (with savings for those entitled to severe disablement allowance for days immediately before 6.4.2001) (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\), s. 89\(1\), Sch. 13 Pt. IV](#); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(g)(4)(5) (with art. 4)
- F758** Words in s. 93(b) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), s. 16\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 28\(b\)](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F759** Words in s. 93 repealed (with savings for those entitled to severe disablement allowance for days immediately before 6.4.2001) (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\), s. 89\(1\), Sch. 13 Pt. IV](#); S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(g)(4)(5) (with art. 4)
- F760** Words in s. 93 substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), s. 16\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 28\(b\)](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

**Marginal Citations**

- M7** S.I. 1977/343.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**M8** S.I. 1984/1696.  
**M9** S.I. 1984/1698.  
**M10** S.I. 1989/1690.

## PART V **E+W+S**

### BENEFIT FOR INDUSTRIAL INJURIES

#### *General provisions*

#### **94 Right to industrial injuries benefit. **E+W+S****

- (1) Industrial injuries benefit shall be payable where an employed earner suffers personal injury caused <sup>F761</sup>... by accident arising out of and in the course of his employment, being employed earner's employment.
- (2) Industrial injuries benefit consists of the following benefits—
  - (a) disablement benefit payable in accordance with sections 103 to 105 below, paragraphs 2 and 3 of Schedule 7 below and Parts II and III of that Schedule;
  - (b) reduced earnings allowance payable in accordance with Part IV;
  - (c) retirement allowance payable in accordance with Part V; and
  - (d) industrial death benefit, payable in accordance with Part VI.
- (3) For the purposes of industrial injuries benefit an accident arising in the course of an employed earner's employment shall be taken, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, also to have arisen out of that employment.
- (4) Regulations may make provision as to the day which, in the case of night workers and other special cases, is to be treated for the purposes of industrial injuries benefit as the day of the accident.
- (5) Subject to sections 117, 119 and 120 below, industrial injuries benefit shall not be payable in respect of an accident happening while the earner is outside Great Britain.
- (6) In the following provisions of this Part of this Act "work" in the contexts "incapable of work" and "incapacity for work" means work which the person in question can be reasonably expected to do.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F761** Words in s. 94(1) repealed (30.10.2012 for specified purposes, 5.12.2012 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), ss. **64(1)(a)**, 150(3); S.I. 2012/2530, art. 2(5)(a)(6)(a)

#### **95 Relevant employments. **E+W+S****

- (1) In section 94 above, this section and sections 98 to 109 below "employed earner's employment" shall be taken to include any employment by virtue of which a person is, or is treated by regulations as being for the purposes of industrial injuries benefit, an employed earner.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Regulations may provide that any prescribed employment shall not be treated for the purposes of industrial injuries benefit as employed earner's employment notwithstanding that it would be so treated apart from the regulations.
- (3) For the purposes of the provisions of this Act mentioned in subsection (1) above an employment shall be an employed earner's employment in relation to an accident if (and only if) it is, or is treated by regulations as being, such an employment when the accident occurs.
- (4) Any reference in the industrial injuries and diseases provisions to an "employed earner" or "employed earner's employment" is to be construed, in relation to any time before 6th April 1975, as a reference respectively to an "insured person" or "insurable employment" within the meaning of the provisions relating to industrial injuries and diseases which were in force at that time.
- (5) In subsection (4) above "the industrial injuries and diseases provisions" means—
  - (a) this section and sections 96 to 110 below;
  - (b) any other provisions of this Act so far as they relate to those sections; and
  - (c) any provisions of the Administration Act<sup>F762</sup>, Chapter II of Part I of the Social Security Act 1998 or Part II of the Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999,] so far as they so relate.

#### Textual Amendments

**F762** Words in s. 95(5)(c) substituted (5.7.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 7 para. 4](#); S.I. 1999/1662, art. 2(b), Sch. Pt. 2 (with art. 4) (and see also S.I. 1999/978, regs. 1(1), 2, Sch.)

#### <sup>F763</sup>95A Employment training schemes etc **E+W+S**

- (1) In the industrial injuries and diseases provisions any reference to employed earner's employment shall be taken to include participation in an employment training scheme or employment training course of a prescribed description (and "employed earner" shall be construed accordingly).
- (2) In those provisions, a reference to an employer, in relation to any such participation, shall be taken to be a prescribed person.
- (3) In this section "industrial injuries and diseases provisions" has the same meaning as in section 95(4) above.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F763** S. 95A inserted (30.10.2012 for specified purposes, 31.10.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\), ss. 66\(1\), 150\(3\)](#); S.I. 2012/2530, art. 2(5)(b); S.I. 2013/2534, art. 2

#### 96 Persons treated as employers for certain purposes. **E+W+S**

In relation to—

- (a) a person who is an employed earner for the purposes of this Part of this Act otherwise than by virtue of a contract of service or apprenticeship; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) any other employed earner—
  - (i) who is employed for the purpose of any game or recreation and is engaged or paid through a club; or
  - (ii) in whose case it appears to the Secretary of State there is special difficulty in the application of all or any of the provisions of this Part of this Act relating to employers,
 regulations may provide for a prescribed person to be treated in respect of industrial injuries benefit and its administration as the earner’s employer.

## 97 Accidents in course of illegal employments. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subsection (2) below has effect in any case where—
  - (a) a claim is made for industrial injuries benefit in respect of an accident, or of a prescribed disease or injury; or
  - (b) an application is made under [<sup>F764</sup>section 29 of the Social Security Act 1998] for a declaration that an accident was an industrial accident, or for a corresponding declaration as to a prescribed disease or injury.
- (2) The Secretary of State may direct that the relevant employment shall, in relation to that accident, disease or injury, be treated as having been employed earner’s employment notwithstanding that by reason of a contravention of, or non-compliance with, some provision contained in or having effect under an enactment passed for the protection of employed persons or any class of employed persons, either—
  - (a) the contract purporting to govern the employment was void; or
  - (b) the employed person was not lawfully employed in the relevant employment at the time when, or in the place where, the accident happened or the disease or injury was contracted or received.
- (3) In subsection (2) above “relevant employment” means—
  - (a) in relation to an accident, the employment out of and in the course of which the accident arises; and
  - (b) in relation to a prescribed disease or injury, the employment to the nature of which the disease or injury is due.

### Textual Amendments

**F764** Words in s. 97(1)(b) substituted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 64](#); [S.I. 1999/1958](#), art. 2(1)(b), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5)

## 98 Earner acting in breach of regulations, etc. **E+W+S**

An accident shall be taken to arise out of and in the course of an employed earner’s employment, notwithstanding that he is at the time of the accident acting in contravention of any statutory or other regulations applicable to his employment, or of any orders given by or on behalf of his employer, or that he is acting without instructions from his employer, if—

- (a) the accident would have been taken so to have arisen had the act not been done in contravention of any such regulations or orders, or without such instructions, as the case may be; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the act is done for the purposes of and in connection with the employer's trade or business.

#### **99 Earner travelling in employer's transport. E+W+S**

- (1) An accident happening while an employed earner is, with the express or implied permission of his employer, travelling as a passenger by any vehicle to or from his place of work shall, notwithstanding that he is under no obligation to his employer to travel by that vehicle, be taken to arise out of and in the course of his employment if—
  - (a) the accident would have been taken so to have arisen had he been under such an obligation; and
  - (b) at the time of the accident, the vehicle—
    - (i) is being operated by or on behalf of his employer or some other person by whom it is provided in pursuance of arrangements made with his employer; and
    - (ii) is not being operated in the ordinary course of a public transport service.
- (2) In this section references to a vehicle include a ship, vessel, hovercraft or aircraft.

#### **100 Accidents happening while meeting emergency. E+W+S**

An accident happening to an employed earner in or about any premises at which he is for the time being employed for the purposes of his employer's trade or business shall be taken to arise out of and in the course of his employment if it happens while he is taking steps, on an actual or supposed emergency at those premises, to rescue, succour or protect persons who are, or are thought to be or possibly to be, injured or imperilled, or to avert or minimise serious damage to property.

#### **101 Accident caused by another's misconduct etc. E+W+S**

An accident happening after 19th December 1961 shall be treated for the purposes of industrial injuries benefit, where it would not apart from this section be so treated, as arising out of an employed earner's employment if—

- (a) the accident arises in the course of the employment; and
- (b) the accident either is caused—
  - (i) by another person's misconduct, skylarking or negligence, or
  - (ii) by steps taken in consequence of any such misconduct, skylarking or negligence, or
  - (iii) by the behaviour or presence of an animal (including a bird, fish or insect),or is caused by or consists in the employed earner being struck by any object or by lightning; and
- (c) the employed earner did not directly or indirectly induce or contribute to the happening of the accident by his conduct outside the employment or by any act not incidental to the employment.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Sickness benefit*

#### <sup>F765</sup> 102 Sickness benefit in respect of industrial injury. **E+W+S**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F765** S. 102 repealed (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 29, **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

### *Disablement pension*

#### 103 Disablement pension. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this section, an employed earner shall be entitled to disablement pension if he suffers as the result of the relevant accident from loss of physical or mental faculty such that the assessed extent of the resulting disablement amounts to not less than 14 per cent. or, on a claim made before 1st October 1986, 20 per cent.
- (2) In the determination of the extent of an employed earner's disablement for the purposes of this section there may be added to the percentage of the disablement resulting from the relevant accident the assessed percentage of any present disablement of his—
  - (a) which resulted from any other accident <sup>F766</sup>... arising out of and in the course of his employment, being employed earner's employment, and
  - (b) in respect of which a disablement gratuity was not paid to him after a final assessment of his disablement,
 (as well as any percentage which may be so added in accordance with regulations under subsection (2) of section 109 below made by virtue of subsection (4)(b) of that section).
- (3) Subject to subsection (4) below, where the assessment of disablement is a percentage between 20 and 100 which is not a multiple of 10, it shall be treated—
  - (a) if it is a multiple of 5, as being the next higher percentage which is a multiple of 10, and
  - (b) if it is not a multiple of 5, as being the nearest percentage which is a multiple of 10,
 and where the assessment of disablement on a claim made on or after 1st October 1986 is less than 20 per cent., but not less than 14 per cent., it shall be treated as 20 per cent.
- (4) Where subsection (2) above applies, subsection (3) above shall have effect in relation to the aggregate percentage and not in relation to any percentage forming part of the aggregate.
- (5) In this Part of this Act “assessed”, in relation to the extent of any disablement, means assessed in accordance with Schedule 6 to this Act; and for the purposes of that Schedule there shall be taken to be no relevant loss of faculty when the extent of the resulting disablement, if so assessed, would not amount to 1 per cent.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) A person shall not be entitled to a disablement pension until after the expiry of the period of 90 days (disregarding Sundays) beginning with the day of the relevant accident.
- (7) Subject to subsection (8) below, where disablement pension is payable for a period, it shall be paid at the appropriate weekly rate specified in Schedule 4, Part V, paragraph 1.
- (8) Where the period referred to in subsection (7) above is limited by reference to a definite date, the pension shall cease on the death of the beneficiary before that date.

#### Textual Amendments

**F766** Words in s. 103(2)(a) repealed (30.10.2012 for specified purposes, 5.12.2012 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 64\(1\)\(b\)](#), 150(3); S.I. 2012/2530, art. 2(5)(a)(6)(a)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C57** Ss. 103-105 modified (6.10.1997) by [Social Security \(Recovery of Benefits\) Act 1997 \(c. 27\)](#), [ss. 8](#), [34\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with s. 28); S.I. 1997/2085, art. 2(2)

**C58** S. 103(6) modified by [The Social Security \(Industrial Injuries\) \(Prescribed Diseases\) Regulations 1985 \(S.I. 1985/967\)](#), [reg. 20B\(2\)\(a\)](#) (as inserted (6.4.2006) by S.I. 2006/586, [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [2](#))

### 104 Increase where constant attendance needed. **E+W+S**

- (1) Where a disablement pension is payable in respect of an assessment of 100 per cent., then, if as the result of the relevant loss of faculty the beneficiary requires constant attendance, the weekly rate of the pension shall be increased by an amount, not exceeding the appropriate amount specified in Schedule 4, Part V, paragraph 2 determined in accordance with regulations by reference to the extent and nature of the attendance required by the beneficiary.
- (2) An increase of pension under this section shall be payable for such period as may be determined at the time it is granted, but may be renewed from time to time.
- (3) The Secretary of State may by regulations direct that any provision of sections 64 to 67 above shall have effect, with or without modifications, in relation to increases of pension under this section.
- (4) In subsection (3) above, “modifications” includes additions and omissions.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C57** Ss. 103-105 modified (6.10.1997) by [Social Security \(Recovery of Benefits\) Act 1997 \(c. 27\)](#), [ss. 8](#), [34\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with s. 28); S.I. 1997/2085, art. 2(2)

### 105 Increase for exceptionally severe disablement. **E+W+S**

- (1) Where a disablement pension is payable to a person—
  - (a) who is or, but for having received medical or other treatment as an in-patient in a hospital or similar institution, would be entitled to an increase of the weekly rate of the pension under section 104 above, and the weekly rate of the increase exceeds the amount specified in Schedule 4, Part V, paragraph 2(a); and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) his need for constant attendance of an extent and nature qualifying him for such an increase at a weekly rate in excess of that amount is likely to be permanent,
- the weekly rate of the pension shall, in addition to any increase under section 104 above, be further increased by the amount specified in Schedule 4, Part V, paragraph 3.
- (2) An increase under this section shall be payable for such period as may be determined at the time it is granted, but may be renewed from time to time.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C57** Ss. 103-105 modified (6.10.1997) by [Social Security \(Recovery of Benefits\) Act 1997 \(c. 27\), ss. 8, 34\(2\), Sch. 2](#) (with s. 28); S.I. 1997/2085, art. 2(2)

*Other benefits and increases*

**106 Benefits and increases subject to qualifications as to time. E+W+S**

Schedule 7 to this Act shall have effect in relation—

- (a) to unemployability supplement;
- (b) to disablement gratuity;
- (c) to increases of disablement pension during hospital treatment;
- (d) to reduced earnings allowance;
- (e) to retirement allowance; and
- (f) to industrial death benefit,

for all of which the qualifications include special qualifications as to time.

*Successive accidents*

**107 Adjustments for successive accidents. E+W+S**

- (1) Where a person suffers two or more successive accidents arising out of and in the course of his employed earner's employment—
- (a) he shall not for the same period be entitled (apart from any increase of benefit mentioned in subsection (2) below) to receive industrial injuries benefit by way of two or more disablement pensions at an aggregate weekly rate exceeding the appropriate amount specified in Schedule 4, Part V, paragraph 4; and
  - (b) regulations may provide for adjusting—
    - (i) disablement benefit, or the conditions for the receipt of that benefit, in any case where he has received or may be entitled to a disablement gratuity;
    - (ii) any increase of benefit mentioned in subsection (2) below, or the conditions for its receipt.
- (2) The increases of benefit referred to in subsection (1) above are those under the following provisions of this Act—
- section 104,
  - section 105,



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

paragraph 2, 4 or 6 of Schedule 7.

*Prescribed industrial diseases etc.*

**108 Benefit in respect of prescribed industrial diseases, etc. E+W+S**

- (1) Industrial injuries benefits shall, in respect of a person who has been in employed earner's employment, be payable in accordance with this section and sections 109 and 110 below in respect of—
  - (a) any prescribed disease, or
  - (b) any prescribed personal injury (other than an injury caused by accident arising out of and in the course of his employment),  
which is a disease or injury due to the nature of that employment <sup>F767</sup>....
- (2) A disease or injury may be prescribed in relation to any employed earners if the Secretary of State is satisfied that—
  - (a) it ought to be treated, having regard to its causes and incidence and any other relevant considerations, as a risk of their occupations and not as a risk common to all persons; and
  - (b) it is such that, in the absence of special circumstances, the attribution of particular cases to the nature of the employment can be established or presumed with reasonable certainty.
- (3) Regulations prescribing any disease or injury for those purposes may provide that a person who developed the disease or injury on or at any time after a date specified in the regulations (being a date before the regulations came into force <sup>F768</sup> ...) shall be treated, subject to any prescribed modifications of this section or section 109 or 110 below, as if the regulations had been in force when he developed the disease or injury.
- (4) Provision may be made by regulations for determining—
  - (a) the time at which a person is to be treated as having developed any prescribed disease or injury; and
  - (b) the circumstances in which such a disease or injury is, where the person in question has previously suffered from it, to be treated as having recrudesced or as having been contracted or received afresh.
- (5) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Act, the power conferred by subsection (4)
  - (a) above includes power to provide that the time at which a person shall be treated as having developed a prescribed disease or injury shall be the date on which he first makes a claim which results in the payment of benefit by virtue of this section or section 110 below in respect of that disease or injury.
- (6) Nothing in this section or in section 109 or 110 below affects the right of any person to benefit in respect of a disease which is a personal injury by accident within the meaning of this Part of this Act, except that a person shall not be entitled to benefit in respect of a disease as being an injury by accident arising out of and in the course of any employment if at the time of the accident the disease is in relation to him a prescribed disease by virtue of the occupation in which he is engaged in that employment.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F767** Words in s. 108(1) repealed (30.10.2012 for specified purposes, 5.12.2012 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 64\(1\)\(c\), 150\(3\)](#); S.I. 2012/2530, [art. 2\(5\)\(a\)\(6\)\(a\)](#)
- F768** Words in s. 108(3) repealed (30.10.2012 for specified purposes, 5.12.2012 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 64\(1\)\(d\), 150\(3\)](#); S.I. 2012/2530, [art. 2\(5\)\(a\)\(6\)\(a\)](#)

## 109 General provisions relating to benefit under section 108. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to the power to make different provision by regulations, and to the following provisions of this section and section 110 below—
- (a) the benefit payable under section 108 above in respect of a prescribed disease or injury, and
  - (b) the conditions for receipt of benefit,
- shall be the same as in the case of personal injury by accident arising out of and in the course of employment.
- (2) In relation to prescribed diseases and injuries, regulations may provide—
- (a) for modifying any provisions contained in this Act<sup>[F769]</sup>, the Administration Act or Chapter II of Part I of the Social Security Act 1998] which relate to disablement benefit or reduced earnings allowance or their administration; and
  - (b) for adapting references in this Act<sup>[F770]</sup>, that Act and that Chapter] to accidents, and for the purposes of this subsection the provisions of <sup>[F771]</sup>that Act and that Chapter] which relate to the administration of disablement benefit or reduced earnings allowance shall be taken to include section 1 <sup>[F772]</sup>of that Act] and any provision which relates to the administration of both the benefit in question and other benefits.
- (3) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (2) above, regulations under that subsection may in particular include provision—
- (a) for presuming any prescribed disease or injury—
    - (i) to be due, unless the contrary is proved, to the nature of a person's employment where he was employed in any prescribed occupation at the time when, or within a prescribed period or for a prescribed length of time (whether continuous or not) before, he developed the disease or injury,
    - (ii) not to be due to the nature of a person's employment unless he was employed in some prescribed occupation at the time when, or within a prescribed period or for a prescribed length of time (whether continuous or not) before, he developed the disease or injury;
  - (b) for such matters as appear to the Secretary of State to be incidental to or consequential on provisions included in the regulations by virtue of subsection (2) and paragraph (a) above.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (2) above may also provide—
- (a) that, in the determination of the extent of an employed earner's disablement resulting from a prescribed disease or injury, the appropriate percentage may be added to the percentage of that disablement; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) that, in the determination of the extent of an employed earner's disablement for the purposes of section 103 above, the appropriate percentage may be added to the percentage of disablement resulting from the relevant accident.
- (5) In subsection (4)(a) above "the appropriate percentage" means the assessed percentage of any present disablement of the earner which resulted—
- (a) from any accident<sup>F773</sup> ... arising out of and in the course of his employment, being employed earner's employment, or
- (b) from any other prescribed disease or injury due to the nature of that employment<sup>F774</sup> ... ,
- and in respect of which a disablement gratuity was not paid to him after a final assessment of his disablement.
- (6) In subsection (4)(b) above "the appropriate percentage" means the assessed percentage of any present disablement of the earner—
- (a) which resulted from any prescribed disease or injury due to the nature of his employment<sup>F775</sup> ... , and
- (b) in respect of which a disablement gratuity was not paid to him after a final assessment of his disablement.
- (7) Where regulations under subsection (2) above—
- (a) make provision such as is mentioned in subsection (4) above, and
- (b) also make provision corresponding to that in section 103(3) above,
- they may also make provision to the effect that those corresponding provisions shall have effect in relation to the aggregate percentage and not in relation to any percentage forming part of the aggregate.

#### Textual Amendments

- F769** Words in s. 109(2)(a) substituted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 65\(a\)](#); S.I. 1999/1958, art. 2(1)(b), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5)
- F770** Words in s. 109(2)(b) substituted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 65\(b\)](#); S.I. 1999/1958, art. 2(1)(b), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5)
- F771** Words in s. 109(2) substituted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 65\(c\)](#); S.I. 1999/1958, art. 2(1)(b), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5)
- F772** Words in s. 109(2) inserted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 65\(d\)](#); S.I. 1999/1958, art. 2(1)(b), [Sch. 1](#) (with arts. 3-5)
- F773** Words in s. 109(5)(a) repealed (30.10.2012 for specified purposes, 5.12.2012 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 64\(1\)\(e\)](#), 150(3); S.I. 2012/2530, art. 2(5)(a)(6)(a)
- F774** Words in s. 109(5)(b) repealed (30.10.2012 for specified purposes, 5.12.2012 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 64\(1\)\(f\)](#), 150(3); S.I. 2012/2530, art. 2(5)(a)(6)(a)
- F775** Words in s. 109(6)(a) repealed (30.10.2012 for specified purposes, 5.12.2012 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 64\(1\)\(f\)](#), 150(3); S.I. 2012/2530, art. 2(5)(a)(6)(a)

## 110 Respiratory diseases. **E+W+S**

- (1) As respects pneumoconiosis, regulations may further provide that, where a person is found to be suffering from pneumoconiosis accompanied by tuberculosis, the effects of the tuberculosis shall be treated for the purposes of this section and sections 108 and 109 above as if they were effects of the pneumoconiosis.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Subsection (1) above shall have effect as if after “tuberculosis” (in both places) there were inserted “ emphysema or chronic bronchitis ”, but only in relation to a person the extent of whose disablement resulting from pneumoconiosis, or from pneumoconiosis accompanied by tuberculosis, would (if his physical condition were otherwise normal) be assessed at not less than 50 per cent.
- (3) A person found to be suffering from pneumoconiosis shall be treated for the purposes of this Act as suffering from a loss of faculty such that the assessed extent of the resulting disablement amounts to not less than 1 per cent.
- (4) In respect of byssinosis, a person shall not (unless regulations otherwise provide) be entitled to disablement benefit unless he is found to be suffering, as the result of byssinosis, from loss of faculty which is likely to be permanent.

*Old cases*

<sup>F776</sup> **111 Workmen’s compensation etc.** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F776** S. 111 repealed (30.10.2012 for specified purposes, 5.12.2012 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), ss. **64(2)**, 150(3); S.I. 2012/2530, art. 2(5)(a)(6)(a)

<sup>F777</sup> **PART VI** **U.K.**

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS RELATING TO PARTS I TO V

**Textual Amendments**

**F777** Pt. 6 modified (6.4.2001) by [The Social Security \(Contributions\) Regulations 2001 \(S.I. 2001/1004\)](#), regs. 1(1), **125** (as amended (6.4.2017) by S.I. 2017/416, regs. 1(2), **2**; (6.4.2019) by S.I. 2019/555, regs. 1(2), **2**)

*Earnings*

**112 Certain sums to be earnings.** **E+W+S**

- (1) [<sup>F778</sup>The Treasury may by regulations made with the concurrence of the Secretary of State] provide—
  - (a) that any employment protection entitlement shall be deemed for the purposes of Parts I to V of this Act to be earnings payable by and to such persons as are prescribed and to be so payable in respect of such periods as are prescribed; and
  - (b) that those periods shall, so far as they are not periods of employment, be deemed for those purposes to be periods of employment.
- (2) In subsection (1) above “employment protection entitlement” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any sum, or a prescribed part of any sum, mentioned in subsection (3) below; and
- (b) prescribed amounts which the regulations provide are to be treated as related to any of those sums.

[<sup>F779</sup>(2A) Regulations under subsection (2) above shall be made by the Treasury with the concurrence of the Secretary of State.]

- (3) The sums referred to in subsection (2) above are the following—
  - (a) a sum payable in respect of arrears of pay in pursuance of an order for reinstatement or re-engagement under [<sup>F780</sup>the Employment Rights Act 1996];
  - (b) a sum payable by way of pay in pursuance of an order under that Act [<sup>F781</sup>or the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992] for the continuation of a contract of employment;
  - (c) a sum payable by way of remuneration in pursuance of a protective award under [<sup>F782</sup>the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992].

#### Textual Amendments

**F778** Words in s. 112(1) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 21\(2\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

**F779** S. 112(2A) inserted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 21\(3\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

**F780** Words in s. 112(3)(a) substituted (22.8.1996) by [Employment Rights Act 1996 \(c. 18\), s. 243, Sch. 1 para. 51\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with s. 241, Sch. 2)

**F781** Words in s. 112(3)(b) inserted (22.8.1996) by [Employment Rights Act 1996 \(c. 18\), s. 243, Sch. 1 para. 51\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with s. 241, Sch. 2)

**F782** Words in s. 112(3)(c) substituted (22.8.1996) by [Employment Rights Act 1996 \(c. 18\), s. 243, Sch. 1 para. 51\(4\)\(c\)](#) (with s. 241, Sch. 2)

#### *Disqualification and suspension*

### 113 General provisions as to disqualification and suspension. **E+W+S**

- (1) Except where regulations otherwise provide, a person shall be disqualified for receiving any benefit under Parts II to V of this Act, and an increase of such benefit shall not be payable in respect of any person as the beneficiary's [<sup>F783</sup>wife, husband or civil partner,] for any period during which the person—
  - (a) is absent from Great Britain; or
  - (b) is undergoing imprisonment or detention in legal custody.
- (2) Regulations may provide for suspending payment of such benefit to a person during any period in which he is undergoing medical or other treatment as an in-patient in a hospital or similar institution.
- (3) Regulations may provide for a person who would be entitled to any such benefit but for the operation of any provision of this Act [<sup>F784</sup>, the Administration Act or Chapter II of Part I of the Social Security Act 1998] to be treated as if entitled to it for the purposes of any rights or obligations (whether his own or another's) which depend on his entitlement, other than the right to payment of the benefit.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F783** Words in s. 113(1) substituted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), [Sch. 24 para. 38](#); S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

**F784** Words in s. 113(3) substituted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes, 6.9.1999 for specified purposes, 18.10.1999 for specified purposes, 29.11.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 66](#); S.I. 1999/1958, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5); S.I. 1999/2422, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 14); S.I. 1999/2860, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 16-18); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)

*Persons maintaining dependants etc.*

## 114 Persons maintaining dependants, etc. **E+W+S**

- (1) Regulations may provide for determining the circumstances in which a person is or is not to be taken, for the purposes of Parts II to V of this Act—
  - (a) to be wholly or mainly, or to a substantial extent, maintaining, or to be contributing at any weekly rate to the maintenance of, another person; or
  - (b) to be, or have been, contributing at any weekly rate to the cost of providing for a child [<sup>F785</sup>or qualifying young person].
- (2) Regulations under this section may provide, for the purposes of the provisions relating to an increase of benefit under Parts II to V of this Act in respect of a [<sup>F786</sup>wife, civil partner] or other adult dependant, that where—
  - (a) a person is partly maintained by each of two or more beneficiaries, each of whom would be entitled to such an increase in respect of that person if he were wholly or mainly maintaining that person, and
  - (b) the contributions made by those two or more beneficiaries towards the maintenance of that person amount in the aggregate to sums which would, if they had been contributed by one of those beneficiaries, have been sufficient to satisfy the requirements of regulations under this section,
 that person shall be taken to be wholly or mainly maintained by such of those beneficiaries as may be prescribed.
- (3) Regulations may provide for any sum or sums paid by a person by way of contribution towards either or both of the following, that is to say—
  - (a) the maintenance of his or her spouse [<sup>F787</sup>or civil partner], and
  - (b) the cost of providing for one or more children [<sup>F788</sup>or qualifying young persons],
 to be treated for the purposes of any of the provisions of this Act specified in subsection (4) below as such contributions, of such respective amounts equal in the aggregate to the said sum or sums, in respect of such persons, as may be determined in accordance with the regulations so as to secure as large a payment as possible by way of benefit in respect of the dependants.
- (4) The provisions in question are sections 56, <sup>F789</sup>... <sup>F790</sup>..., 86 and paragraphs 5 and 6 of Schedule 7 to this Act.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F785** Words in s. 114(1) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 6(2), [Sch. 1 para. 7\(2\)](#)
- F786** Words in s. 114(2) substituted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), [Sch. 24 para. 39\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2005/3175](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)
- F787** Words in s. 114(3)(a) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), [Sch. 24 para. 39\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2005/3175](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)
- F788** Words in s. 114(3) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 6(2), [Sch. 1 para. 7\(3\)](#)
- F789** Word in s. 114(4) repealed (6.4.2010) by [Welfare Reform Act 2009 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 61(2), [Sch. 7 Pt. 2](#)
- F790** Words in s. 114(4) repealed (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), ss. 4(4), 27(4)(b), [Sch. 1 para. 16](#), [Sch. 7 Pt. 2](#) (with s. 4(5)-(8))

#### Special cases

#### 115 Crown employment - Parts I to VI. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this section, Parts I to V and this Part of this Act apply to persons employed by or under the Crown in like manner as if they were employed by a private person.
- (2) Subsection (1) above does not apply to persons serving as members of Her Majesty's forces in their capacity as such.
- (3) Employment as a member of Her Majesty's forces and any other prescribed employment under the Crown are not, and are not to be treated as, employed earner's employment for any of the purposes of Part V of this Act.
- (4) The references to Parts I to V of this Act in this section and sections 116, 117, 119, 120 and 121 below do not include references to section 111 above.

#### 116 Her Majesty's forces. **U.K.**

- (1) Subject to section 115(2) and (3) above and to this section, a person who is serving as a member of Her Majesty's forces shall, while he is so serving, be treated as an employed earner, in respect of his membership of those forces, for the purposes—
  - (a) of Parts I to V and this Part of this Act; and
  - (b) of any provision of the Administration Act in its application to him as an employed earner.
- (2) [<sup>F791</sup>The Treasury may with the concurrence of the Secretary of State] make regulations modifying Parts I to V and this Part of this Act [<sup>F792</sup>and Part II of the Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999], and any [<sup>F793</sup>provisions of Chapter II of Part I of the Social Security Act 1998 which correspond to] provisions of Part III of the 1975 Act, in such manner as [<sup>F794</sup>the Treasury think] proper, in their application to persons who are or have been members of Her Majesty's forces; and regulations under this section may in particular provide [<sup>F795</sup>, in the case of persons who are employed earners in respect of their membership of those forces, for reducing the rate of the contributions payable in respect of their employment and for determining—
  - (a) the amounts payable on account of those contributions by the Secretary of State and the time and manner of payment, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the deduction (if any) to be made on account of those contributions from the pay of those persons.]
- (3) For the purposes of Parts I to V and this Part of this Act, Her Majesty's forces shall be taken to consist of such establishments and organisations as may be prescribed [<sup>F796</sup>by regulations made by the Treasury with the concurrence of the Secretary of State], being establishments and organisations in which persons serve under the control of the Defence Council.

#### Extent Information

**E1** S. 116(2) extends to Northern Ireland see s. 177(5)(6)

#### Textual Amendments

- F791** Words in s. 116(2) substituted (1.4.1999) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 22(2)(a)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F792** Words in s. 116(2) inserted (4.3.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 7 para. 5**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(a)(b), Schs. 1, 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F793** Words in s. 116(2) substituted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes, 6.9.1999 for specified purposes, 18.10.1999 for specified purposes, 29.11.1999 for specified purposes) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), s. 87(2), **Sch. 7 para. 67**; S.I. 1999/1958, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5); S.I. 1999/2422, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 14); S.I. 1999/2860, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 16-18); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)
- F794** Words in s. 116(2) substituted (1.4.1999) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 22(2)(b)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F795** Words in s. 116(2) substituted (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 28**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F796** Words in s. 116(3) inserted (1.4.1999) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 22(3)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

#### 117 Mariners, airmen, etc. **E+W+S**

- (1) [<sup>F797</sup>The Treasury may with the concurrence of the Secretary of State] make regulations modifying provisions of Parts I to V and this Part of this Act [<sup>F798</sup>and Part II of the Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999], and any [<sup>F799</sup>provisions of Chapter II of Part I of the Social Security Act 1998 which correspond to] provisions of Part III of the 1975 Act, in such manner as [<sup>F800</sup>the Treasury think] proper, in their application to persons who are or have been, or are to be, employed on board any ship, vessel, hovercraft or aircraft.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) above may in particular provide—
- for any such provision to apply to such persons, notwithstanding that it would not otherwise apply;
  - for excepting such persons from the application of any such provision where they neither are domiciled nor have a place of residence in any part of Great Britain;
  - for requiring the payment of secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of such persons, whether or not they are (within the meaning of Part I of this Act) employed earners;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) for the taking of evidence, for the purposes of any claim to benefit, in a country or territory outside Great Britain, by a British consular official or such other person as may be prescribed;
- (e) for enabling persons who are or have been so employed to authorise the payment of the whole or any part of any benefit to which they are or may become entitled to such of their dependants as may be prescribed.

#### Textual Amendments

- F797** Words in s. 117(1) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 23\(a\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F798** Words in s. 117(1) inserted (4.3.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 7 para. 6](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(a)(b), Schs. 1, 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F799** Words in s. 117(1) substituted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes, 6.9.1999 for specified purposes, 18.10.1999 for specified purposes, 29.11.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\), s. 87\(2\), Sch. 7 para. 68](#); S.I. 1999/1958, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5); S.I. 1999/2422, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 14); S.I. 1999/2860, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 16-18); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)
- F800** Words in s. 117(1) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 23\(b\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

### 118 Married women and widows. **E+W+S**

[<sup>F801</sup>The Treasury may with the concurrence of the Secretary of State] make regulations modifying any of the following provisions of this Act, namely—

- (a) Part I;
- (b) Part II (except section 60); and
- (c) Parts III and IV,

in such manner as [<sup>F802</sup>the Treasury think] proper, in their application to women who are or have been married.

#### Textual Amendments

- F801** Words in s. 118 substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 24\(a\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F802** Words in s. 118 substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 24\(b\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

### 119 Persons outside Great Britain. **E+W+S**

[<sup>F803</sup>The Treasury may with the concurrence of the Secretary of State] make regulations modifying Parts I to V of this Act [<sup>F804</sup>and Part II of the Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999], and any [<sup>F805</sup>provisions of Chapter II of Part I of the Social Security Act 1998 which correspond to] provisions of Part III of the 1975 Act, in such manner as [<sup>F806</sup>the Treasury think] proper, in their application to persons who are or have been outside Great Britain at any prescribed time or in any prescribed circumstances.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F803** Words in s. 119 substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 25\(a\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F804** Words in s. 119 inserted (4.3.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 7 para. 7](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(a)(b), Schs. 1, 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F805** Words in s. 119 substituted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes, 6.9.1999 for specified purposes, 18.10.1999 for specified purposes, 29.11.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\), s. 87\(2\), Sch. 7 para. 69](#); S.I. 1999/1958, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5); S.I. 1999/2422, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 14); S.I. 1999/2860, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 16-18); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)
- F806** Words in s. 119 substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 25\(b\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

## 120 Employment at sea (continental shelf operations). **E+W+S**

- (1) [<sup>F807</sup>The Treasury may with the concurrence of the Secretary of State] make regulations modifying Parts I to V and this Part of this Act [<sup>F808</sup>and Part II of the Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999], and any [<sup>F809</sup>provisions of Chapter II of Part I of the Social Security Act 1998 which correspond to] provisions of Part III of the 1975 Act, in such manner as [<sup>F810</sup>the Treasury think] proper, in their application to persons [<sup>F811</sup>(“continental shelf workers”)] in any prescribed employment (whether under a contract of service or not) in connection with continental shelf operations.
- (2) “Continental shelf operations” means any activities which, if paragraphs (a) and (d) of [<sup>F812</sup>subsection (8) of section 11 of the Petroleum Act 1998] (application of civil law to certain offshore activities) were omitted, would nevertheless fall within subsection (2) of that section.
- (3) In particular (but without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1) above), [<sup>F813</sup>regulations under subsection (1)] may provide for any prescribed provision of Parts I to V and this Part of this Act to apply to any [<sup>F814</sup>continental shelf worker] notwithstanding that he does not fall within the description of an employed or self-employed earner, or does not fulfil the conditions prescribed under section 1(6) above as to residence or presence in Great Britain.
- [<sup>F815</sup>(4) The Treasury may also, by regulations, make provision for, and in connection with, the issue by Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs of certificates to prescribed persons who are, by virtue of regulations under subsection (1), to be treated as the secondary contributor in relation to the payment of earnings to or for the benefit of one or more continental shelf workers—
- (a) confirming that the prescribed person's liabilities to pay contributions in respect of the continental shelf workers specified or described in the certificate are being met by another person, and
  - (b) discharging the prescribed person, while the certificate is in force, from liability to make any payments in respect of the contributions, in the event that the other person fails to pay them in full.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (4) may, in particular, make provision about—
- (a) applying for a certificate;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the circumstances in which a certificate may, or must, be issued or cancelled;
- (c) the form and content of a certificate;
- (d) the effect of a certificate (including provision modifying the effect mentioned in subsection (4)(b) or specifying further effects);
- (e) the effect of cancelling a certificate.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F807** Words in s. 120(1) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 26\(a\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F808** Words in s. 120(1) inserted (4.3.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 7 para. 8](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(a)(b), Schs. 1, 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F809** Words in s. 120(1) substituted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes, 6.9.1999 for specified purposes, 18.10.1999 for specified purposes, 29.11.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\), s. 87\(2\), Sch. 7 para. 70](#); S.I. 1999/1958, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5); S.I. 1999/2422, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 14); S.I. 1999/2860, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 16-18); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)
- F810** Words in s. 120(1) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 26\(b\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F811** Words in s. 120(1) inserted (13.3.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), s. 12\(2\)](#)
- F812** Words in s. 120(2) substituted (15.2.1999) by [Petroleum Act 1998 \(c. 17\), s. 52\(4\), Sch. 4 para. 30](#) (with s. 49, Sch. 3); S.I. 1999/161, art. 2(1)
- F813** Words in s. 120(3) substituted (13.3.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), s. 12\(3\)\(a\)](#)
- F814** Words in s. 120(3) substituted (13.3.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), s. 12\(3\)\(b\)](#)
- F815** S. 120(4)(5) inserted (13.3.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), s. 12\(4\)](#)

## 121 Treatment of certain marriages. **E+W+S**

- (1) Regulations [<sup>F816</sup>made by the Treasury with the concurrence of the Secretary of State] may provide—
- (a) for a voidable marriage which has been annulled, whether before or after the date when the regulations come into force, to be treated for the purposes of the provisions to which this subsection applies as if it had been a valid marriage which was terminated by divorce at the date of annulment;
  - [<sup>F817</sup>(aa) for a voidable civil partnership which has been annulled, whether before or after the date when the regulations come into force, to be treated for the purposes of the provisions to which this subsection applies as if it had been a valid civil partnership which was dissolved at the date of annulment;]
  - (b) as to the circumstances in which, for the purposes of the enactments to which this section [<sup>F818</sup>applies, a marriage during the subsistence of which a party to it is at any time married to more than one person is to be treated as having, or as not having, the same consequences as any other marriage.]
- (2) Subsection (1) above applies—
- (a) to any enactment contained in Parts I to V or this Part of this Act; and
  - (b) to regulations under any such enactment.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F816** Words in s. 121(1) inserted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 27**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F817** S. 121(1)(aa) inserted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 40**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F818** Words in s. 121(1)(b) substituted (8.1.1996) by [Private International Law \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Act 1995 \(c. 42\)](#), s. 16(2), **Sch. para. 4(2)** (with s. 8(3))

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C59** S. 121 applied (7.2.1994) by [Pension Schemes Act 1993 \(c. 48\)](#), **ss. 167(6)**, 193(2) (with s. 189, Schs. 6, 9); S.I. 1994/86, art. 2

## Interpretation

### 122 Interpretation of Parts I to VI and supplementary provisions. **E+W+S**

(1) In Parts I to V above and this Part of this Act, unless the context otherwise requires—

[<sup>F819</sup>“additional Class 4 percentage” is to be construed in accordance with section 15(3ZA)(b) above;]

[<sup>F819</sup>“additional primary percentage” is to be construed in accordance with section 8(2)(b) above;]

[<sup>F820</sup>“adult disability payment” means disability assistance given in accordance with the Disability Assistance for Working Age People (Scotland) Regulations 2022;]

[<sup>F821</sup>“age-related secondary percentage” is to be construed in accordance with section 9A(2) above;]

[<sup>F822</sup>“Bank of England base rate” means—

- (a) the rate announced from time to time by the Monetary Policy Committee of the Bank of England as the official dealing rate, being the rate at which the Bank is willing to enter into transactions for providing short term liquidity in the money markets, or
- (b) where an order under section 19 of the Bank of England Act 1998 is in force, any equivalent rate determined by the Treasury under that section;]

“beneficiary”, in relation to any benefit, means the person entitled to that benefit;

“benefit” means—

- (a) benefit under Parts II to V of this Act other than Old Cases payments;
- (b) as respects any period before 1st July 1992 but not before 6th April 1975, benefit under Part II of the 1975 Act; or
- (c) as respects any period before 6th April 1975, benefit under—
  - (i) the <sup>M11</sup>National Insurance Act 1946 <sup>M12</sup> or 1965; or
  - (ii) the <sup>M13</sup>National Insurance (Industrial Injuries) Act 1946 <sup>M14</sup> or 1965;

[<sup>F823</sup>(For the meaning of “benefit” in Part 1, see also section 19B)]

[<sup>F824</sup>“the benefits code” has the meaning given by section 63(1) of ITEPA 2003;]



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F825</sup>“child” has the same meaning as in Part 9 of this Act;]

[<sup>F826</sup>“child disability payment” means disability assistance given in accordance with the Disability Assistance for Children and Young People (Scotland) Regulations 2021 (S.S.I. 2021/174);]

“claim” is to be construed in accordance with “claimant”;

“claimant”, in relation to benefit other than industrial injuries benefit, means a person who has claimed benefit;

“claimant”, in relation to industrial injuries benefit, means a person who has claimed industrial injuries benefit;

“contract of service” means any contract of service or apprenticeship whether written or oral and whether express or implied;

[<sup>F827</sup>“contribution-based jobseeker’s allowance” has the same meaning as in the Jobseekers Act 1995;]

“current”, in relation to the lower and upper earnings limits [<sup>F828</sup>and primary and secondary thresholds] under section 5(1) above, means for the time being in force;

[<sup>F829</sup>“day of interruption of employment” has the meaning given by section 25A(1)(c) above;]

[<sup>F830</sup>“deferred” and “period of deferment”—

(a) in relation to a Category A or Category B retirement pension, have the meanings given by section 55(3), and

(b) in relation to a shared additional pension, have the meanings given by section 55C(3);]

“earner” and “earnings” are to be construed in accordance with sections 3, 4 and 112 above;

“employed earner” has the meaning assigned to it by section 2 above;

“employment” includes any trade, business, profession, office or vocation and “employed” has a corresponding meaning;

[<sup>F824</sup>“the employment income Parts of ITEPA 2003” means Parts 2 to [<sup>F831</sup>7A] of that Act;]

“entitled”, in relation to any benefit, is to be construed in accordance with—

(a) the provisions specifically relating to that benefit;

(b) in the case of a benefit specified in section 20(1) above, section 21 above; and

(c) sections 1 to 3 [<sup>F832</sup>of the Administration Act and section 27 of the Social Security Act 1998];

<sup>F833</sup>

[<sup>F834</sup>“first appointed year” means such tax year, no earlier than 2002-03, as may be appointed by order, and “second appointed year” means such subsequent tax year as may be so appointed;]

[<sup>F835</sup>“the flat rate introduction year” means such tax year as may be designated as such by order;]

[<sup>F824</sup>“general earnings” has the meaning given by section 7 of ITEPA 2003 and accordingly sections 3 and 112 of this Act do not apply in relation to the word “earnings” when used in the expression “general earnings”];

“industrial injuries benefit” means benefit under Part V of this Act, other than under Schedule 8;

<sup>F836</sup>

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“the Inland Revenue” means the Commissioners of Inland Revenue;  
[<sup>F824</sup>“ITEPA 2003” means the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003;]

“late husband”, in relation to a woman who has been more than once married, means her last husband;

“long-term benefit” has the meaning assigned to it by section 20(2) above;

“loss of physical faculty” includes disfigurement whether or not accompanied by any loss of physical faculty;

[<sup>F837</sup>“lower earnings limit”, “upper earnings limit” [<sup>F838</sup>“primary threshold” and “secondary threshold”] are to be construed in accordance with subsection (1) of section 5 above, and references to the lower or upper earnings limit, or to [<sup>F839</sup>the primary or secondary] threshold, of a tax year are to whatever is (or was) for that year the limit or threshold in force under that subsection;]

[<sup>F840</sup>“lower-paid employment as a minister of religion” has the meaning given by section 290D of ITEPA 2003;]

[<sup>F836</sup>

[<sup>F841</sup>“main Class 4 percentage” is to be construed in accordance with section 15(3ZA) above;]

[<sup>F841</sup>“main primary percentage” is to be construed in accordance with section 8(2) above;]

“medical examination” includes bacteriological and radiographical tests and similar investigations, and “medically examined” has a corresponding meaning;

“medical treatment” means medical, surgical or rehabilitative treatment (including any course or diet or other regimen), and references to a person receiving or submitting himself to medical treatment are to be construed accordingly;

“the Northern Ireland Department” means the Department of Health and Social Services for Northern Ireland;

“Old Cases payments” means payments under Part I or II of Schedule 8 to this Act;

[<sup>F842</sup>“PAYE settlement agreement” has the same meaning as in [<sup>F843</sup>Chapter 5 of Part 11 of ITEPA 2003];]

“payments by way of occupational or personal pension” means, in relation to a person, periodical payments which, in connection with the coming to an end of an employment of his, fall to be made to him-

- (a) out of money provided wholly or partly by the employer or under arrangements made by the employer; or
- (b) out of money provided under an enactment or instrument having the force of law in any part of the United Kingdom or elsewhere; or
- (c) under a personal pension scheme as defined in section 84(1) of the 1986 Act; or
- (d) [<sup>F844</sup>under a pension scheme registered under section 153 of the Finance Act 2004; or]

and such other payments as are prescribed;

[<sup>F845</sup>“pensionable age” has the meaning given by the rules in paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 to the Pensions Act 1995;]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“pneumoconiosis” means fibrosis of the lungs due to silica dust, asbestos dust, or other dust, and includes the condition of the lungs known as dust-reticulation;

[<sup>F846</sup>“PPF periodic payments” means—

- (a) any periodic compensation payments made in relation to a person, payable under the pension compensation provisions as specified in section 162(2) of the Pensions Act 2004 or Article 146(2) of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (the pension compensation provisions); or
- (b) any periodic payments made in relation to a person, payable under section 166 of the Pensions Act 2004 or Article 150 of the Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (duty to pay scheme benefits unpaid at assessment date etc.);]

“prescribe” means prescribe by regulations;

<sup>F847</sup> .....

“qualifying earnings factor” means an earnings factor equal to the lower earnings limit for the tax year in question multiplied by 52;

[<sup>F848</sup>“qualifying young person” has the same meaning as in Part 9 of this Act;]

[<sup>F849</sup>“Regulation (EC) No 1408/71” means Council Regulation (EC) No 1408/71 of 14 June 1971 [<sup>F850</sup>, as amended from time to time.] on the application of social security schemes to employed persons, to self-employed persons and to members of their families moving within the Community;

“Regulation (EC) No 883/2004” means Regulation (EC) No 883/2004 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 29 April 2004 [<sup>F851</sup>, as amended from time to time.] on the coordination of social security systems;]

“relative” includes a person who is a relative by marriage [<sup>F852</sup>or civil partnership];

“relevant accident” means the accident in respect of which industrial injuries benefit is claimed or payable;

“relevant injury” means the injury in respect of which industrial injuries benefit is claimed or payable;

“relevant loss of faculty” means—

(a) <sup>F853</sup> .....

(b) in relation to industrial injuries benefit, the loss of faculty resulting from the relevant injury;

[<sup>F854</sup>“secondary percentage” is to be construed in accordance with section 9(2) above;]

“self-employed earner” has the meaning assigned to it by section 2 above;

“short-term benefit” has the meaning assigned to it by section 20(2) above;

“tax week” means one of the successive periods in a tax year beginning with the first day of that year and every seventh day thereafter, the last day of a tax year (or, in the case of a tax year ending in a leap year, the last two days) to be treated accordingly as a separate tax week;

“tax year” means the 12 months beginning with 6th April in any year, the expression “1978-79” meaning the tax year beginning with 6th April 1978, and any correspondingly framed reference to a pair of successive years being construed as a reference to the tax year beginning with 6th April in the earlier of them;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“trade or business” includes, in relation to a public or local authority, the exercise and performance of the powers and duties of that authority;  
“trade union” means an association of employed earners;  
[<sup>F855</sup>“unit of additional pension” means a unit of additional pension for which a person has paid a Class 3A contribution under section 14A;]  
[<sup>F856</sup>“the upper accrual point” is £770;]  
“week” <sup>F857</sup> ... means a period of 7 days beginning with Sunday;  
[<sup>F858</sup>“working life” has the meaning given by paragraph 5(8) of Schedule 3 to this Act].

<sup>F859</sup>(1A) .....

- (2) Regulations [<sup>F860</sup>made by the Treasury with the concurrence of the Secretary of State] may make provision modifying the meaning of “employment” for the purposes of any provision of Parts I to V and this Part of this Act.
- (3) Provision may be made [<sup>F861</sup>by the Treasury by regulations made with the concurrence of the Secretary of State] as to the circumstances in which a person is to be treated as residing or not residing with another person for any of the purposes of Parts I to V and this Part of this Act and as to the circumstances in which persons are to be treated for any of those purposes as residing or not residing together.
- (4) A person who is residing with his spouse shall be treated for the purposes of Parts I to V and this Part of this Act as entitled to any child benefit to which his spouse is entitled.
- (5) Regulations may, for the purposes of any provision of those Parts under which the right to any benefit or increase of benefit depends on a person being or having been entitled to child benefit, make provision whereby a person is to be treated as if he were or had been so entitled or as if he were not or had not been so entitled.
- (6) For the purposes of Parts I to V and this Part of this Act a person is “permanently incapable of self-support” if (but only if) he is incapable of supporting himself by reason of physical or mental infirmity and is likely to remain so incapable for the remainder of his life.

[<sup>F862</sup>(6A) The Treasury may by regulations prescribe an equivalent of the upper accrual point in relation to earners paid otherwise than weekly (and references in this or any other Act to “the prescribed equivalent”, in the context of the upper accrual point, are to the equivalent prescribed under this subsection in relation to such earners).

(6B) The power conferred by subsection (6A) includes power to prescribe an amount which exceeds by not more than £1 the amount which is the arithmetical equivalent of the upper accrual point.]

<sup>F863</sup>(7) .....

<sup>F863</sup>(8) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F819** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 \(c. 19\), s. 8\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 12\(2\)](#)

**F820** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (21.3.2022 with effect in accordance with reg. 1(1) of the amending S.I.) by [The Scotland Act 2016 \(Social Security\) \(Adult Disability Payment and Child Disability Payment\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2022 \(S.I. 2022/335\), reg. 2\(4\)\(a\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F821** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (6.4.2015) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 (c. 7), s. 9(4)(12)
- F822** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (18.11.2004 for specified purposes, 6.4.2005 in so far as not already in force) by Pensions Act 2004 (c. 35), s. 322(3)(a), **Sch. 11 para. 18(a)**
- F823** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 7**
- F824** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 178(2)** (with Sch. 7)
- F825** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 8(2)**
- F826** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (21.3.2022 with effect in accordance with reg. 1(1) of the amending S.I.) by The Scotland Act 2016 (Social Security) (Adult Disability Payment and Child Disability Payment) (Amendment) Regulations 2022 (S.I. 2022/335), **reg. 2(4)(b)**
- F827** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 29**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F828** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (6.4.2000) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(3)(b), **Sch. 12 para. 77(2)**; S.I. 1999/3420, art. 4(d)
- F829** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 30**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F830** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (18.11.2004 for specified purposes, 6.4.2005 in so far as not already in force) by Pensions Act 2004 (c. 35), s. 322(3)(a), **Sch. 11 para. 18(b)**
- F831** Word in s. 122(1) substituted (with effect in accordance with Sch. 2 paras. 52-59 of the amending Act) by Finance Act 2011 (c. 11), **Sch. 2 para. 50(a)**
- F832** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (5.7.1999 for specified purposes, 6.9.1999 for specified purposes, 18.10.1999 for specified purposes, 29.11.1999 for specified purposes) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), s. 87(2), **Sch. 7 para. 71(a)**; S.I. 1999/1958, art. 2(1)(b), Sch. 1 (with arts. 3-5); S.I. 1999/2422, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 14); S.I. 1999/2860, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 16-18); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)
- F833** Words in s. 122(1) omitted (with effect for the tax year 2016-17 and subsequent tax years in accordance with s. 13(4) of the amending Act) by virtue of Finance Act 2015 (c. 11), **Sch. 1 para. 23(4)(a)**
- F834** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 35(14)**, 86(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2000/2950, **art. 6**; S.I. 2001/153, **art. 2(a)**
- F835** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), **ss. 11(4)**, 30(3)
- F836** Words in s. 122(1) repealed (6.4.1999) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), s. 87(2), Sch. 7 para. 71(b), **Sch. 8**; S.I. 1999/418, **art. 2(2)(3)(a)(c)(i)**
- F837** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (6.4.1999) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), s. 87(2), **Sch. 7 para. 71(c)**; S.I. 1999/418, **art. 2(2)(3)(a)**
- F838** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (6.4.2000) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(3)(b), **Sch. 12 para. 77(3)(a)**; S.I. 1999/3420, art. 4(d)
- F839** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (6.4.2000) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(3)(b), **Sch. 12 para. 77(3)(b)**; S.I. 1999/3420, art. 4(d)
- F840** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (with effect for the tax year 2016-17 and subsequent tax years in accordance with s. 13(4) of the amending Act) by Finance Act 2015 (c. 11), **Sch. 1 para. 23(4)(b)**
- F841** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 (c. 19), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 12(3)**
- F842** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (8.9.1998 for specified purposes, 6.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Act 1998 (c. 14), s. 87(2), **Sch. 7 para. 71(d)**; S.I. 1998/2209, art. 2(b)(c), Sch. Pts. 2, 3
- F843** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 178(3)** (with Sch. 7)
- F844** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (6.4.2006) by The Taxation of Pension Schemes (Consequential Amendments) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/745), arts. 1, **4(3)**
- F845** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 13(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F846** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (14.2.2006) by The Pensions Act 2004 (PPF Payments and FAS Payments) (Consequential Provisions) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/343), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 1(3)**
- F847** Words in s. 122(1) repealed (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 (c. 19), ss. 7, 8(2), **Sch. 2**
- F848** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 8(3)**
- F849** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (31.10.2011) by The Social Security (Disability Living Allowance, Attendance Allowance and Carers Allowance) (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/2426), **reg. 5(5)**
- F850** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (15.11.2018) by The Social Security (Updating of EU References) (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/1084), regs. 1, **2(a)**
- F851** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (15.11.2018) by The Social Security (Updating of EU References) (Amendment) Regulations 2018 (S.I. 2018/1084), regs. 1, **2(b)**
- F852** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 41(2)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F853** Words in s. 122(1) repealed (with savings for those entitled to severe disablement allowance for days immediately before 6.4.2001) (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 13 Pt. IV**; S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(g)(4)(5) (with art. 4)
- F854** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (with effect in relation to the tax year 2003-04 and subsequent tax years) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2002 (c. 19), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 12(4)**
- F855** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (12.10.2015) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 10**; S.I. 2015/1475, art. 3(b)
- F856** Words in s. 122(1) substituted (21.9.2008) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 (c. 16), **ss. 3(4)(a)**, 6(1)
- F857** Words in s. 122(1) repealed (8.4.2003) by Tax Credits Act 2002 (c. 21), s. 61, **Sch. 6**; S.I. 2003/962, art. 2(4)(e), **Sch. 2** (with art. 3)
- F858** Words in s. 122(1) inserted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), **ss. 134(4)**, 180(2)(a) (with Sch. 4)
- F859** S. 122(1A) omitted (E.W.) (13.3.2014) by virtue of The Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 (Consequential and Contrary Provisions and Scotland) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/560), art. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 22(7)**; and omitted (S.) (16.12.2014) by virtue of The Marriage and Civil Partnership (Scotland) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3229), art. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 2(12)**
- F860** Words in s. 122(2) inserted (1.4.1999) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 28(a)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2** (with arts. 3-6)
- F861** Words in s. 122(3) substituted (1.4.1999) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 28(b)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2** (with arts. 3-6)
- F862** S. 122(6A)(6B) inserted (21.9.2008) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 (c. 16), **ss. 3(4)(b)**, 6(1)
- F863** S. 122(7)(8) repealed (21.9.2008) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 (c. 16), **ss. 3(4)(c)**, 6(1), **Sch. 2**

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C60** S. 122: power to modify conferred (1.7.1992) by Social Security Administration Act 1992 (c. 5), **ss. 73(4)**, 192(4)

#### **Marginal Citations**

- M11** 1946 c. 67.  
**M12** 1965 c. 51.  
**M13** 1946 c. 62.  
**M14** 1965 c. 52.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART VII **E+W+S**

### INCOME-RELATED BENEFITS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C61** Pt. 7: power to modify conferred (1.7.1992) by [Social Security Administration Act 1992 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 150(7), 151, 192(4)**.

#### General

#### <sup>F864</sup>**123** Income-related benefits. **E+W+S**

- (1) Prescribed schemes shall provide for the following benefits (in this Act referred to as “income-related benefits”)—
  - (a) income support;
  - <sup>F865</sup>(b) .....
  - <sup>F865</sup>(c) .....
  - (d) housing benefit; and
  - <sup>F866</sup>(e) council tax benefit.]
- (2) The Secretary of State shall make copies of schemes prescribed under subsection (1) (a), (b) or (c) above available for public inspection at local offices of <sup>F867</sup>the Department for Work and Pensions] at all reasonable hours without payment.
- (3) Every authority granting housing benefit—
  - (a) shall take such steps as appear to them appropriate for the purpose of securing that persons who may be entitled to housing benefit from the authority become aware that they may be entitled to it; and
  - (b) shall make copies of the housing benefit scheme, with any modifications adopted by them under the Administration Act, available for public inspection at their principal office at all reasonable hours without payment.
- <sup>F868</sup>(4) <sup>F869</sup>Each billing authority and in Scotland each local authority]—
  - (a) shall take such steps as appear to it appropriate for the purpose of securing that any person who may be entitled to council tax benefit in respect of council tax payable to the authority becomes aware that he may be entitled to it; and
  - (b) shall make copies of the council tax benefit scheme, with any modifications adopted by it under the Administration Act, available for public inspection at its principal office at all reasonable hours without payment.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F864** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), **Sch. 14 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), **Sch. 4** (with arts. 9, 10, **Sch. 5**)
- F865** S. 123(1)(b)(c) repealed (8.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, **Sch. 6**; S.I. 2003/962, art. 2(4)(e), **Sch. 2** (with art. 3)
- F866** S. 123(1)(e) substituted (6.3.1992) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 119(2), **Sch. 9 para. 1(1)** (with s. 118)
- F867** Words in s. 123(2) substituted (27.6.2002) by [The Secretaries of State for Education and Skills and for Work and Pensions Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1397\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 7**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

**Changes to legislation:** Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F868** S. 123(4) substituted for s. 123(4)-(6) (6.3.1992) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\), s. 119\(2\), Sch. 9 para. 1\(2\)](#) (with s. 118)

**F869** Words in s. 123(4) substituted (3.7.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\), s. 70\(1\), Sch. 5 para. 1\(2\)](#)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C62** Ss. 123, 131-137 restricted (temp.) (6.3.1992) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\), s. 119\(2\), Sch. 9 para. 11](#) (with s. 118(1)(2)(4)),

*Income support*

**[F864] 124 Income support. E+W+S**

- (1) A person in Great Britain is entitled to income support if—
  - [F870](a) he is of or over the age of 16;]
  - [F871](aa) he has not attained the qualifying age for state pension credit;]
  - (b) he has no income or his income does not exceed the applicable amount;
  - (c) he is not engaged in remunerative work and, if he is a member of a [F872]couple], the other member is not so engaged; <sup>F873</sup> ...
  - [F874](d) except in such circumstances as may be prescribed, he is not receiving relevant education;]
  - [F875](e) he falls within a prescribed category of person; <sup>F876</sup> ...
  - (f) he is not entitled to a jobseeker’s allowance and, if he is a member of a [F877]couple], the other member of the couple is not [F878] and the couple are not,] entitled to an income-based jobseeker’s allowance]; <sup>F879</sup> ...
  - [F880](g) if he is a member of a [F881]couple], the other member of the couple is not entitled to state pension credit] [F882]; and
  - (h) he is not entitled to an employment and support allowance and, if he is a member of a couple, the other member of the couple is not entitled to an income-related employment and support allowance.]

[F883](1A) Regulations under paragraph (e) of subsection (1) must secure that a person who—

- (a) is not a member of a couple, and
- (b) is responsible for, and a member of the same household as, a child under the age of [F884]5],

falls within a category of person prescribed under that paragraph.

(1B) Subsection (1A) does not apply if regulations under subsection (4)(c) of section 1A of the Jobseekers Act 1995 containing the provision mentioned in subsection (5) of that section are in force.]

<sup>F885</sup>(2) .....

<sup>F885</sup>(3) .....

- (4) Subject to subsection (5) below, where a person is entitled to income support, then—
  - (a) if he has no income, the amount shall be the applicable amount; and
  - (b) if he has income, the amount shall be the difference between his income and the applicable amount.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Where a person is entitled to income support for a period to which this subsection applies, the amount payable for that period shall be calculated in such manner as may be prescribed.
- (6) Subsection (5) above applies—
- (a) to a period of less than a week which is the whole period for which income support is payable; and
  - (b) to any other period of less than a week for which it is payable.

[<sup>F886</sup>(7) In this section, “income-related employment and support allowance” means an income-related allowance under Part 1 of the Welfare Reform Act 2007 (employment and support allowance).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F870** S. 124(1)(a) substituted (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 30(2)**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F871** S. 124(1)(aa) inserted (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by State Pension Credit Act 2002 (c. 16), s. 22(3), **Sch. 2 para. 2(2)**; S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)
- F872** Word in s. 124(1)(c) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 42**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F873** Word in s. 124(1)(c) repealed (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F874** S. 124(1)(d) substituted (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 30(4)**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F875** S. 124(1)(e)(f) inserted (12.12.1995 for specified purposes, 7.10.1996 in so far as not already in force) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 30(5)**; S.I. 1995/3228, art. 2(b), Sch.; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F876** Word in s. 124(1) repealed (6.10.2003) by State Pension Credit Act 2002 (c. 16), s. 22(3), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)
- F877** Word in s. 124(1)(f) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 42**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F878** Words in s. 124(1)(f) inserted (19.3.2001) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 28**; S.I. 2001/933, art. 4(a)
- F879** Word in s. 124(1)(f) repealed (27.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), s. 70(1), **Sch. 8**; S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(g)
- F880** S. 124(1)(g) and preceding word inserted (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by State Pension Credit Act 2002 (c. 16), s. 22(3), **Sch. 2 para. 2(3)**; S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)
- F881** Word in s. 124(1)(g) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 42**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F882** S. 124(1)(h) and preceding word inserted (27.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), s. 70(2), **Sch. 3 para. 9(9)**; S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(f)
- F883** S. 124(1A)(1B) inserted (21.5.2012 for s. 124(1A)) by Welfare Reform Act 2009 (c. 24), **ss. 3(1), 61(3)**; S.I. 2012/1256, art. 2(1)
- F884** Figure in s. 124(1A) substituted (20.3.2012) by virtue of Welfare Reform Act 2012 (c. 5), **ss. 58(2), 150(3)**; S.I. 2012/863, art. 2(1)(c)
- F885** S. 124(2)(3) repealed (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F886** S. 124(7) inserted (27.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), s. 70(2), **Sch. 3 para. 9(10)**; S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(f)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C63** S. 124(1)(e) power to make regulations modified (21.5.1998) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 77, 87(2)(a)**

#### <sup>F887</sup>**125 Severe hardship cases.** **E+W+S**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F887** S. 125 repealed (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)

#### <sup>F864</sup>**126 Trade disputes.** **E+W+S**

- (1) This section applies to a person, other than a child or a person of a prescribed description—
  - (a) who <sup>F888</sup>is prevented from being entitled to a jobseeker’s allowance by section 14 of the Jobseekers Act 1995 (trade disputes)]; or
  - (b) who would be so <sup>F889</sup>prevented] if otherwise entitled to that benefit, except during any period shown by the person to be a period of incapacity for work <sup>F890</sup>... or to be within the maternity period.
- (2) In subsection (1) above “the maternity period” means the period commencing at the beginning of the 6th week before the expected week of confinement and ending at the end of the 7th week after the week in which confinement takes place.
- (3) For the purpose of calculating income support—
  - (a) so long as this section applies to a person who is not a member of a family, the applicable amount shall be disregarded;
  - (b) so long as it applies to a person who is a member of a family but is not a member of a <sup>F891</sup>couple], the portion of the applicable amount which is included in respect of him shall be disregarded;
  - (c) so long as it applies to one of the members of a <sup>F892</sup>couple]—
    - (i) if the applicable amount consists only of an amount in respect of them, it shall be reduced to one half; and
    - (ii) if it includes other amounts, the portion of it which is included in respect of them shall be reduced to one-half and any further portion of it which is included in respect of the member of the couple to whom this section applies shall be disregarded;
  - (d) so long as it applies to both the members of a <sup>F893</sup>couple]—
    - (i) if neither of them is responsible for a child or person of a prescribed description who is a member of the same household, the applicable amount shall be disregarded; and
    - (ii) in any other case, the portion of the applicable amount which is included in respect of them and any further portion of it which is included in respect of either of them shall be disregarded.
- (4) Where a reduction under subsection (3)(c) above would not produce a sum which is a multiple of 5p, the reduction shall be to the nearest lower sum which is such a multiple.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Where this section applies to a person for any period, then, except so far as regulations provide otherwise—
- (a) in calculating the entitlement to income support of that person or a member of his family the following shall be treated as his income and shall not be disregarded—
- (i) any payment which he or a member of his family receives or is entitled to obtain by reason of the person to whom this section applies being without employment for that period; and
- (ii) without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (i) above, any amount which becomes or would on an application duly made become available to him in that period by way of repayment of income tax deducted from his [<sup>F894</sup>taxable earnings (as defined by section 10 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003) under PAYE regulations]; and
- (b) any payment by way of income support for that period or any part of it which apart from this paragraph would be made to him, or to a person whose applicable amount is aggregated with his—
- (i) shall not be made if the weekly rate of payment is equal to or less than the relevant sum; or
- (ii) if it is more than the relevant sum, shall be at a weekly rate equal to the difference.
- (6) In respect of any period less than a week, subsection (5) above shall have effect subject to such modifications as may be prescribed.
- (7) Subject to subsection (8) below, “the relevant sum” for the purposes of subsection (5) above shall be [<sup>F895</sup>£47.00].
- (8) If an order under section 150 of the Administration Act (annual up-rating) has the effect of increasing payments of income support, from the time when the order comes into force there shall be substituted, in subsection (5)(b) above, for the references to the sum for the time being mentioned in it references to a sum arrived at by—
- (a) increasing that sum by the percentage by which the personal allowance under paragraph 1(1) of Part I of Schedule 2 to the <sup>M15</sup>Income Support (General) Regulations 1987 for a single person aged not less than 25 has been increased by the order; and
- (b) if the sum as so increased is not a multiple of 50p, disregarding the remainder if it is 25p and, if it is not, rounding it up or down to the nearest 50p, and the order shall state the substituted sum.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F888** Words in s. 126(1)(a) substituted (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 31(a)**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F889** Word in s. 126(1)(b) substituted (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 31(b)**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F890** Words in s. 126(1) repealed (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 31**, **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), **Sch. Pt. 4**
- F891** Word in s. 126(3)(b) substituted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 43**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F892** Word in s. 126(3)(c) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 43**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F893** Word in s. 126(3)(d) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 43**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F894** Words in s. 126(5)(a)(ii) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 179** (with Sch. 7)
- F895** Sum in s. 126(7) substituted (coming into force in accordance with art. 1(3)(i) of the amending S.I.) by The Social Security Benefits Up-rating Order 2023 (S.I. 2023/316), arts. 1(3)(i), **23**

#### Marginal Citations

**M15** S.I. 1987/1967.

#### <sup>F864</sup>127 Effect of return to work. **E+W+S**

If a person returns to work with the same employer after a period during which section 126 above applies to him, and whether or not his return is before the end of any stoppage of work in relation to which he is or would be <sup>F896</sup>prevented from being entitled to a jobseeker's allowance]—

- (a) that section shall cease to apply to him at the commencement of the day on which he returns to work; and
- (b) until the end of the period of 15 days beginning with that day, section 124(1) above shall have effect in relation to him as if the following paragraph were substituted for paragraph (c)—

“(c) in the case of a member of a <sup>F897</sup>couple], the other member is not engaged in remunerative work; and”; and

- (c) any sum paid by way of income support for that period of 15 days to him or, where he is a member of a <sup>F897</sup>couple], to the other member of that couple, shall be recoverable in accordance with the regulations from the person to whom it was paid or from any prescribed person or, where the person to whom it was paid is a member of a <sup>F897</sup>couple], from the other member of the couple.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F896** Words in s. 127 substituted (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 32**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F897** Word in s. 127 substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 44**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

#### *Family credit*

#### <sup>F898</sup>128 Family credit. **E+W+S**

.....



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F898** S. 128 repealed (8.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, [Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2003/962, art. 2(4)(e), [Sch. 2](#) (with art. 3)

*Disability working allowance*

<sup>F899</sup>**129 Disability working allowance.** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F899** S. 129 repealed (8.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, [Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2003/962, art. 2(4)(e), [Sch. 2](#) (with art. 3)

*Housing benefit*

<sup>F864</sup>**130 Housing benefit.** **E+W+S**

- (1) A person is entitled to housing benefit if—
  - (a) he is liable to make payments in respect of a dwelling in Great Britain which he occupies as his home;
  - (b) there is an appropriate maximum housing benefit in his case; and
  - (c) either—
    - (i) he has no income or his income does not exceed the applicable amount; or
    - (ii) his income exceeds that amount, but only by so much that there is an amount remaining if the deduction for which subsection (3)(b) below provides is made.
- (2) In subsection (1) above “payments in respect of a dwelling” means such payments as may be prescribed, but the power to prescribe payments does not include power to prescribe—
  - <sup>F900</sup>(a) payments to a billing authority or to a local authority in Scotland in respect of council tax;]
  - <sup>F901</sup>(b) mortgage payments, or, in relation to Scotland, payments under heritable securities.]
- (3) Where a person is entitled to housing benefit, then—
  - (a) if he has no income or his income does not exceed the applicable amount, the amount of the housing benefit shall be the amount which is the appropriate maximum housing benefit in his case; and
  - (b) if his income exceeds the applicable amount, the amount of the housing benefit shall be what remains after the deduction from the appropriate maximum housing benefit of prescribed percentages of the excess of his income over the applicable amount.

<sup>F902</sup>(4) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F903</sup>(5) . . . . .]

#### Textual Amendments

- F864** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), [Sch. 4](#) (with arts. 9, 10, [Sch. 5](#))
- F900** S. 130(2)(a) substituted (3.7.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 70(1), [Sch. 5 para. 1\(3\)](#)
- F901** Words in s. 130(2) substituted (6.3.1992) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 119(2), [Sch. 9 para. 3](#) (with s. 118(1)(2)(4))
- F902** S. 130(4) repealed (7.4.2008) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), ss. 30(1), 70(2), [Sch. 8](#); S.I. 2007/2872, art. 2(1)(a)(c)
- F903** S. 130(5) repealed (with savings) (1.4.1997) by [Housing Act 1996 \(c. 52\)](#), ss. 227, 232(3), [Sch. 19 Pt. 6](#); S.I. 1997/618, [art. 2\(1\)](#) (with [Sch.](#))

#### [<sup>F904</sup>130A Appropriate maximum housing benefit **E+W+S**

- [<sup>F864</sup>(1) For the purposes of section 130 above, the appropriate maximum housing benefit (in this section referred to as “the AMHB”) is determined in accordance with this section.
- (2) Regulations must prescribe the manner in which the AMHB is to be determined.
- (3) [<sup>F905</sup>The provision which may be made by the regulations includes provision] for the AMHB to be ascertained in the prescribed manner by reference to rent officer determinations.
- (4) The regulations may require an authority administering housing benefit in any prescribed case—
- (a) to apply for a rent officer determination, and
  - (b) to do so within such time as may be specified in the regulations.
- [<sup>F906</sup>(5) The regulations may, for the purpose of determining the AMHB, provide for the amount of the liability mentioned in section 130(1)(a) above to be taken to be an amount other than the actual amount of that liability (and, without prejudice to the generality of this subsection, may provide for it to be taken to be the amount of a rent officer determination).
- (6) The regulations may, for that purpose, make provision for determining the amount of liability under section 130(1)(a) above which a person is treated as having by virtue of regulations under section 137(2)(j) below (and, without prejudice to the generality of this subsection, may provide for that amount to be the amount of a rent officer determination).]
- (7) A rent officer determination is a determination made by a rent officer in the exercise of functions under section 122 of the Housing Act 1996.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F864** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), [Sch. 4](#) (with arts. 9, 10, [Sch. 5](#))
- F904** S. 130A inserted (1.10.2007 for specified purposes, 7.4.2008 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 30\(2\)](#), 70(2); S.I. 2007/2872, art. 2(2)(a)(3) (with arts. 3-5)
- F905** Words in s. 130A(3) substituted (27.11.2012 for specified purposes, 1.1.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 69\(2\)](#), 150(3); S.I. 2012/2946, art. 2(1)(a)(b)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F906** S. 130A(5)(6) substituted (27.11.2012 for specified purposes, 1.1.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), [ss. 69\(3\)](#), [150\(3\)](#); S.I. 2012/2946, art. 2(1)(a)(b)

**F907** **130B** **Loss of housing benefit following eviction on certain grounds** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F907** Ss. 130B-130G cease to have effect (31.12.2010) by virtue of [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), [s. 31\(3\)](#)

**F907F908** **130C** **Deviant orders for possession** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F907** Ss. 130B-130G cease to have effect (31.12.2010) by virtue of [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), [s. 31\(3\)](#)

**F908** By [The Renting Homes \(Wales\) Act 2016 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2022 \(S.I. 2022/1166\)](#), regs. 1(1), [21\(2\)](#), it is provided (1.12.2022) that s. 130C(1)(d) is inserted

**F909** **130D** **Loss of housing benefit: supplementary** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F909** Ss. 130B-130G cease to have effect (31.12.2010) by virtue of [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), [s. 31\(3\)](#)

**F909** **130E** **Couples** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F909** Ss. 130B-130G cease to have effect (31.12.2010) by virtue of [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), [s. 31\(3\)](#)

**F909** **130F** **Information provision** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F909** Ss. 130B-130G cease to have effect (31.12.2010) by virtue of [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), [s. 31\(3\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F909</sup>**130** Pilot schemes relating to loss of housing benefit **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F909** Ss. 130B-130G cease to have effect (31.12.2010) by virtue of [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), s. **31(3)**

*[<sup>F910</sup>Council tax benefit]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F910** S. 131 cross-heading substituted (6.3.1992) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 119(2), [Sch. 9 para. 4](#) (with s. 118(1)(2)(4))

**131** <sup>F911</sup> Council tax benefit. **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F911** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), [Sch. 4](#) (with arts. 9, 10, [Sch. 5](#))

<sup>F864</sup>**132** Couples. **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F864** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), [Sch. 4](#) (with arts. 9, 10, [Sch. 5](#))

<sup>F864</sup>**133** Polygamous marriages. **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F864** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), [Sch. 4](#) (with arts. 9, 10, [Sch. 5](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## General

### [<sup>F864</sup>134 Exclusions from benefit. **E+W+S**

- (1) No person shall be entitled to an income-related benefit if his capital or a prescribed part of it exceeds the prescribed amount.
- (2) Except in prescribed circumstances the entitlement of one member of a family to any one income-related benefit excludes entitlement to that benefit for any other member for the same period.
- <sup>F912</sup>(3) .....
- (4) Where the amount of any income-related benefit would be less than a prescribed amount, it shall not be payable except in prescribed circumstances.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F864** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), [Sch. 4](#) (with arts. 9, 10, [Sch. 5](#))
- F912** S. 134(3) repealed (6.3.1992) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 119(2), [Sch. 9 para. 7](#), [Sch. 14](#) (with s. 118(1)(2)(4))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C64** S. 134(1)(2): certain functions transferred (5.10.1999) by [Tax Credits Act 1999 \(c. 10\)](#), s. 20(2), [Sch. 2 para. 1\(e\)](#)

### [<sup>F864</sup>135 The applicable amount. **E+W+S**

- (1) The applicable amount, in relation to any income-related benefit, shall be such amount or the aggregate of such amounts as may be prescribed in relation to that benefit.
- (2) The power to prescribe applicable amounts conferred by subsection (1) above includes power to prescribe nil as an applicable amount.
- <sup>F913</sup>(3) .....
- <sup>F913</sup>(4) .....
- (5) <sup>F914</sup>... the applicable amount for a severely disabled person shall include an amount in respect of his being a severely disabled person.
- (6) Regulations may specify circumstances in which persons are to be treated as being or as not being severely disabled.

#### Textual Amendments

- F864** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), [Sch. 4](#) (with arts. 9, 10, [Sch. 5](#))
- F913** S. 135(3)(4) repealed (15.4.2002) by [Health and Social Care Act 2001 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 70(2), [Sch. 6 Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2002/1312, art. 3(e)
- F914** Words in s. 135(5) repealed (8.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, [Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2003/962, art. 2(4)(e), [Sch. 2](#) (with art. 3)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C65** S. 135(1) power to make regulations modified (21.5.1998) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 77, 87(2)(a)**
- C66** S. 135(1)(2) certain functions transferred (5.10.1999) by [Tax Credits Act 1999 \(c. 10\)](#), s. 20(2), **Sch. 2 para. 1(f)**
- C67** S. 135(1) power to make regulations modified (8.11.2001) by [Health and Social Care Act 2001 \(c. 15\)](#), **ss. 52(1)(a), 70(2)** (with s. 64); [S.I. 2001/3752](#), **art. 3**

#### [<sup>F864</sup> **136 Income and capital.** **E+W+S**

- (1) Where a person claiming an income-related benefit is a member of a family, the income and capital of any member of that family shall, except in prescribed circumstances, be treated as the income and capital of that person.
- (2) Regulations may provide that capital not exceeding the amount prescribed under section 134(1) above but exceeding a prescribed lower amount shall be treated, to a prescribed extent, as if it were income of a prescribed amount.
- (3) Income and capital shall be calculated or estimated in such manner as may be prescribed.
- (4) A person's income in respect of a week shall be calculated in accordance with prescribed rules; and the rules may provide for the calculation to be made by reference to an average over a period (which need not include the week concerned).
- (5) Circumstances may be prescribed in which—
  - (a) a person is treated as possessing capital or income which he does not possess;
  - (b) capital or income which a person does possess is to be disregarded;
  - (c) income is to be treated as capital;
  - (d) capital is to be treated as income.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F864** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), **Sch. 14 Pt. 1**; [S.I. 2013/358](#), art. 8(c), **Sch. 4** (with arts. 9, 10, **Sch. 5**)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C68** S. 136: certain functions transferred (5.10.1999) by [Tax Credits Act 1999 \(c. 10\)](#), s. 20(2), **Sch. 2 para. 1(g)**

#### [<sup>F864</sup> [<sup>F915</sup> **Effect of attaining qualifying age for state pension credit** **E+W+S**

- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) below apply in relation to housing benefit and council tax benefit in the case of any person who has attained the qualifying age for state pension credit.
- (2) Regulations may make provision for section 134(1) or any provision of section 136 above not to have effect in relation to those benefits in the case of any such person.
- (3) In relation to those benefits, regulations may make provision for the determination of the income and capital of any such person; and any such regulations may include provision applying (with such modifications as the Secretary of State thinks fit)—



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) section 5 of the State Pension Credit Act 2002 (provision for treating income of spouse as income of claimant, etc), and
  - (b) section 15 of that Act (determination of income and capital for purposes of state pension credit).
- (4) Regulations under subsection (3) above may also include provision—
- (a) authorising or requiring the use of any calculation or estimate of a person’s income or capital made by the Secretary of State for the purposes of the State Pension Credit Act 2002; or
  - (b) requiring that, if and so long as an assessed income period is in force under section 6 of that Act in respect of a person falling within subsection (1) above,
    - (i) the assessed amount of any element of his retirement provision shall be treated as the amount of that element for the purposes of housing benefit or council tax benefit; and
    - (ii) his income shall be taken for those purposes not to include any element of retirement provision which it is taken not to include for the purposes of state pension credit by virtue of a determination under subsection (5) of section 7 of that Act.
- (5) In subsection (4) above “assessed amount”, “element” and “retirement provision” have the same meaning as in the State Pension Credit Act 2002.
- (6) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for the preceding provisions of this section to apply with modifications in cases to which section 12 of the State Pension Credit Act 2002 (polygamous marriages) applies.
- (7) The provision that may be made by regulations under subsection (6) above includes any provision that may be made by regulations under section 133 above.]]

**Textual Amendments**

- F864** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), [Sch. 4](#) (with arts. 9, 10, [Sch. 5](#))
- F915** S. 136A inserted (27.1.2003 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [State Pension Credit Act 2002 \(c. 16\)](#), s. 22(3), [Sch. 2 para. 3](#); S.I. 2003/83, art. 2; S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)

**137 Interpretation of Part VII and supplementary provisions. E+W+S**

- (1) In this Part of this Act, unless the context otherwise requires—
- [<sup>F916</sup>“billing authority” has the same meaning as in Part I of the Local Government Finance Act 1992;]
  - “child” means a person under the age of 16;
  - [<sup>F917</sup>“couple” means—
    - (a) two people who are married to, or civil partners of, each other and are members of the same household; or
    - (b) two people who are not married to, or civil partners of, each other but are living together [<sup>F918</sup>as if they were a married couple or civil partners] otherwise than in prescribed circumstances;]
- <sup>F919</sup> .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F919

“dwelling” means any residential accommodation, whether or not consisting of the whole or part of a building and whether or not comprising separate and self-contained premises;

“family” means—

- (a) a [F920couple];
  - (b) a [F920couple] and a member of the same household for whom one of them is or both are responsible and who is a child or a person of a prescribed description;
  - (c) except in prescribed circumstances, a person who is not a member of a [F920couple] and a member of the same household for whom that person is responsible and who is a child or a person of a prescribed description;
- [F921“income-based jobseeker’s allowance” has the same meaning as in the Jobseekers Act 1995;]

“industrial injuries scheme” means a scheme made under Schedule 8 to this Act or section 159 of the 1975 Act or under the Old Cases Act;

F922

[F923“local authority” in relation to Scotland means a council constituted under section 2 of the Local Government etc. (Scotland) Act 1994;]

F924

F919

F919

[F925“pensionable age” has the meaning given by the rules in paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 to the Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26);]

“prescribed” means specified in or determined in accordance with regulations;

[F925“the qualifying age for state pension credit” is (in accordance with section 1(2)(b) and (6) of the State Pension Credit Act 2002)—

- (a) in the case of a woman, pensionable age; or
- (b) in the case of a man, the age which is pensionable age in the case of a woman born on the same day as the man;]

[F925“state pension credit” means state pension credit under the State Pension Credit Act 2002;]

F924

“war pension scheme” means a scheme under which war pensions (as defined in section 25 of the <sup>M16</sup>Social Security Act 1989) are provided;

“week”, in relation to [F926council tax benefit], means a period of 7 days beginning with a Monday.

F927(1A) .....

- (2) Regulations may make provision for the purposes of this Part of this Act—
  - (a) as to circumstances in which a person is to be treated as being or not being in Great Britain;
  - (b) continuing a person’s entitlement to benefit during periods of temporary absence from Great Britain;
  - (c) as to what is or is not to be treated as remunerative work or as employment;
  - [F928(d) as to circumstances in which a person is or is not to be treated as engaged or normally engaged in remunerative work;]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) as to what is or is not to be treated as relevant education;
- (f) as to circumstances in which a person is or is not to be treated as receiving relevant education;
- (g) specifying the descriptions of pension increases under war pension schemes or industrial injuries schemes that are analogous to the benefits mentioned in section 129(2)(b)(i) to (iii) above;
- (h) as to circumstances in which a person is or is not to be treated as occupying a dwelling as his home;
- (i) for treating any person who is liable to make payments in respect of a dwelling as if he were not so liable;
- (j) for treating any person who is not liable to make payments in respect of a dwelling as if he were so liable;
- (k) for treating as included in a dwelling any land used for the purposes of the dwelling;
- (l) as to circumstances in which persons are to be treated as being or not being members of the same household;
- (m) as to circumstances in which one person is to be treated as responsible or not responsible for another.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F864** Ss. 123-137 repealed (1.4.2013 in relation to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), [Sch. 4](#) (with arts. 9, 10, [Sch. 5](#))
- F916** Words in s. 137(1) substituted (6.3.1992) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 119(2), [Sch. 9 para. 9\(a\)](#) (with s. 118(1)(2)(4))
- F917** Words in s. 137(1) substituted (E.W.) (13.3.2014) by [The Marriage \(Same Sex Couples\) Act 2013 \(Consequential and Contrary Provisions and Scotland\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/560\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 22\(8\)\(a\)](#); and substituted (S.) (16.12.2014) by [The Marriage and Civil Partnership \(Scotland\) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(Consequential Provisions and Modifications\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3229\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 4 para. 2\(13\)\(a\)](#)
- F918** Words in s. 137(1) substituted (2.12.2019) by [The Civil Partnership \(Opposite-sex Couples\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1458\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 3 para. 14\(2\)\(d\)](#)
- F919** Words in s. 137(1) repealed (6.3.1992) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 119(2), [Sch. 9 para. 9\(b\)](#), [Sch. 14](#) (with s. 118(1)(2)(4))
- F920** Word in s. 137(1) substituted (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), [Sch. 24 para. 46\(2\)](#); S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)
- F921** Words in s. 137(1) inserted (7.10.1996) by [Jobseekers Act 1995 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 41(2), [Sch. 2 para. 35\(2\)](#); S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)
- F922** Words in s. 137(1) repealed (S.) (1.4.1996) by [Local Government etc. \(Scotland\) Act 1994 \(c. 39\)](#), s. 184(2), [Sch. 13 para. 174\(5\)](#), [Sch. 14](#); S.I. 1996/323, art. 4(1)(c)
- F923** Words in s. 137(1) inserted (3.7.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 70(1), [Sch. 5 para. 1\(4\)](#)
- F924** Words in s. 137(1) repealed (5.12.2005) by [Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(c. 33\)](#), s. 263(8)(d), [Sch. 24 para. 46\(3\)](#), [Sch. 30](#); S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1)(6), [Sch. 1](#)
- F925** Words in s. 137(1) inserted (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [State Pension Credit Act 2002 \(c. 16\)](#), s. 22(3), [Sch. 2 para. 4\(2\)](#); S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)
- F926** Words in s. 137(1) repealed (6.3.1992) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 119(2), [Sch. 9 para. 9\(d\)](#) (with s. 118(1)(2)(4))
- F927** S. 137(1A) omitted (E.W.) (13.3.2014) by virtue of [The Marriage \(Same Sex Couples\) Act 2013 \(Consequential and Contrary Provisions and Scotland\) Order 2014 \(S.I. 2014/560\)](#), art. 1(2), [Sch. 1 para. 22\(8\)\(b\)](#); and omitted (S.) (16.12.2014) by virtue of [The Marriage and Civil Partnership](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(Scotland) Act 2014 and Civil Partnership Act 2004 (Consequential Provisions and Modifications) Order 2014 (S.I. 2014/3229), art. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 2(13)(b)**

**F928** S. 137(2)(d) substituted (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 2 para. 35(3)**; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)

#### Marginal Citations

**M16** 1989 c. 24.

## PART VIII **E+W+S**

### THE SOCIAL FUND

#### 138 **Payments out of the social fund.** **E+W+S**

- [<sup>F929</sup>(1) There may be made out of the social fund, in accordance with this Part of this Act—
- (a) payments of prescribed amounts, whether in respect of prescribed items or otherwise, to meet, in prescribed circumstances, maternity expenses and funeral expenses; [<sup>F930</sup>and]
  - [<sup>F931</sup>(b) payments by way of community care grant, crisis loan or budgeting loan [<sup>F932</sup>to meet—
    - (i) other needs, and
    - (ii) in the case of payments by way of budgeting loan, those needs for which provision is made by paragraph (a),]
 in accordance with directions given or guidance issued by the Secretary of State.]]
- (2) Payments may also be made out of that fund, in accordance with this Part of this Act, of a prescribed amount or a number of prescribed amounts to prescribed descriptions of persons, in prescribed circumstances to meet expenses for heating which appear to the Secretary of State to have been or to be likely to be incurred in cold weather.
- [<sup>F933</sup>(3) The power to make a payment out of the social fund such as is mentioned in subsection (1)(b) above may be exercised by making a payment to a third party with a view to the third party providing, or arranging for the provision of, goods or services for the applicant.]
- (4) In this section “prescribed” means specified in or determined in accordance with regulations.
- [<sup>F934</sup>(4A) This section has effect in or as regards Scotland as if—
- (a) references in subsections (1)(a) and (2) to the making of payments out of the social fund were to the making of payments by the Scottish Ministers,
  - (b) the reference in subsection (2) to the Secretary of State were to the Scottish Ministers, and
  - (c) the reference in subsection (4) to regulations were to regulations made by the Scottish Ministers.
- (4B) Where regulations are made by the Scottish Ministers under this section—
- (a) sections 175(2) and (7) and 176 do not apply, and
  - (b) the regulations are subject to the negative procedure (see section 28 of the Interpretation and Legislative Reform (Scotland) Act 2010).

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(4C) The power to make an Order in Council under section 30(3) of the Scotland Act 1998 is exercisable for the purposes of this section as it is exercisable for the purposes of that Act.]

[<sup>F935</sup>[<sup>F936</sup>(5) In this Part—

“budgeting loan” means a loan awarded in circumstances specified in directions issued by the Secretary of State for the purpose of defraying an intermittent expense;

“community care grant” means a grant awarded in circumstances so specified for the purpose of meeting a need for community care;

“crisis loan” means a loan awarded in circumstances so specified for the purpose of meeting an immediate short term need;

and any reference in this subsection to meeting a need or defraying an expense includes a reference to helping to meet the need or to defray the expense.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F929** S. 138(1) substituted (5.4.1999) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 70(1)**, 87(2); S.I. 1999/1055, [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [art. 3](#))

**F930** Word in s. 138(1) repealed (1.4.2013) (with savings relating to budgeting loans and relating to community care grants and crisis loans applied for before 1.4.2013) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), **Sch. 14 Pt. 8**; S.I. 2012/3090, [art. 2\(1\)\(d\)](#) (with [art. 3](#))

**F931** S. 138(1)(b) repealed (1.4.2013) (with savings relating to budgeting loans and relating to community care grants and crisis loans applied for before 1.4.2013) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 70(1)**, 150(3); S.I. 2012/3090, [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [art. 3](#))

**F932** Words in s. 138(1)(b) substituted (8.5.2012) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), **ss. 71**, 150(2)(c)

**F933** S. 138(3) repealed (1.4.2013) (with savings relating to budgeting loans and relating to community care grants and crisis loans applied for before 1.4.2013) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), **Sch. 14 Pt. 8**; S.I. 2012/3090, [art. 2\(1\)\(d\)](#) (with [art. 3](#))

**F934** S. 138(4A)-(4C) inserted (17.5.2017 for specified purposes) by [Scotland Act 2016 \(c. 11\)](#), **ss. 23(5)**, 72(4)(b); S.I. 2017/455, [reg. 2\(b\)\(iii\)](#)

**F935** S. 138(5) inserted (5.4.1999) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 70(2)**, 87(2); S.I. 1999/1055, [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [art. 3](#))

**F936** S. 138(5) repealed (1.4.2013) (with savings relating to budgeting loans and relating to community care grants and crisis loans applied for before 1.4.2013) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), **Sch. 14 Pt. 8**; S.I. 2012/3090, [art. 2\(1\)\(d\)](#) (with [art. 3](#))

[<sup>F937</sup>**139 Awards by social fund officers.** **E+W+S**

[<sup>F938</sup>(1) Whether a payment mentioned in section 138(1)(b) above is to be awarded, and how much it is to be, shall be determined by an appropriate officer, that is to say, an officer of the Secretary of State who, acting under his authority, is exercising functions of the Secretary of State in relation to payments so mentioned.]

(2) [<sup>F939</sup>An appropriate officer] may determine that an award shall be payable in specified instalments at specified times.

<sup>F940</sup>(3) .....

(4) An award [<sup>F941</sup>of a crisis loan or a budgeting loan] shall be repayable upon such terms and conditions as before the award is paid the Secretary of State notifies to the person by or on behalf of whom the application for it was made.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Payment of an award shall be made to the applicant unless [<sup>F942</sup>the appropriate officer] determines otherwise.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F937** S. 139 repealed (1.4.2013) (with savings relating to budgeting loans and relating to community care grants and crisis loans applied for before 1.4.2013) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 8](#); [S.I. 2012/3090](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(d\)](#) (with [art. 3](#))
- F938** S. 139(1) substituted (29.11.1999 subject to specified exceptions) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 72\(1\)](#); [S.I. 1999/3178](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)\(2\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [Schs. 21-23](#))
- F939** Words in s. 139(2) substituted (29.11.1999 subject to specified exceptions) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 72\(2\)](#); [S.I. 1999/3178](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)\(2\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [Schs. 21-23](#))
- F940** S. 139(3) repealed (5.4.1999) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 72\(3\)](#), [Sch. 8](#); [S.I. 1999/1055](#), [art. 2\(b\)\(c\)](#) (with [art. 3](#))
- F941** Words in s. 139(4) substituted (5.4.1999) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 72\(4\)](#); [S.I. 1999/1055](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#) (with [art. 3](#))
- F942** Words in s. 139(5) substituted (29.11.1999 subject to specified exceptions) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 72\(5\)](#); [S.I. 1999/3178](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)\(2\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [Schs. 21-23](#))

#### [<sup>F943</sup>140 Principles of determination. **E+W+S**

- (1) In determining whether to make an award [<sup>F944</sup>of a community care grant or a crisis loan] to the applicant or the amount or value to be awarded [<sup>F945</sup>an appropriate officer] shall have regard, subject to subsection (2) below, to all the circumstances of the case and, in particular—
- (a) the nature, extent and urgency of the need;
  - (b) the existence of resources from which the need may be met;
  - (c) the possibility that some other person or body may wholly or partly meet it;
  - (d) where the payment is repayable, the likelihood of repayment and the time within which repayment is likely;
  - (e) any relevant allocation under section 168(1) to (4) of the Administration Act.
- [<sup>F946</sup>(1A) Subject to subsection (2) below, in determining whether to make an award of a budgeting loan to the applicant, or the amount or value to be awarded, an appropriate officer shall have regard to—
- (a) such of the applicant's personal circumstances as are of a description specified in directions issued by the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) the criteria specified in paragraphs [<sup>F947</sup>(b), (d) and (e)] of subsection (1) above;
- <sup>F948</sup>....]
- (2) [<sup>F949</sup>An appropriate officer] shall determine any question in accordance with any general directions issued by the Secretary of State and in determining any question shall take account of any general guidance issued by him.
- [<sup>F950</sup>(3) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (2), the Secretary of State may issue directions under that subsection for the purpose of securing that allocations under section 168 of the Administration Act are not exceeded.]



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(4) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (2) above, the power to issue general directions conferred on the Secretary of State by that subsection includes power to direct—

(a) that in circumstances specified in the direction [<sup>F951</sup>an appropriate officer] shall not determine an application and, without prejudice to the generality of this paragraph, that [<sup>F951</sup>an appropriate officer] shall not determine an application which is made before the end of a specified period after the making of an application by the same person for a payment such as is mentioned in section 138(1)(b) above to meet the same need and without there having been any relevant change of circumstances since the previous application;

[<sup>F952</sup>(aa) that in circumstances specified in the direction an application for an award of a community care grant may be treated as an application for an award of a crisis loan, and vice versa;]

(b) that for a category of need specified in the direction [<sup>F951</sup>an appropriate officer] shall not award less than an amount specified in the direction;

(c) that for a category of need specified in the direction [<sup>F951</sup>an appropriate officer] shall not award more than an amount so specified;

(d) that payments to meet a category of need specified in the direction shall in all cases or in no case be made by instalments;

[<sup>F953</sup>(da) that the amount or value of a budgeting loan is not to exceed a sum specified or determined as specified in the direction;]

<sup>F954</sup>(e) .....

(f) that a payment such as is mentioned in section 138(1)(b) above shall only be awarded to a person if either—

(i) he is in receipt of a benefit which is specified in the direction and the circumstances are such as are so specified; or

(ii) in a case where the conditions specified in sub-paragraph (i) above are not satisfied, the circumstances are such as are specified in the direction,

and the power to issue general guidance conferred on him by that subsection includes power to give [<sup>F955</sup>appropriate officers] guidance as to any matter to which directions under that subsection may relate.

[<sup>F956</sup>(4ZA) A direction under subsection (4)(da) may require the sum to be determined by applying, or by a method that includes applying, a multiplier specified in the direction in circumstances specified in the direction to the most recent relevant sum published by the Secretary of State.

(4ZB) A relevant sum is a sum determined from time to time by reference to so much of any relevant allocation under section 168(1) to (4) of the Administration Act as is available for making payments.]

(5) In determining a question [<sup>F957</sup>an appropriate officer] shall take account (subject to any directions or guidance issued by the Secretary of State under this section) of any guidance issued by [<sup>F958</sup>the appropriate officer nominated for his area under section 36 of the Social Security Act 1998].]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F943** S. 140 repealed (1.4.2013) (with savings relating to budgeting loans and relating to community care grants and crisis loans applied for before 1.4.2013) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 150(3), [Sch. 14 Pt. 8](#); S.I. 2012/3090, art. 2(1)(d) (with art. 3)
- F944** Words in s. 140(1) inserted (5.4.1999) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 71(1), 87(2); S.I. 1999/1055, art. 2(a) (with art. 3)
- F945** Words in s. 140(1) substituted (29.11.1999 subject to specified exceptions) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 73\(1\)](#); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)
- F946** S. 140(1A) inserted (5.4.1999) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 71(2), 87(2); S.I. 1999/1055, art. 2(a) (with art. 3)
- F947** Words in s. 140(1A)(b) substituted (3.7.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), ss. 54(a), 70(1)
- F948** Words in s. 140(1A) repealed (3.7.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), ss. 54(b), 70(1), [Sch. 8](#)
- F949** Words in s. 140(2) substituted (29.11.1999 subject to specified exceptions) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 73\(2\)](#); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)
- F950** S. 140(3) substituted (3.7.2007) by [Welfare Reform Act 2007 \(c. 5\)](#), s. 70(1), [Sch. 7 para. 2\(3\)](#)
- F951** Words in s. 140(4) substituted (29.11.1999 subject to specified exceptions) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 73\(4\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)
- F952** S. 140(4)(aa) inserted (5.4.1999) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 71(3), 87(2); S.I. 1999/1055, art. 2(a) (with art. 3)
- F953** S. 140(4)(da) inserted (8.5.2012) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), ss. 72(2), 150(2)(c)
- F954** S. 140(4)(e) repealed (5.4.1999) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 71(3), 87(2), [Sch. 8](#); S.I. 1999/1055, art. 2(a)(c) (with art. 3)
- F955** Words in s. 140(4) substituted (29.11.1999 subject to specified exceptions) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 73\(4\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)
- F956** S. 140(4ZA)(4ZB) inserted (8.5.2012) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\)](#), ss. 72(3), 150(2)(c)
- F957** Words in s. 140(5) substituted (29.11.1999 subject to specified exceptions) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 73\(5\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)
- F958** Words in s. 140(5) substituted (29.11.1999 subject to specified exceptions) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), [Sch. 7 para. 73\(5\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 1999/3178, art. 2(1)(a)(2), Sch. 1 (with Schs. 21-23)

## [<sup>F959</sup>PART 8A U.K.]

### HEALTH IN PREGNANCY GRANT

### Textual Amendments

- F959** Pt. 8A inserted (21.7.2008 for specified purposes, 1.1.2009 in so far as not already in force) by [Health and Social Care Act 2008 \(c. 14\)](#), ss. 131, 170; S.I. 2008/3137, art. 2

### 140A Entitlement U.K.

- (1) A woman who satisfies prescribed conditions in relation to a pregnancy of hers is entitled to payment of a lump sum (to be known as “health in pregnancy grant”).
- [<sup>F960</sup>(2) A woman is not entitled to health in pregnancy grant unless she has reached the 25th week of her pregnancy before 1st January 2011.]
- (3) A woman is not entitled to health in pregnancy grant unless—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) she has received advice on matters relating to maternal health from a health professional;
  - (b) she is in Great Britain at the time she makes a claim for the grant in accordance with the Administration Act.
- (4) Circumstances may be prescribed in which a woman is to be treated for the purposes of subsection (3)(b) as being, or as not being, in Great Britain.
- (5) In this section—  
“health professional” has such meaning as may be prescribed,  
“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations, and  
“woman” means a female of any age.
- (6) The power to make regulations under this section is exercisable by the Treasury.

#### Textual Amendments

**F960** S. 140A(2) substituted (16.12.2010) by [Savings Accounts and Health in Pregnancy Grant Act 2010](#) (c. 36), [ss. 3\(1\)](#), 4(3)

#### 140B Amount **U.K.**

- (1) Health in pregnancy grant is to be of an amount prescribed by regulations made by the Treasury.
- (2) Different amounts may be prescribed in relation to different cases.]

### PART IX **E+W+S**

#### CHILD BENEFIT

#### 141 Child benefit. **E+W+S**

A person who is responsible for one or more children [<sup>F961</sup>or qualifying young persons] in any week shall be entitled, subject to the provisions of this Part of this Act, to a benefit (to be known as “child benefit”) for that week in respect of the [<sup>F962</sup>child or qualifying young person, or each of the children or qualifying young persons,] for whom he is responsible.

#### Textual Amendments

**F961** Words in s. 141 inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005](#) (c. 6), [ss. 1\(1\)\(a\)](#), 6(2)

**F962** Words in s. 141 substituted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005](#) (c. 6), [ss. 1\(1\)\(b\)](#), 6(2)

#### [<sup>F963</sup>142 “Child” and “qualifying young person” **E+W+S**

- (1) For the purposes of this Part of this Act a person is a child if he has not attained the age of 16.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In this Part of this Act “qualifying young person” means a person, other than a child, who —
- (a) has not attained such age (greater than 16) as is prescribed by regulations made by the Treasury, and
  - (b) satisfies conditions so prescribed.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F963** S. 142 substituted (24.3.2005 for specified purposes, 10.4.2006 in so far as not already in force) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), ss. 1\(2\), 6](#)

### 143 **Meaning of “person responsible for [F964 child or qualifying young person]”. E**

+W+S

- (1) For the purposes of this Part of this Act a person shall be treated as responsible for a child [F965 or qualifying young person] in any week if—
- (a) he has the child [F965 or qualifying young person] living with him in that week; or
  - (b) he is contributing to the cost of providing for the child [F965 or qualifying young person] at a weekly rate which is not less than the weekly rate of child benefit payable in respect of the child [F965 or qualifying young person] for that week.
- (2) Where a person has had a child [F966 or qualifying young person] living with him at some time before a particular week he shall be treated for the purposes of this section as having the child [F966 or qualifying young person] living with him in that week notwithstanding their absence from one another unless, in the 16 weeks preceding that week, they were absent from one another for more than 56 days not counting any day which is to be disregarded under subsection (3) below.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4) below, a day of absence shall be disregarded for the purposes of subsection (2) above if it is due solely to the [F967 fact that the child or qualifying young person is]—
- (a) receiving [F968 education or training of a description prescribed by regulations made by the Treasury];
  - (b) undergoing medical or other treatment as an in-patient in a hospital or similar institution; or
  - (c) <sup>F969</sup> ... in such circumstances as may be prescribed, in residential accommodation pursuant to arrangements made under—
    - <sup>F970</sup>(i) .....
    - (ii) the <sup>M17</sup>Children Act 1989;
    - <sup>F971</sup>(iii) the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968;
    - (iv) the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978;
    - (v) the Education (Scotland) Act 1980;
    - (vi) the Mental Health (Scotland) Act 1984;]
    - <sup>F972</sup>(vii) the Children (Scotland) Act 1995; <sup>F973</sup> ...
    - (viii) the Children’s Hearings (Scotland) Act 2011]] <sup>F974</sup>or
    - (ix) Part 4 of the Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014].

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The number of days that may be disregarded by virtue of subsection (3)(b) or (c) above in the case of any child [F975 or qualifying young person] shall not exceed such number as may be prescribed unless the person claiming to be responsible for the child [F975 or qualifying young person] regularly incurs expenditure in respect [F976 of him].
- (5) Regulations may prescribe the circumstances in which a person is or is not to be treated—
- (a) as contributing to the cost of providing for a child [F977 or qualifying young person] as required by subsection (1)(b) above; or
  - (b) as regularly incurring expenditure in respect of a child [F977 or qualifying young person] as required by subsection (4) above;
- and such regulations may in particular make provision whereby a contribution made or expenditure incurred by two or more persons is to be treated as made or incurred by one of them or whereby a contribution made or expenditure incurred by one of two spouses [F978 or civil partners] residing together is to be treated as made or incurred by the other.

#### Textual Amendments

- F964** Words in s. 143 heading substituted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 9(7)**
- F965** Words in s. 143(1) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 9(2)**
- F966** Words in s. 143(2) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 9(3)**
- F967** Words in s. 143(3) substituted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 9(4)(a)**
- F968** Words in s. 143(3)(a) substituted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 9(4)(b)**
- F969** Word in s. 143(3)(c) repealed (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), Sch. 1 para. 9(4)(c), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1**
- F970** S. 143(3)(c)(i) omitted (E.W.) (6.4.2016) by virtue of The Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 (Consequential Amendments) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/413), regs. 2(1), **131(a)**
- F971** S. 143(3)(c)(iii)-(vii) substituted for s. 143(3)(c)(iii) and word (9.10.2000) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 72, 86(1)(c)(2)**; S.I. 2000/2666, art. 2(2)
- F972** S. 143(3)(c)(vii)(viii) substituted for s. 143(3)(c)(vii) (24.6.2013) by The Children's Hearings (Scotland) Act 2011 (Consequential and Transitional Provisions and Savings) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/1465), art. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 4(2)**
- F973** Word in s. 143(3)(c) omitted (E.W.) (6.4.2016) by virtue of The Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 (Consequential Amendments) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/413), regs. 2(1), **131(b)**
- F974** S. 143(3)(c)(ix) and word inserted (E.W.) (6.4.2016) by The Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 (Consequential Amendments) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/413), regs. 2(1), **131(c)**
- F975** Words in s. 143(4) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 9(5)(a)**
- F976** Words in s. 143(4) substituted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 9(5)(b)**
- F977** Words in s. 143(5) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 9(6)**
- F978** Words in s. 143(5) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 47**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

#### Marginal Citations

- M17** 1989 c. 41.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### 144 Exclusions and priority. **E+W+S**

- <sup>F979</sup>(1) .....
- (2) Schedule 9 to this Act shall have effect for excluding entitlement to child benefit <sup>F980</sup> ....
- (3) Where, apart from this subsection, two or more persons would be entitled to child benefit in respect of the same child [<sup>F981</sup>or qualifying young person] for the same week, one of them only shall be entitled; and the question which of them is entitled shall be determined in accordance with Schedule 10 to this Act.

##### Textual Amendments

**F979** S. 144(1) repealed (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 10\(2\), Sch. 2 Pt. 1](#)

**F980** Words in s. 144(2) repealed (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 10\(3\), Sch. 2 Pt. 1](#)

**F981** Words in s. 144(3) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 10\(4\)](#)

#### 145 Rate of child benefit. **E+W+S**

- (1) Child benefit shall be payable at such weekly rate as may be prescribed.
- (2) Different rates may be prescribed in relation to different cases, whether by reference to the age of the child [<sup>F982</sup>or qualifying young person] in respect of whom the benefit is payable or otherwise.
- (3) The power to prescribe different rates under subsection (2) above shall be exercised so as to bring different rates into force on such day as the Secretary of State may by order specify.
- (4) No rate prescribed in place of a rate previously in force shall be lower than the rate that it replaces.
- <sup>F983</sup>(5) .....
- (6) An order under subsection (3) above may be varied or revoked at any time before the date specified thereby.
- (7) An order under that subsection shall be laid before Parliament after being made.

##### Textual Amendments

**F982** Words in s. 145(2) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 11](#)

**F983** S. 145(5) repealed (1.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\), s. 61, Sch. 6; S.I. 2003/392, art. 2](#)

##### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C69** S. 145(4) excluded (21.5.1998) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\), ss. 72\(1\), 87\(2\)\(a\)](#)

#### <sup>F984</sup>145A Entitlement after death of child [<sup>F985</sup>or qualifying young person] **E+W+S**

- (1) If a child [<sup>F986</sup>or qualifying young person] dies and a person is entitled to child benefit in respect of him for the week in which his death occurs, that person shall be entitled



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

to child benefit in respect of the child [<sup>F987</sup>or qualifying young person] for a prescribed period following that week.

(2) If the person entitled to child benefit under subsection (1) dies before the end of that prescribed period and, at the time of his death, was—

- (a) a member of a married couple [<sup>F988</sup>or civil partnership] and living with the person to whom he was married [<sup>F988</sup>or who was his civil partner], or
- (b) a member of [<sup>F989</sup>a cohabiting couple],

that other member of the [<sup>F990</sup>couple or partnership] shall be entitled to child benefit for the period for which the dead person would have been entitled to child benefit under subsection (1) above but for his death.

(3) If a child dies before the end of the week in which he is born, subsections (1) and (2) apply in his case as if references to the person entitled to child benefit in respect of a child for the week in which his death occurs were to the person who would have been so entitled if the child had been alive at the beginning of that week (and if any conditions which were satisfied, and any facts which existed, at the time of his death were satisfied or existed then).

(4) Where a person is entitled to child benefit in respect of a child [<sup>F991</sup>or qualifying young person] under this section, section 77 applies with the omission of subsections (4) to (6).

(5) In this section—

[<sup>F992</sup>“civil partnership” means two people <sup>F993</sup>... who are civil partners of each other and are neither—

- (a) separated under a court order, nor
- (b) separated in circumstances in which the separation is likely to be permanent];

[<sup>F994</sup>“cohabiting couple” means two people who are not married to, or civil partners, of each other but are living together as if they were a married couple or civil partners;]

“married couple” means a man and a woman who are married to each other and are neither—

- (a) separated under a court order, nor
- (b) separated in circumstances in which the separation is likely to be permanent, and

<sup>F995</sup> .....

<sup>F996</sup>(6) ..... ]

#### Textual Amendments

**F984** S. 145A inserted (26.2.2003 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 for specified purposes, 7.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 55(1)(a)(2)**, 61; S.I. 2003/392, art. 2

**F985** Words in s. 145A heading inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 12(4)**

**F986** Words in s. 145A(1) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 12(2)(a)**

**F987** Words in s. 145A(1) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 12(2)(b)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F988** Words in s. 145A(2)(a) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 48(2)(a)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F989** Words in s. 145A(2)(b) substituted (2.12.2019) by The Civil Partnership (Opposite-sex Couples) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/1458), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 14(4)(a)**
- F990** Words in s. 145A(2) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 48(2)(c)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F991** Words in s. 145A(4) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 12(3)**
- F992** Words in s. 145A(5) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 48(3)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F993** Words in s. 145A(5) omitted (2.12.2019) by virtue of The Civil Partnership (Opposite-sex Couples) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/1458), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 14(4)(b)(i)**
- F994** Words in s. 145A(5) substituted (2.12.2019) by The Civil Partnership (Opposite-sex Couples) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/1458), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 14(4)(b)(ii)**
- F995** Words in s. 145A(5) omitted (2.12.2019) by virtue of The Civil Partnership (Opposite-sex Couples) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/1458), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 14(4)(b)(iii)**
- F996** S. 145A(6) omitted (2.12.2019) by virtue of The Civil Partnership (Opposite-sex Couples) Regulations 2019 (S.I. 2019/1458), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 3 para. 14(4)(c)**

#### <sup>F997</sup> 146 Presence in Great Britain **E+W+S**

- (1) No child benefit shall be payable in respect of a child [<sup>F998</sup>or qualifying young person] for a week unless he is in Great Britain in that week.
- (2) No person shall be entitled to child benefit for a week unless he is in Great Britain in that week.
- (3) Circumstances may be prescribed in which [<sup>F999</sup>any] person is to be treated for the purposes of [<sup>F1000</sup>subsection (1) or (2) above] as being, or as not being, in Great Britain.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F997** S. 146 substituted (26.2.2003 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 for specified purposes, 7.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by Tax Credits Act 2002 (c. 21), **ss. 56(1), 61**; S.I. 2003/392, art. 2 (with art. 3)
- F998** Words in s. 146(1) inserted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 13(2)**
- F999** Word in s. 146(3) substituted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 13(3)(a)**
- F1000** Words in s. 146(3) substituted (10.4.2006) by Child Benefit Act 2005 (c. 6), s. 6(2), **Sch. 1 para. 13(3)(b)**

#### <sup>F1001</sup> 146 Persons subject to immigration control **E+W+S**

#### Textual Amendments

- F1001** S. 146A repealed (3.4.2000) by Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (c. 33), s. 170(4), Sch. 14 para. 92, **Sch. 16**; S.I. 2000/464, art. 2, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 147 Interpretation of Part IX and supplementary provisions. **E+W+S**

- (1) In this Part of this Act—
- “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations;  
<sup>F1002</sup> .....
- “voluntary organisation” means a body, other than a public or local authority, the activities of which are carried on otherwise than for profit; and
- “week” means a period of 7 days beginning with a Monday.
- (2) Subject to any provision made by regulations, references in this Part of this Act to any condition being satisfied or any facts existing in a week shall be construed as references to the condition being satisfied or the facts existing at the beginning of that week.
- (3) References in this Part of this Act to a parent, father or mother of a child [<sup>F1003</sup>or qualifying young person] shall be construed as including references to a step-parent, step-father or step-mother.
- (4) Regulations may prescribe the circumstances in which persons are or are not to be treated for the purposes of this Part of this Act as residing together.
- (5) Regulations may make provision as to the circumstances in which [<sup>F1004</sup>a marriage during the subsistence of which a party to it is at any time married to more than one person is to be treated for the purposes of this Part of this Act as having, or not having, the same consequences as any other marriage.]
- (6) Nothing in this Part of this Act shall be construed as conferring a right to child benefit on any body corporate; but regulations may confer such a right on voluntary organisations and for that purpose may make such modifications as the Secretary of State thinks fit—
- (a) of any provision of this Part of this Act; or
- (b) of any provision of the Administration Act relating to child benefit.

### Textual Amendments

**F1002** Words in s. 147(1) repealed (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 14\(2\), Sch. 2 Pt. 1](#)

**F1003** Words in s. 147(3) inserted (10.4.2006) by [Child Benefit Act 2005 \(c. 6\), s. 6\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 14\(3\)](#)

**F1004** Words in s. 147(5) substituted (8.1.1996) by [Private International Law \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Act 1995 \(c. 42\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. para. 4\(3\)](#) (with s. 8(3))

## PART X **E+W+S**

### CHRISTMAS BONUS FOR PENSIONERS

## 148 Entitlement of pensioners to Christmas bonus. **E+W+S**

- (1) Any person who in any year—
- (a) is present or ordinarily resident in the United Kingdom [<sup>F1005</sup>, an EEA state or Switzerland] at any time during the relevant week; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) is entitled to a payment of a qualifying benefit in respect of a period which includes a day in that week or is to be treated as entitled to a payment of a qualifying benefit in respect of such a period,
- shall, subject to the following provisions of this Part of this Act and to section 1 of the Administration Act, be entitled to payment under this subsection in respect of that year.
- (2) Subject to the following provisions of this Part of this Act, any person who is a member of a couple and is entitled to a payment under subsection (1) above in respect of a year shall also be entitled to payment under this subsection in respect of that year if—
- (a) both members have attained pensionable age not later than the end of the relevant week; and
- (b) the other member satisfies the condition mentioned in subsection (1)(a) above; and
- (c) either—
- (i) he is entitled or treated as entitled, in respect of the other member, to an increase in the payment of the qualifying benefit; or
- (ii) the only qualifying benefit to which he is entitled is [<sup>F1006</sup>state pension credit].
- [<sup>F1007</sup>(2ZA) In a case where a person is entitled to a payment of armed forces independence payment, the reference in subsection (1) to section 1 of the Administration Act is to be read as a reference to article 43 of the Armed Forces and Reserve Forces (Compensation Scheme) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/517).]
- [<sup>F1008</sup>(2A) In a case falling within paragraph (c)(ii) of subsection (2) above, paragraph (a) of that subsection has effect with the substitution of “qualifying age for state pension credit” for “pensionable age”.]
- (3) A payment under subsection (1) or (2) above—
- (a) is to be made by the Secretary of State; and
- (b) is to be of £10 or such larger sum as the Secretary of State may by order specify.
- <sup>F1009</sup>(4) .....
- (5) Only one sum shall be payable in respect of any person.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1005** Words in s. 148(1)(a) substituted (3.12.2021) by [The Social Security \(Amendment\) Regulations 2021](#) (S.I. 2021/1152), regs. 1(2), 2

**F1006** Words in s. 148(2)(c)(ii) substituted (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [State Pension Credit Act 2002](#) (c. 16), s. 22(3), [Sch. 2 para. 5\(2\)](#); S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)

**F1007** S. 148(2ZA) inserted (8.4.2013) by [The Armed Forces and Reserve Forces \(Compensation Scheme\) \(Consequential Provisions: Primary Legislation\) Order 2013](#) (S.I. 2013/796), arts. 1, 3(3)

**F1008** S. 148(2A) inserted (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [State Pension Credit Act 2002](#) (c. 16), s. 22(3), [Sch. 2 para. 5\(3\)](#); S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)

**F1009** S. 148(4) repealed (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [State Pension Credit Act 2002](#) (c. 16), s. 22(3), [Sch. 2 para. 5\(4\)](#), [Sch. 3](#); S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C70** S. 148 modified (29.11.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 33(1), 87(2)**; [S.I. 1999/3178](#), **art. 2(1)(a)(2)**, **Sch. 1** (with Schs. 21-23)

### 149 Provisions supplementary to section 148. **E+W+S**

- (1) For the purposes of section 148 above the Channel Islands, the Isle of Man and Gibraltar shall be treated as though they were part of the United Kingdom.
- (2) A person shall be treated for the purposes of section 148(1)(b) above as entitled to a payment of a qualifying benefit if he would be so entitled—
  - (a) in the case of a qualifying benefit [<sup>F1010</sup>other than state pension credit], but for the fact that he or, if he is a member of a couple, the other member is entitled to receive some other payment out of public funds;
  - (b) in the case of [<sup>F1011</sup>state pension credit], but for the fact that his income or, if he is a member of a couple, the income of the other member was exceptionally of an amount which resulted in his having ceased to be entitled to [<sup>F1011</sup>state pension credit].
- (3) A person shall be treated for the purposes of section 148(2)(c)(i) above as entitled in respect of the other member of the couple to an increase in a payment of a qualifying benefit if he would be so entitled—
  - (a) but for the fact that he or the other member is entitled to receive some other payment out of public funds;
  - (b) but for the operation of any provision of <sup>F1012</sup>... paragraph 6(4) of Schedule 7 to this Act or any regulations made under paragraph 6(3) of that Schedule whereby entitlement to benefit is affected by the amount of a person's earnings in a given period.
- (4) For the purposes of section 148 above a person shall be taken not to be entitled to a payment of a war disablement pension unless not later than the end of the relevant week he has attained [<sup>F1013</sup>pensionable age].
- (5) A sum payable under section 148 above shall not be treated as benefit for the purposes of any enactment or instrument under which entitlement to the relevant qualifying benefit arises or is to be treated as arising.
- (6) A payment and the right to receive a payment—
  - (a) under section 148 above or any enactment corresponding to it in Northern Ireland; or
  - (b) under regulations relating to widows which are made by the Secretary of State under any enactment relating to police and which contain a statement that the regulations provide for payments corresponding to payments under that section,shall be disregarded for all purposes of income tax and for the purposes of any enactment or instrument under which regard is had to a person's means.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1010** Words in s. 149(2)(a) substituted (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [State Pension Credit Act 2002 \(c. 16\)](#), **s. 22(3)**, **Sch. 2 para. 6(2)(a)**; [S.I. 2003/1766](#), **art. 2(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1011** Words in s. 149(2)(b) substituted (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [State Pension Credit Act 2002 \(c. 16\)](#), s. 22(3), [Sch. 2 para. 6\(2\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)
- F1012** Words in s. 149(3)(b) repealed (6.4.2010 with savings until 6.4.2020) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), ss. 4(4), 27(4)(b), [Sch. 1 para. 17](#), [Sch. 7 Pt. 2](#) (with s. 4(5)-(8))
- F1013** Words in s. 149(4) substituted (6.12.2018) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 13(3), [Sch. 1 para. 43](#)

## 150 Interpretation of Part X. **E+W+S**

(1) In this Part of this Act “qualifying benefit” means—

- (a) a retirement pension;
- <sup>F1014</sup>(b) long-term incapacity benefit;]
- <sup>F1015</sup>(ba) a qualifying employment and support allowance;]
- <sup>F1016</sup>(bb) personal independence payment;]
- <sup>F1017</sup>(bc) armed forces independence payment;]
- <sup>F1018</sup>(bd) adult disability payment,]
- (c) a widowed mother’s allowance<sup>F1019</sup>, widowed parent’s allowance] or widow’s pension;
- <sup>F1020</sup>(d) .....
- (e) [<sup>F1021</sup>a carer’s allowance];
- (f) industrial death benefit;
- (g) an attendance allowance;
- (h) an unemployability supplement or allowance;
- (i) a war disablement pension;
- (j) a war widow’s pension;
- (k) [<sup>F1022</sup>state pension credit];
- <sup>F1023</sup>(l) a mobility supplement].

(2) In this Part of this Act—

<sup>F1024</sup>“adult disability payment” means disability assistance given in accordance with the Disability Assistance for Working Age People (Scotland) Regulations 2022,]

<sup>F1025</sup>“armed forces independence payment” means armed forces independence payment under the Armed Forces and Reserve Forces (Compensation Scheme) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/517);]

“attendance allowance” means—

- (a) an attendance allowance;
- (b) a disability living allowance;
- (c) an increase of disablement pension under section 104 or 105 above;
- (d) a payment under regulations made in exercise of the powers in section 159(3)(b) of the 1975 Act or paragraph 7(2) of Schedule 8 to this Act;
- (e) an increase of allowance under Article 8 of the <sup>M18</sup>Pneumoconiosis, Byssinosis and Miscellaneous Diseases Benefit Scheme 1983 (constant attendance allowance for certain persons to whom that Scheme applies) or under the corresponding provision of any Scheme which may replace that Scheme;



*Status:* Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.

**Changes to legislation:** Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (f) an allowance in respect of constant attendance on account of disablement for which a person is in receipt of war disablement pension, including an allowance in respect of exceptionally severe disablement;
- (g) [<sup>F1026</sup>a child disability payment given in accordance with regulations made under section 31 of the Social Security (Scotland) Act 2018 (asp 9);]

[<sup>F1027</sup>“mobility supplement” means a supplement awarded in respect of disablement which affects a person’s ability to walk and for which the person is in receipt of war disablement pension;]

[<sup>F1028</sup>“pensionable age” has the meaning given by the rules in paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 to the Pensions Act 1995];

[<sup>F1029</sup>“the qualifying age for state pension credit” is (in accordance with section 1(2)(b) and (6) of the State Pension Credit Act 2002)—

- (a) in the case of a woman, pensionable age; or
- (b) in the case of a man, the age which is pensionable age in the case of a woman born on the same day as the man;]

[<sup>F1030</sup>“qualifying employment and support allowance” means [<sup>F1031</sup>a contributory allowance] under Part 1 of the Welfare Reform Act 2007 the calculation of the amount of which includes an addition in respect of the support component or the work-related activity component;]

[<sup>F1032</sup>“retirement pension” means—

- (a) a state pension under Part 1 of the Pensions Act 2014,
- (b) a retirement pension under this Act, or
- (c) graduated retirement benefit;]

[<sup>F1029</sup>“state pension credit” means state pension credit under the State Pension Credit Act 2002;]

“unemployability supplement or allowance” means—

- (a) an unemployability supplement payable under Part I of Schedule 7 to this Act; or
- (b) any corresponding allowance payable—
  - (i) by virtue of paragraph 6(4)(a) of Schedule 8 to this Act;
  - (ii) by way of supplement to retired pay or pension exempt from income tax under [<sup>F1033</sup>section 641 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003];
- (iii) under the <sup>M19</sup>Personal Injuries (Emergency Provisions) Act 1939; <sup>F1034</sup> ...
- (iv) by way of supplement to retired pay or pension under the <sup>M20</sup>Polish Resettlement Act 1947; [<sup>F1035</sup>or
- (v) <sup>F1036</sup> .....

“war disablement pension” means—

- (a) any retired pay, pension or allowance granted in respect of disablement under powers conferred by or under the <sup>M21</sup>Air Force (Constitution) Act 1917, the <sup>M22</sup>Personal Injuries (Emergency Provisions) Act 1939, the Pensions (Navy, Army, Air Force and Mercantile Marine) Act 1939, the Polish Resettlement Act 1947, or Part VII or section 151 of the <sup>M23</sup>Reserve Forces Act 1980;
- (b) without prejudice to paragraph (a) of this definition, any retired pay or pension to which [<sup>F1037</sup>any of paragraphs (a) to (f) of section 641(1) of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003] applies;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“war widow’s pension” means any widow’s [<sup>F1038</sup>or surviving civil partner's] pension or allowance granted in respect of a death due to service or war injury and payable by virtue of any enactment mentioned in paragraph (a) of the preceding definition or a pension or allowance for a widow [<sup>F1039</sup>or surviving civil partner] granted under any scheme mentioned in [<sup>F1040</sup>section 641(1)(e) or (f) of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003];

and each of the following expressions, namely “attendance allowance”, “unemployability supplement or allowance”, “war disablement pension” and “war widow’s pension”, includes any payment which the Secretary of State accepts as being analogous to it.

[<sup>F1041</sup>(3) In this Part of this Act, “couple” has the meaning given by section 137(1) above.]

(4) In this Part of this Act “the relevant week”, in relation to any year, means the week beginning with the first Monday in December or such other week as may be specified in an order made by the Secretary of State.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1014S.** 150(1)(b) substituted (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 33**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F1015S.** 150(1)(ba) inserted (27.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), s. 70(2), **Sch. 3 para. 9(11)(a)**; S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(f)
- F1016S.** 150(1)(bb) inserted (8.4.2013 for specified purposes, 10.6.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform Act 2012 (c. 5), s. 150(3), **Sch. 9 para. 6**; S.I. 2013/358, art. 7(1)(2)(k), Sch. 3; S.I. 2013/1250, art. 2
- F1017S.** 150(1)(bc) inserted (8.4.2013) by The Armed Forces and Reserve Forces (Compensation Scheme) (Consequential Provisions: Primary Legislation) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/796), arts. 1, **3(4)(a)**
- F1018S.** 150(1)(bd) inserted (21.3.2022) by The Social Security (Scotland) Act 2018 (Disability Assistance and Information-Sharing) (Consequential Provision and Modifications) Order 2022 (S.I. 2022/332), arts. 1(2), **14(2)(a)**
- F1019** Words in s. 150(1)(c) inserted (24.4.2000 for specified purposes, 9.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 12**; S.I. 2000/1047, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. Pt. I
- F1020S.** 150(1)(d) repealed (with savings for those entitled to severe disablement allowance for days immediately before 6.4.2001) (3.11.2000 for specified purposes, 6.4.2001 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 13 Pt. IV**; S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(3)(g)(4)(5) (with art. 4)
- F1021** Words in s. 150(1)(e) substituted (1.9.2002 for specified purposes, 1.4.2003 in so far as not already in force) by The Regulatory Reform (Carers Allowance) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/1457), arts. 1(1)(b), 2(2), **Sch. para. 2(e)**
- F1022** Words in s. 150(1)(k) substituted (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by State Pension Credit Act 2002 (c. 16), s. 22(3), **Sch. 2 para. 7(2)**; S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)
- F1023S.** 150(1)(l) inserted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), **ss. 132(2), 180(2)(a)** (with Sch. 4)
- F1024** Words in s. 150(2) inserted (21.3.2022) by The Social Security (Scotland) Act 2018 (Disability Assistance and Information-Sharing) (Consequential Provision and Modifications) Order 2022 (S.I. 2022/332), arts. 1(2), **14(2)(b)**
- F1025** Words in s. 150(2) inserted (8.4.2013) by The Armed Forces and Reserve Forces (Compensation Scheme) (Consequential Provisions: Primary Legislation) Order 2013 (S.I. 2013/796), arts. 1, **3(4)(b)**
- F1026** Words in s. 150(2) inserted (17.11.2021) by The Social Security (Scotland) Act 2018 (Disability Assistance for Children and Young People) (Consequential Modifications) (No. 2) Order 2021 (S.I. 2021/1301), arts. 1(2), **3(2)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1027** Words in s. 150(2) inserted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), **ss. 132(3)(a)**, 180(2)(a) (with Sch. 4)
- F1028** Words in s. 150(2) substituted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), s. 180(2)(a), **Sch. 4 para. 13(b)**
- F1029** Words in s. 150(2) inserted (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by State Pension Credit Act 2002 (c. 16), s. 22(3), **Sch. 2 para. 7(3)**; S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)
- F1030** Words in s. 150(2) inserted (27.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), s. 70(2), **Sch. 3 para. 9(11)(b)**; S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(f)
- F1031** Words in s. 150(2) substituted (12.11.2009) by Welfare Reform Act 2009 (c. 24), **ss. 37(3)**, 61(1)
- F1032** Words in s. 150(2) substituted (6.4.2016) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(4), **Sch. 12 para. 86**
- F1033** Words in s. 150(2) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 180(2)(a)** (with Sch. 7)
- F1034** Word in s. 150(2) omitted (19.7.1995) by virtue of Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), **ss. 132(3)(c)**, 180(2)(a) (with Sch. 4)
- F1035** Words in s. 150(2) inserted (19.7.1995) by Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26), **ss. 132(3)(c)**, 180(2)(a) (with Sch. 4)
- F1036** Words in s. 150(2) repealed (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1), s. 723, Sch. 6 para. 180(2)(b), **Sch. 8 Pt. 1** (with Sch. 7)
- F1037** Words in s. 150(2) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 180(3)** (with Sch. 7)
- F1038** Words in s. 150(2) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 49(2)(a)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F1039** Words in s. 150(2) inserted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 49(2)(b)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F1040** Words in s. 150(2) substituted (6.4.2003 with effect in accordance with s. 723(1)(a)(b) of the amending Act) by Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1), s. 723, **Sch. 6 para. 180(4)** (with Sch. 7)
- F1041** S. 150(3) substituted (5.12.2005) by Civil Partnership Act 2004 (c. 33), s. 263(8)(d), **Sch. 24 para. 49(3)**; S.I. 2005/3175, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

#### Marginal Citations

- M18** S.I.1983/136.  
**M19** 1939 c. 82.  
**M20** 1947 c. 19.  
**M21** 1917 c. 51.  
**M22** 1939 c. 83.  
**M23** 1980 c. 9.

## PART XI **E+W+S**

### STATUTORY SICK PAY

#### *Employer's liability*

#### **151 Employer's liability. **E+W+S****

- (1) Where an employee has a day of incapacity for work in relation to his contract of service with an employer, that employer shall, if the conditions set out in sections 152 to 154 below are satisfied, be liable to make him, in accordance with the following

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

provisions of this Part of this Act, a payment (to be known as “statutory sick pay”) in respect of that day.

- (2) Any agreement shall be void to the extent that it purports—
  - (a) to exclude, limit or otherwise modify any provision of this Part of this Act, or
  - (b) to require an employee to contribute (whether directly or indirectly) towards any costs incurred by his employer under this Part of this Act.
- (3) For the avoidance of doubt, any agreement between an employer and an employee authorising any deductions from statutory sick pay which the employer is liable to pay to the employee in respect of any period shall not be void by virtue of subsection (2)
  - (a) above if the employer—
    - (a) is authorised by that or another agreement to make the same deductions from any contractual remuneration which he is liable to pay in respect of the same period, or
    - (b) would be so authorised if he were liable to pay contractual remuneration in respect of that period.
- (4) For the purposes of this Part of this Act [<sup>F1042</sup>a day of incapacity for work in relation to a contract of service means a day on which] the employee concerned is, or is deemed in accordance with regulations to be, incapable by reason of some specific disease or bodily or mental disablement of doing work which he can reasonably be expected to do under that contract.
- (5) In any case where an employee has more than one contract of service with the same employer the provisions of this Part of this Act shall, except in such cases as may be prescribed and subject to the following provisions of this Part of this Act, have effect as if the employer were a different employer in relation to each contract of service.
- (6) Circumstances may be prescribed in which, notwithstanding the provisions of subsections (1) to (5) above, the liability to make payments of statutory sick pay is to be a liability of the [<sup>F1043</sup>Commissioners of Inland Revenue].
- [<sup>F1044</sup>(7) Regulations under subsection (6) above must be made with the concurrence of the Commissioners of Inland Revenue.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1042** Words in s. 151(4) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 34**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4

**F1043** Words in s. 151(6) substituted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(2)(a), **Sch. 1 para. 9**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

**F1044** S. 151(7) inserted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(2)(a), **Sch. 1 para. 9**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

#### *The qualifying conditions*

### 152 Period of incapacity for work. **E+W+S**

- (1) The first condition is that the day in question forms part of a period of incapacity for work.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In this Part of this Act “period of incapacity for work” means any period of four or more consecutive days, each of which is a day of incapacity for work in relation to the contract of service in question.
- (3) Any two periods of incapacity for work which are separated by a period of not more than 8 weeks shall be treated as a single period of incapacity for work.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by regulations direct that a larger number of weeks specified in the regulations shall be substituted for the number of weeks for the time being specified in subsection (3) above.
- (5) No day of the week shall be disregarded in calculating any period of consecutive days for the purposes of this section.
- (6) A day may be a day of incapacity for work in relation to a contract of service, and so form part of a period of incapacity for work, notwithstanding that—
  - (a) it falls before the making of the contract or after the contract expires or is brought to an end; or
  - (b) it is not a day on which the employee concerned would be required by that contract to be available for work.

### **153 Period of entitlement. E+W+S**

- (1) The second condition is that the day in question falls within a period which is, as between the employee and his employer, a period of entitlement.
- (2) For the purposes of this Part of this Act a period of entitlement, as between an employee and his employer, is a period beginning with the commencement of a period of incapacity for work and ending with whichever of the following first occurs—
  - (a) the termination of that period of incapacity for work;
  - (b) the day on which the employee reaches, as against the employer concerned, his maximum entitlement to statutory sick pay (determined in accordance with section 155 below);
  - (c) the day on which the employee’s contract of service with the employer concerned expires or is brought to an end;
  - (d) in the case of an employee who is, or has been, pregnant, the day immediately preceding the beginning of the disqualifying period.
- (3) Schedule 11 to this Act has effect for the purpose of specifying circumstances in which a period of entitlement does not arise in relation to a particular period of incapacity for work.
- (4) A period of entitlement as between an employee and an employer of his may also be, or form part of, a period of entitlement as between him and another employer of his.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by regulations—
  - (a) specify circumstances in which, for the purpose of determining whether an employee’s maximum entitlement to statutory sick pay has been reached in a period of entitlement as between him and an employer of his, days falling within a previous period of entitlement as between the employee and any person who is or has in the past been an employer of his are to be counted; and
  - (b) direct that in prescribed circumstances an employer shall provide a person who is about to leave his employment, or who has been employed by him in

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the past, with a statement in the prescribed form containing such information as may be prescribed in relation to any entitlement of the employee to statutory sick pay.

- (6) Regulations may provide, in relation to prescribed cases, for a period of entitlement to end otherwise than in accordance with subsection (2) above.
- (7) In a case where the employee's contract of service first takes effect on a day which falls within a period of incapacity for work, the period of entitlement begins with that day.
- (8) In a case where the employee's contract of service first takes effect between two periods of incapacity for work which by virtue of section 152(3) above are treated as one, the period of entitlement begins with the first day of the second of those periods.
- (9) In any case where, otherwise than by virtue of section 6(1)(b) above, an employee's earnings under a contract of service in respect of the day on which the contract takes effect do not attract a liability to pay secondary Class 1 contributions, subsections (7) and (8) above shall have effect as if for any reference to the contract first taking effect there were substituted a reference to the first day in respect of which the employee's earnings attract such a liability.
- (10) Regulations shall make provision as to an employer's liability under this Part of this Act to pay statutory sick pay to an employee in any case where the employer's contract of service with that employee has been brought to an end by the employer solely, or mainly, for the purpose of avoiding liability for statutory sick pay.
- (11) Subsection (2)(d) above does not apply in relation to an employee who has been pregnant if her pregnancy terminated, before the beginning of the disqualifying period, otherwise than by confinement.
- (12) In this section—
  - “confinement” is to be construed in accordance with section 171(1) below;
  - “disqualifying period” means—
    - (a) in relation to a woman entitled to statutory maternity pay, the maternity pay period; and
    - (b) in relation to a woman entitled to maternity allowance, the maternity allowance period;
  - “maternity allowance period” has the meaning assigned to it by section 35(2) above, and
  - “maternity pay period” has the meaning assigned to it by section 165(1) below.

#### 154 **Qualifying days.** **E+W+S**

- (1) The third condition is that the day in question is a qualifying day.
- (2) The days which are for the purposes of this Part of this Act to be qualifying days as between an employee and an employer of his (that is to say, those days of the week on which he is required by his contract of service with that employer to be available for work or which are chosen to reflect the terms of that contract) shall be such day or days as may, subject to regulations, be agreed between the employee and his employer or, failing such agreement, determined in accordance with regulations.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In any case where qualifying days are determined by agreement between an employee and his employer there shall, in each week (beginning with Sunday), be at least one qualifying day.
- (4) A day which is a qualifying day as between an employee and an employer of his may also be a qualifying day as between him and another employer of his.

*Limitations on entitlement, etc.*

## 155 Limitations on entitlement. **E+W+S**

- (1) Statutory sick pay shall not be payable for the first three qualifying days in any period of entitlement.
- (2) An employee shall not be entitled, as against any one employer, to an aggregate amount of statutory sick pay in respect of any one period of entitlement which exceeds his maximum entitlement.
- (3) The maximum entitlement as against any one employer is reached on the day on which the amount to which the employee has become entitled by way of statutory sick pay during the period of entitlement in question first reaches or passes the entitlement limit.
- (4) The entitlement limit is an amount equal to 28 times [<sup>F1045</sup>the weekly rate applicable in accordance with] section 157 below.
- (5) Regulations may make provision for calculating the entitlement limit in any case where an employee's entitlement to statutory sick pay is calculated by reference to different weekly rates in the same period of entitlement.

### Textual Amendments

**F1045** Words in s. 155(4) substituted (6.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 8(4), 16(3)**; [S.I. 1994/2926](#), art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. 3**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C71** [S. 155\(1\)](#) disappplied (28.3.2020) by [The Statutory Sick Pay \(Coronavirus\) \(Suspension of Waiting Days and General Amendment\) Regulations 2020 \(S.I. 2020/374\)](#), **regs. 1, 2** (which affecting provision expires (25.3.2022) by virtue of [Cornovirus Act 2020 \(c. 7\)](#), **s. 89** (with savings in [S.I. 2022/381](#), **reg. 2**))
- C72** [S. 155\(3\)](#) excluded (11.4.2005) by [The Guardians Allowance Up-rating Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/719\)](#), **regs. 1(1), 2**

## 156 Notification of incapacity for work. **E+W+S**

- (1) Regulations shall prescribe the manner in which, and the time within which, notice of any day of incapacity for work is to be given by or on behalf of an employee to his employer.
- (2) An employer who would, apart from this section, be liable to pay an amount of statutory sick pay to an employee in respect of a qualifying day (the “day in question”) shall be entitled to withhold payment of that amount if—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the day in question is one in respect of which he has not been duly notified in accordance with regulations under subsection (1) above; or
  - (b) he has not been so notified in respect of any of the first three qualifying days in a period of entitlement (a “waiting day”) and the day in question is the first qualifying day in that period of entitlement in respect of which the employer is not entitled to withhold payment—
    - (i) by virtue of paragraph (a) above; or
    - (ii) in respect of an earlier waiting day by virtue of this paragraph.
- (3) Where an employer withholds any amount of statutory sick pay under this section—
- (a) the period of entitlement in question shall not be affected; and
  - (b) for the purposes of calculating his maximum entitlement in accordance with section 155 above the employee shall not be taken to have become entitled to the amount so withheld.

*Rates of payment, etc.*

#### 157 Rates of payment. **E+W+S**

- (1) Statutory sick pay shall be payable by an employer at the weekly rate of [<sup>F1046</sup>£109.40].
- (2) The Secretary of State may by order—
- [<sup>F1047</sup>(a) amend subsection (1) above so as to substitute different provision as to the weekly rate or rates of statutory sick pay; and]
  - (b) make such consequential amendments as appear to him to be required of any provision contained in this Part of this Act.
- (3) The amount of statutory sick pay payable by any one employer in respect of any day shall be the weekly rate applicable on that day divided by the number of days which are, in the week (beginning with Sunday) in which that day falls, qualifying days as between that employer and the employee concerned.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1046** Sum in s. 157(1) substituted (6.4.2023) by [The Social Security Benefits Up-rating Order 2023 \(S.I. 2023/316\)](#), arts. 1(3)(e), **9**

**F1047** S. 157(2)(a) substituted (6.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), ss. **8(3)**, 16(3); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. 3**

#### <sup>F1048</sup>158 Recovery by employers of amounts paid by way of statutory sick pay. **E+W+S**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1048** Ss. 158, 159 repealed (with savings) (6.4.1995) by [The Statutory Sick Pay Percentage Threshold Order 1995 \(S.I. 1995/512\)](#), arts. 1(1), **5(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F1048</sup> **159 Power to substitute provisions for s. 158(2).** **E+W+S**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1048**Ss. 158, 159 repealed (with savings) (6.4.1995) by [The Statutory Sick Pay Percentage Threshold Order 1995 \(S.I. 1995/512\)](#), arts. 1(1), **5(a)**

[<sup>F1049</sup> **159 Power to provide for recovery by employers of sums paid by way of statutory sick pay.** **E+W+S**

(1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for the recovery by employers, in accordance with the order, of the amount (if any) by which their payments of, or liability incurred for, statutory sick pay in any period exceeds the specified percentage of the amount of their liability for contributions payments in respect of the corresponding period.

(2) An order under subsection (1) above may include provision—

- (a) as to the periods by reference to which the calculation referred to above is to be made,
- (b) for amounts which would otherwise be recoverable but which do not exceed the specified minimum for recovery not to be recoverable,
- (c) for the rounding up or down of any fraction of a pound which would otherwise result from a calculation made in accordance with the order, and
- (d) for any deduction from contributions payments made in accordance with the order to be disregarded for such purposes as may be specified,

and may repeal sections 158 and 159 above and make any amendments of other enactments which are consequential on the repeal of those sections.

(3) In this section—

“contributions payments” means payments which a person is required by or under any enactment to make in discharge of any liability of his as an employer in respect of primary or secondary Class 1 contributions; and

“specified” means specified in or determined in accordance with an order under subsection (1).

(4) The Secretary of State may by regulations make such transitional and consequential provision, and such savings, as he considers necessary or expedient for or in connection with the coming into force of any order under subsection (1) above.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F1049**S. 159A inserted (10.2.1994) by [Statutory Sick Pay Act 1994 \(c. 2\)](#), ss. **3(1)**, **5(2)** (with s. 2(4))

<sup>F1050</sup> **159 Funding of employers' statutory sick pay liabilities in relation to coronavirus** **E+W+S**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1050**S. 159B inserted (temp.) (25.3.2020) by virtue of [Coronavirus Act 2020 \(c. 7\)](#), **ss. 39(1)**, 87(1) (which affecting provision expires (25.3.2022) by virtue of [Coronavirus Act 2020 \(c. 7\)](#), **s. 89** (with s. 90))

#### Miscellaneous

### 160 Relationship with benefits and other payments, etc. **E+W+S**

Schedule 12 to this Act has effect with respect to the relationship between statutory sick pay and certain benefits and payments.

### 161 Crown employment - Part XI. **E+W+S**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, the provisions of this Part of this Act apply in relation to persons employed by or under the Crown as they apply in relation to persons employed otherwise than by or under the Crown.
- (2) The provisions of this Part of this Act do not apply in relation to persons serving as members of Her Majesty's forces, in their capacity as such.
- (3) For the purposes of this section Her Majesty's forces shall be taken to consist of such establishments and organisations as may be prescribed [<sup>F1051</sup>by regulations made by the Secretary of State with the concurrence of the Treasury], being establishments and organisations in which persons serve under the control of the Defence Council.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1051** Words in s. 161(3) inserted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(2)(a), **Sch. 1 para. 10**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

### 162 Special classes of persons. **E+W+S**

- (1) The Secretary of State may [<sup>F1052</sup>with the concurrence of the Treasury] make regulations modifying this Part of this Act in such manner as he thinks proper in their application to any person who is, has been or is to be—
  - (a) employed on board any ship, vessel, hovercraft or aircraft;
  - (b) outside Great Britain at any prescribed time or in any prescribed circumstances; or
  - (c) in prescribed employment in connection with continental shelf operations, as defined in section 120(2) above.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) above may in particular provide—
  - (a) for any provision of this Part of this Act to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would not otherwise apply;
  - (b) for any such provision not to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would otherwise apply;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) for excepting any such person from the application of any such provision where he neither is domiciled nor has a place of residence in any part of Great Britain;
- (d) for the taking of evidence, for the purposes of the determination of any question arising under any such provision, in a country or territory outside Great Britain, by a British consular official or such other person as may be determined in accordance with the regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1052** Words in s. 162(1) inserted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(2\)\(a\), Sch. 1 para. 11](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

### 163 Interpretation of Part XI and supplementary provisions. **E+W+S**

(1) In this Part of this Act—

“contract of service” (except in paragraph (a) of the definition below of “employee”) includes any arrangement providing for the terms of appointment of an employee;

“employee” means a person who is—

- (a) gainfully employed in Great Britain either under a contract of service or in an office (including elective office) with <sup>F1053</sup>earnings (within the meaning of Parts 1 to 5 above); <sup>F1054</sup> ...
- (b) <sup>F1054</sup> .....

but subject to regulations, which may provide for cases where any such person is not to be treated as an employee for the purposes of this Part of this Act and for cases where any person who would not otherwise be an employee for those purposes is to be treated as an employee for those purposes;

<sup>F1055</sup>“employer”, in relation to an employee and a contract of service of his, means a person who—

- (a) under section 6 above is liable to pay secondary Class 1 contributions in relation to any earnings of the employee under the contract, or
- (b) would be liable to pay such contributions but for—
  - (i) the condition in section 6(1)(b), or
  - (ii) the employee being under the age of 16;

“period of entitlement” has the meaning given by section 153 above;

“period of incapacity for work” has the meaning given by section 152 above;

<sup>F1056</sup> .....

“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations;

“qualifying day” has the meaning given by section 154 above;

“week” means any period of 7 days.

(2) For the purposes of this Part of this Act an employee’s normal weekly earnings shall, subject to subsection (4) below, be taken to be the average weekly earnings which in the relevant period have been paid to him or paid for his benefit under his contract of service with the employer in question.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2) above, the expressions “earnings” and “relevant period” shall have the meaning given to them by regulations.
- (4) In such cases as may be prescribed an employee’s normal weekly earnings shall be calculated in accordance with regulations.
- (5) Without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part of this Act, regulations may specify cases in which, for the purposes of this Part of this Act or such of its provisions as may be prescribed—
- (a) two or more employers are to be treated as one;
  - (b) two or more contracts of service in respect of which the same person is an employee are to be treated as one.
- (6) Where, in consequence of the establishment of one or more National Health Service trusts under [<sup>F1057</sup>the National Health Service Act 2006, the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006] or the <sup>M24</sup>National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978, a person’s contract of employment is treated by a scheme under [<sup>F1058</sup>any of those Acts] as divided so as to constitute two or more contracts, [<sup>F1059</sup>or where an order under [<sup>F1060</sup>paragraph 26(1) of Schedule 3 to the National Health Service Act 2006] provides that a person’s contract of employment is so divided,] regulations may make provision enabling him to elect for all of those contracts to be treated as one contract for the purposes of this Part of this Act or of such provisions of this Part of this Act as may be prescribed; and any such regulations may prescribe—
- (a) the conditions that must be satisfied if a person is to be entitled to make such an election;
  - (b) the manner in which, and the time within which, such an election is to be made;
  - (c) the persons to whom, and the manner in which, notice of such an election is to be given;
  - (d) the information which a person who makes such an election is to provide, and the persons to whom, and the time within which, he is to provide it;
  - (e) the time for which such an election is to have effect;
  - (f) which one of the person’s employers under the two or more contracts is to be regarded for the purposes of statutory sick pay as his employer under the one contract;
- and the powers conferred by this subsection are without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part of this Act.
- (7) Regulations may provide for periods of work which begin on one day and finish on the following day to be treated, for the purposes of this Part of this Act, as falling solely within one or other of those days.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1053** Words in s. 163(1) substituted (13.5.2014) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 (c. 7), s. 15(4), **Sch. 2 para. 3**

**F1054** Words in s. 163(1) omitted (1.10.2006) by virtue of The Employment Equality (Age) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/1031), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 8 para. 9(2)**

**F1055** Words in s. 163(1) substituted (1.10.2006) by The Employment Equality (Age) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/1031), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 8 para. 9(3)**

**F1056** Words in s. 163(1) repealed (7.10.1996) by Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18), s. 41(2), **Sch. 3; S.I. 1996/2208, art. 2(b)**



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1057** Words in s. 163(6) substituted (1.3.2007) by National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 147(a)** (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)

**F1058** Words in s. 163(6) substituted (1.3.2007) by National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 147(b)** (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)

**F1059** Words in s. 163 inserted (8.2.2000) by The Health Act 1999 (Supplementary, Consequential etc. Provisions) Order 2000 (S.I. 2000/90), art. 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 27(2)**

**F1060** Words in s. 163(6) substituted (1.3.2007) by National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 147(c)** (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)

#### Marginal Citations

**M24** 1978 c.29.

## PART XII **E+W+S**

### STATUTORY MATERNITY PAY

#### 164 Statutory maternity pay - entitlement and liability to pay. **E+W+S**

(1) Where a woman who is or has been an employee satisfies the conditions set out in this section, she shall be entitled, in accordance with the following provisions of this Part of this Act, to payments to be known as “statutory maternity pay”.

(2) The conditions mentioned in subsection (1) above are—

- (a) that she has been in employed earner’s employment with an employer for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks ending with the week immediately preceding the 14th week before the expected week of confinement but has ceased to work for him <sup>F1061</sup> ... ;
- (b) that her normal weekly earnings for the period of 8 weeks ending with the week immediately preceding the 14th week before the expected week of confinement are not less than the lower earnings limit in force under section 5(1)(a) above immediately before the commencement of the 14th week before the expected week of confinement; and
- (c) that she has become pregnant and has reached, or been confined before reaching, the commencement of the 11th week before the expected week of confinement.

(3) The liability to make payments of statutory maternity pay to a woman is a liability of any person of whom she has been an employee as mentioned in subsection (2)(a) above.

[<sup>F1062</sup>(4) A woman shall be entitled to payments of statutory maternity pay only if—

- (a) she gives the person who will be liable to pay it notice of the date from which she expects his liability to pay her statutory maternity pay to begin; and
- (b) the notice is given at least 28 days before that date or, if that is not reasonably practicable, as soon as is reasonably practicable.]

(5) The notice shall be in writing if the person who is liable to pay the woman statutory maternity pay so requests.

(6) Any agreement shall be void to the extent that it purports—

- (a) to exclude, limit or otherwise modify any provision of this Part of this Act; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) to require an employee or former employee to contribute (whether directly or indirectly) towards any costs incurred by her employer or former employer under this Part of this Act.
- (7) For the avoidance of doubt, any agreement between an employer and an employee authorising any deductions from statutory maternity pay which the employer is liable to pay to the employee in respect of any period shall not be void by virtue of subsection (6)(a) above if the employer—
- (a) is authorised by that or another agreement to make the same deductions from any contractual remuneration which he is liable to pay in respect of the same period, or
- (b) would be so authorised if he were liable to pay contractual remuneration in respect of that period.
- (8) Regulations shall make provision as to a former employer's liability to pay statutory maternity pay to a woman in any case where the former employer's contract of service with her has been brought to an end by the former employer solely, or mainly, for the purpose of avoiding liability for statutory maternity pay.
- (9) The Secretary of State may by regulations—
- (a) specify circumstances in which, notwithstanding subsections (1) to (8) above, there is to be no liability to pay statutory maternity pay in respect of a week;
- (b) specify circumstances in which, notwithstanding subsections (1) to (8) above, the liability to make payments of statutory maternity pay is to be a liability [<sup>F1063</sup>of the Commissioners of Inland Revenue];
- (c) specify in what circumstances employment is to be treated as continuous for the purposes of this Part of this Act;
- (d) provide that a woman is to be treated as being employed for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks where—
- (i) she has been employed by the same employer for at least 26 weeks under two or more separate contracts of service; and
- (ii) those contracts were not continuous;
- (e) provide that any of the provisions specified in subsection (10) below shall have effect subject to prescribed modifications [<sup>F1064</sup>in such cases as may be prescribed];
- [<sup>F1065</sup>(ea) provide that subsection (4) above shall not have effect, or shall have effect subject to prescribed modifications, in such cases as may be prescribed;]
- (f) provide for amounts earned by a woman under separate contracts of service with the same employer to be aggregated for the purposes of this Part of this Act; and
- (g) provide that—
- (i) the amount of a woman's earnings for any period, or
- (ii) the amount of her earnings to be treated as comprised in any payment made to her or for her benefit,
- shall be calculated or estimated in such manner and on such basis as may be prescribed and that for that purpose payments of a particular class or description made or falling to be made to or by a woman shall, to such extent as may be prescribed, be disregarded or, as the case may be, be deducted from the amount of her earnings.
- (10) The provisions mentioned in subsection (9)(e) above are—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) subsection (2)(a) and (b) above; and
- (b) <sup>F1066</sup>section 166(1) and (2)], <sup>F1067</sup> ... below.

<sup>F1068</sup>(11) Any regulations under subsection (9) above which are made by virtue of paragraph (b) of that subsection must be made with the concurrence of the Commissioners of Inland Revenue.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1061** Words in s. 164(2)(a) repealed (24.11.2002) by [Employment Act 2002 \(c. 22\)](#), ss. 20(a), 55(2), [Sch. 8\(1\)](#); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(1)(4)(5), Sch. 1 Pt. 1, Sch. 2 Pt. 1
- F1062** S. 164(4) substituted (24.11.2002) by [Employment Act 2002 \(c. 22\)](#), [ss. 20\(b\)](#), 55(2); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. 1
- F1063** Words in s. 164(9)(b) substituted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(2)(a), [Sch. 1 para. 12\(2\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F1064** Words in s. 164(9)(e) substituted (24.11.2002) by [Employment Act 2002 \(c. 22\)](#), [ss. 20\(c\)](#), 55(2); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. 1
- F1065** S. 164(9)(ea) inserted (24.11.2002) by [Employment Act 2002 \(c. 22\)](#), [ss. 20\(d\)](#), 55(2); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. 1
- F1066** Words in s. 164(10)(b) substituted (6.4.2003) by [Employment Act 2002 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 55(2), [Sch. 7 para. 6](#); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 3
- F1067** Words in s. 164(10)(b) omitted (with effect in accordance with reg. 1(2) of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Maternity Allowance and Statutory Maternity Pay Regulations 1994 \(S.I. 1994/1230\)](#), [reg. 6\(1\)](#)
- F1068** S. 164(11) inserted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(2)(a), [Sch. 1 para. 12\(3\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C73** S. 164(2)(a) modified (17.11.2000) by [The Statutory Maternity Pay \(General\) \(Modification and Amendment\) Regulations 2000 \(S.I. 2000/2883\)](#), regs. 1(1), 2 (with reg. 4)

### 165 The maternity pay period. **E+W+S**

- (1) Statutory maternity pay shall be payable, subject to the provisions of this Part of this Act, in respect of each week during a prescribed period (“the maternity pay period”) of a duration not exceeding <sup>F1069</sup>52 weeks].
- <sup>F1070</sup>(2) Subject to subsections (3) and (7), the maternity pay period shall begin with the 11th week before the expected week of confinement.
- (3) Cases may be prescribed in which the first day of the period is to be a prescribed day after the beginning of the 11th week before the expected week of confinement, but not later than the day immediately following the day on which she is confined.]
- <sup>F1071</sup>(3A) Regulations may provide for the duration of the maternity pay period as it applies to a woman to be reduced, subject to prescribed restrictions and conditions.
- (3B) Regulations under subsection (3A) are to secure that the reduced period ends at a time—
  - (a) after a prescribed period beginning with the day on which the woman is confined, and
  - (b) when at least a prescribed part of the maternity pay period remains unexpired.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3C) Regulations under subsection (3A) may, in particular, prescribe restrictions and conditions relating to—
- (a) the end of the woman's entitlement to maternity leave;
  - (b) the doing of work by the woman;
  - (c) the taking of prescribed steps by the woman or another person as regards leave under section 75E of the Employment Rights Act 1996 in respect of the child;
  - (d) the taking of prescribed steps by the woman or another person as regards statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child.
- (3D) Regulations may provide for a reduction in the duration of the maternity pay period as it applies to a woman to be revoked, or to be treated as revoked, subject to prescribed restrictions and conditions.]
- (4) [<sup>F1072</sup>Except in such cases as may be prescribed,] statutory maternity pay shall not be payable to a woman by a person in respect of any week during any part of which she works under a contract of service with him.
- (5) It is immaterial for the purposes of subsection (4) above whether the work referred to in that subsection is work under a contract of service which existed immediately before the maternity pay period or a contract of service which did not so exist.
- (6) Except in such cases as may be prescribed, statutory maternity pay shall not be payable to a woman in respect of any week after she has been confined and during any part of which she works for any employer who is not liable to pay her statutory maternity pay.
- (7) Regulations may provide that this section shall have effect subject to prescribed modifications in relation—
- (a) to cases in which a woman has been confined before the 11th week before the expected week of confinement; and
  - (b) to cases in which—
    - (i) a woman is confined [<sup>F1073</sup>at any time after the end of the week immediately preceding the 11th week] before the expected week of confinement; and
    - (ii) the maternity pay period has not then commenced for her.
- [<sup>F1074</sup>(8) In subsections (1), (4) and (6) “week” means a period of seven days beginning with the day of the week on which the maternity pay period begins.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1069** Words in s. 165(1) substituted (27.6.2006 for specified purposes, 1.10.2006 in so far as not already in force) by [Work and Families Act 2006 \(c. 18\), ss. 1, 19\(2\)](#); S.I. 2006/1682, arts. 2(a), 3(a)

**F1070** S. 165(2)(3) substituted (27.6.2006 for specified purposes, 1.10.2006 in so far as not already in force) by [Work and Families Act 2006 \(c. 18\), s. 19\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 7\(2\)](#); S.I. 2006/1682, arts. 2(d), 3(d)

**F1071** S. 165(3A)-(3D) inserted (30.6.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\), ss. 120\(4\), 139\(6\)](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(d)

**F1072** Words in s. 165(4) inserted (27.6.2006 for specified purposes, 1.10.2006 in so far as not already in force) by [Work and Families Act 2006 \(c. 18\), s. 19\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 7\(3\)](#); S.I. 2006/1682, arts. 2(d), 3(d)

**F1073** Words in s. 165(7)(b)(i) substituted (with effect in accordance with reg. 1(2) of the amending S.I.) by [The Maternity Allowance and Statutory Maternity Pay Regulations 1994 \(S.I. 1994/1230\), reg. 3\(3\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1074S.** 165(8) inserted (27.6.2006 for specified purposes, 1.10.2006 in so far as not already in force) by [Work and Families Act 2006 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 19(2), [Sch. 1 para. 7\(4\)](#); S.I. 2006/1682, arts. 2(d), 3(d)

**[<sup>F1075</sup>166Rate of statutory maternity pay E+W+S**

- (1) Statutory maternity pay shall be payable to a woman—
- (a) at the earnings-related rate, in respect of the first 6 weeks in respect of which it is payable; and
  - (b) at whichever is the lower of the earnings-related rate and such weekly rate as may be prescribed, in respect of the remaining portion of the maternity pay period.

**[<sup>F1076</sup>(1A)** In subsection (1) “week” means any period of seven days.]

- (2) The earnings-related rate is a weekly rate equivalent to 90 per cent of a woman’s normal weekly earnings for the period of 8 weeks immediately preceding the 14th week before the expected week of confinement.
- (3) The weekly rate prescribed under subsection (1)(b) above must not be less than the weekly rate of statutory sick pay for the time being specified in section 157(1) above or, if two or more such rates are for the time being so specified, the higher or highest of those rates.

**[<sup>F1077</sup>(4)** Where for any purpose of this Part of this Act or of regulations it is necessary to calculate the daily rate of statutory maternity pay, the amount payable by way of statutory maternity pay for any day shall be taken as one seventh of the weekly rate.]]

**Textual Amendments**

**F1075S.** 166 substituted (6.4.2003) by [Employment Act 2002 \(c. 22\)](#), [ss. 19, 55\(2\)](#); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(3), [Sch. 1 Pt. 3](#)

**F1076S.** 166(1A) inserted (1.10.2006) by [Work and Families Act 2006 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 19(2), [Sch. 1 para. 8\(2\)](#); S.I. 2006/1682, art. 3(e)

**F1077S.** 166(4) inserted (1.10.2006) by [Work and Families Act 2006 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 19(2), [Sch. 1 para. 8\(3\)](#); S.I. 2006/1682, art. 3(e)

**[<sup>F1078</sup>167Funding of employers’ liabilities in respect of statutory maternity pay E+W+S**

- (1) Regulations shall make provision for the payment by employers of statutory maternity pay to be funded by the Commissioners of Inland Revenue to such extent as may be prescribed.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) shall—
- (a) make provision for a person who has made a payment of statutory maternity pay to be entitled, except in prescribed circumstances, to recover an amount equal to the sum of—
    - (i) the aggregate of such of those payments as qualify for small employers’ relief; and
    - (ii) an amount equal to 92 per cent of the aggregate of such of those payments as do not so qualify; and
  - (b) include provision for a person who has made a payment of statutory maternity pay qualifying for small employers’ relief to be entitled, except in prescribed

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- circumstances, to recover an additional amount, determined in such manner as may be prescribed—
- (i) by reference to secondary Class 1 contributions paid in respect of statutory maternity pay;
  - (ii) by reference to secondary Class 1 contributions paid in respect of statutory sick pay; or
  - (iii) by reference to the aggregate of secondary Class 1 contributions paid in respect of statutory maternity pay and secondary Class 1 contributions paid in respect of statutory sick pay.
- (3) For the purposes of this section a payment of statutory maternity pay which a person is liable to make to a woman qualifies for small employers’ relief if, in relation to that woman’s maternity pay period, the person liable to make the payment is a small employer.
- (4) For the purposes of this section “small employer”, in relation to a woman’s maternity pay period, shall have the meaning assigned to it by regulations, and, without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, any such regulations—
- (a) may define that expression by reference to the amount of a person’s contributions payments for any prescribed period; and
  - (b) if they do so, may in that connection make provision for the amount of those payments for that prescribed period—
    - (i) to be determined without regard to any deductions that may be made from them under this section or under any other enactment or instrument; and
    - (ii) in prescribed circumstances, to be adjusted, estimated or otherwise attributed to him by reference to their amount in any other prescribed period.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (1) may, in particular, make provision—
- (a) for funding in advance as well as in arrear;
  - (b) for funding, or the recovery of amounts due under provision made by virtue of subsection (2)(b), by means of deductions from such amounts for which employers are accountable to the Commissioners of Inland Revenue as may be prescribed, or otherwise;
  - (c) for the recovery by the Commissioners of Inland Revenue of any sums overpaid to employers under the regulations.
- (6) Where in accordance with any provision of regulations under subsection (1) an amount has been deducted from an employer’s contributions payments, the amount so deducted shall (except in such cases as may be prescribed) be treated for the purposes of any provision made by or under any enactment in relation to primary or secondary Class 1 contributions—
- (a) as having been paid (on such date as may be determined in accordance with the regulations), and
  - (b) as having been received by the Commissioners of Inland Revenue, towards discharging the employer’s liability in respect of such contributions.
- (7) Regulations under this section must be made with the concurrence of the Commissioners of Inland Revenue.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) In this section “contributions payments”, in relation to an employer, means any payments which the employer is required, by or under any enactment, to make in discharge of any liability in respect of primary or secondary Class 1 contributions.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1078S.** 167 substituted (6.4.2003) by [Employment Act 2002 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 21(1), 55(2)**; S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 3

#### 168 Relationship with benefits and other payments etc. **E+W+S**

Schedule 13 to this Act has effect with respect to the relationship between statutory maternity pay and certain benefits and payments.

#### 169 Crown employment - Part XII. **E+W+S**

The provisions of this Part of this Act apply in relation to women employed by or under the Crown as they apply in relation to women employed otherwise than by or under the Crown.

#### 170 Special classes of persons. **E+W+S**

- (1) The Secretary of State may [<sup>F1079</sup>with the concurrence of the Treasury] make regulations modifying this Part of this Act in such manner as he thinks proper in their application to any person who is, has been or is to be—
- (a) employed on board any ship, vessel, hovercraft or aircraft;
  - (b) outside Great Britain at any prescribed time or in any prescribed circumstances; or
  - (c) in prescribed employment in connection with continental shelf operations, as defined in section 120(2) above.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) above may in particular provide—
- (a) for any provision of this Part of this Act to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would not otherwise apply;
  - (b) for any such provision not to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would otherwise apply;
  - (c) for excepting any such person from the application of any such provision where he neither is domiciled nor has a place of residence in any part of Great Britain;
  - (d) for the taking of evidence, for the purposes of the determination of any question arising under any such provision, in a country or territory outside Great Britain, by a British consular official or such other person as may be determined in accordance with the regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1079** Words in s. 170(1) inserted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\)](#), s. 28(2)(a), **Sch. 1 para. 14**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 171 Interpretation of Part XII and supplementary provisions. **E+W+S**

(1) In this Part of this Act—

“confinement” means—

- (a) labour resulting in the issue of a living child, or
- (b) labour after [<sup>F1080</sup>24 weeks] of pregnancy resulting in the issue of a child whether alive or dead,

and “confined” shall be construed accordingly; and where a woman’s labour begun on one day results in the issue of a child on another day she shall be taken to be confined on the day of the issue of the child or, if labour results in the issue of twins or a greater number of children, she shall be taken to be confined on the day of the issue of the last of them;

“dismissed” is to be construed in accordance with [<sup>F1081</sup>Part X of the Employment Rights Act 1996];

“employee” means a woman who is—

- (a) gainfully employed in Great Britain either under a contract of service or in an office (including elective office) with [<sup>F1082</sup>earnings (within the meaning of Parts 1 to 5 above)]; <sup>F1083</sup> ...
- (b) <sup>F1083</sup> .....

but subject to regulations [<sup>F1084</sup>made with the concurrence of [<sup>F1085</sup>Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs]] which may provide for cases where any such woman is not to be treated as an employee for the purposes of this Part of this Act and for cases where a woman who would not otherwise be an employee for those purposes is to be treated as an employee for those purposes;

[<sup>F1086</sup>“employer”, in relation to a woman who is an employee, means a person who—

- (a) under section 6 above is liable to pay secondary Class 1 contributions in relation to any of her earnings; or
- (b) would be liable to pay such contributions but for—
  - (i) the condition in section 6(1)(b), or
  - (ii) the employee being under the age of 16;]

“maternity pay period” has the meaning assigned to it by section 165(1) above;

“modifications” includes additions, omissions and amendments, and related expressions shall be construed accordingly;

“prescribed” means specified in or determined in accordance with regulations;

<sup>F1087</sup> .....

[<sup>F1088</sup>(1A) In this Part, except section 165(1), (4) and (6), section 166(1) and paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 13, “week” means a period of 7 days beginning with Sunday or such other period as may be prescribed in relation to any particular case or class of case.]

(2) Without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part of this Act, regulations may specify cases in which, for the purposes of this Part of this Act or of such provisions of this Part of this Act as may be prescribed—

- (a) two or more employers are to be treated as one;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) two or more contracts of service in respect of which the same woman is an employee are to be treated as one.
- (3) Where, in consequence of the establishment of one or more National Health Service trusts under [<sup>F1089</sup>the National Health Service Act 2006, the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006] or the <sup>M25</sup>National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978, a woman's contract of employment is treated by a scheme under [<sup>F1090</sup>any of those Acts] as divided so as to constitute two or more contracts, [<sup>F1091</sup>or where an order under [<sup>F1092</sup>paragraph 26(1) of Schedule 3 to the National Health Service Act 2006] provides that a woman's contract of employment is so divided,] regulations may make provision enabling her to elect for all of those contracts to be treated as one contract for the purposes of this Part of this Act or of such provisions of this Part of this Act as may be prescribed; and any such regulations may prescribe—
- (a) the conditions that must be satisfied if a woman is to be entitled to make such an election;
  - (b) the manner in which, and the time within which, such an election is to be made;
  - (c) the persons to whom, and the manner in which, notice of such an election is to be given;
  - (d) the information which a woman who makes such an election is to provide, and the persons to whom, and the time within which, she is to provide it;
  - (e) the time for which such an election is to have effect;
  - (f) which one of the woman's employers under the two or more contracts is to be regarded for the purposes of statutory maternity pay as her employer under the one contract;
- and the powers conferred by this subsection are without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part of this Act.
- (4) For the purposes of this Part of this Act a woman's normal weekly earnings shall, subject to subsection (6) below, be taken to be the average weekly earnings which in the relevant period have been paid to her or paid for her benefit under the contract of service with the employer in question.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4) above "earnings" and "relevant period" shall have the meanings given to them by regulations.
- (6) In such cases as may be prescribed a woman's normal weekly earnings shall be calculated in accordance with regulations.
- [<sup>F1093</sup>(7) Regulations under any of subsections (2) to (6) above must be made with the concurrence of the Commissioners of Inland Revenue.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1080** Words in s. 171(1) substituted (1.10.1992) by [Still-Birth \(Definition\) Act 1992 \(c. 29\)](#), **ss. 2(1)(b)(2)** (a), 4(2)

**F1081** Words in s. 171(1) substituted (22.8.1996) by [Employment Rights Act 1996 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 243, **Sch. 1 para. 51(5)** (with s. 241, Sch. 2)

**F1082** Words in s. 171(1) substituted (13.5.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\)](#), s. 15(4), **Sch. 2 para. 4**

**F1083** Words in s. 171(1) omitted (1.10.2006 with effect in relation to any case where the expected week of confinement begins on or after 14.1.2007) by virtue of [The Employment Equality \(Age\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1031\)](#), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 8 para. 10(2)** (with Sch. 8 para. 10(4))

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1084** Words in s. 171(1) inserted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(2)(a), **Sch. 1 para. 15(2)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F1085** Words in s. 171 substituted (18.4.2005) by Commissioners for Revenue and Customs Act 2005 (c. 11), s. 53(1), **Sch. 4 para. 43**; S.I. 2005/1126, art. 2(2)(h)
- F1086** Words in s. 171(1) substituted (1.10.2006 with effect in relation to any case where the expected week of confinement begins on or after 14.1.2007) by virtue of The Employment Equality (Age) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/1031), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 8 para. 10(3)** (with Sch. 8 para. 10(4))
- F1087** Words in s. 171(1) repealed (27.6.2006 for specified purposes, 1.10.2006 in so far as not already in force) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), Sch. 1 para. 9(2), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 2006/1682, arts. 2(d), 3(d)(i)(i)
- F1088** S. 171(1A) inserted (27.6.2006 for specified purposes, 1.10.2006 in so far as not already in force) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 9(3)**; S.I. 2006/1682, arts. 2(d), 3(d)
- F1089** Words in s. 171(3) substituted (1.3.2007) by National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 148(a)** (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)
- F1090** Words in s. 171(3) substituted (1.3.2007) by National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 148(b)** (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)
- F1091** Words in s. 171 inserted (8.2.2000) by The Health Act 1999 (Supplementary, Consequential etc. Provisions) Order 2000 (S.I. 2000/90), art. 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 27(3)**
- F1092** Words in s. 171(3) substituted (1.3.2007) by National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 148(c)** (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)
- F1093** S. 171(7) inserted (25.2.1999 for specified purposes, 1.4.1999 in so far as not already in force) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(2)(a), **Sch. 1 para. 15(3)**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

#### Marginal Citations

**M25** 1978 c.29.

## [<sup>F1094</sup>PART 12ZA U.K.]

### <sup>F1095</sup>...[<sup>F1096</sup>STATUTORY PATERNITY PAY]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1094** Pt. 12ZA inserted (8.12.2002) by Employment Act 2002 (c. 22), **ss. 2**, 55(2); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. 2
- F1095** Words in Pt. 12ZA heading repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 10**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1096** Pt. 12ZA heading substituted (6.4.2010) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 10**; S.I. 2010/495, art. 4(d)

**F1097** ...

#### Textual Amendments

- F1097** S. 171ZA cross-heading repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 11**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 171ZA Entitlement: birth **U.K.**

- (1) Where a person satisfies the conditions in subsection (2) below, he shall be entitled in accordance with the following provisions of this Part to payments to be known as [<sup>F1098</sup>“statutory paternity pay”].
- (2) The conditions are—
  - (a) that he satisfies prescribed conditions—
    - (i) as to relationship with a newborn child, and
    - (ii) as to relationship with the child’s mother;
  - (b) that he has been in employed earner’s employment with an employer for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks ending with the relevant week;
  - (c) that his normal weekly earnings for the period of 8 weeks ending with the relevant week are not less than the lower earnings limit in force under section 5(1)(a) above at the end of the relevant week; and
  - (d) that he has been in employed earner’s employment with the employer by reference to whom the condition in paragraph (b) above is satisfied for a continuous period beginning with the end of the relevant week and ending with the day on which the child is born.
- (3) The references in subsection (2) above to the relevant week are to the week immediately preceding the 14th week before the expected week of the child’s birth.
- (4) A person’s entitlement to <sup>F1099</sup>...[<sup>F1100</sup>statutory paternity pay] under this section shall not be affected by the birth, or expected birth, of more than one child as a result of the same pregnancy.
- (5) In this section, “newborn child” includes a child stillborn after twenty-four weeks of pregnancy.

### Textual Amendments

**F1098** Words in s. 171ZA(1) substituted (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 12(2)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

**F1099** Word in s. 171ZA(4) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 12(3)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

**F1100** Words in s. 171ZA(4) substituted (6.4.2010) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 12**; S.I. 2010/495, art. 4(d)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C74** S. 171ZA(2)(b)-(d) modified (8.12.2002) by The Statutory Paternity Pay and Statutory Adoption Pay (General) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2822), regs. 1, 5

## 171ZB Entitlement: adoption **U.K.**

- (1) Where a person satisfies the conditions in subsection (2) below, he shall be entitled in accordance with the following provisions of this Part to payments to be known as [<sup>F1101</sup>“statutory paternity pay”].
- (2) The conditions are—
  - (a) that he satisfies prescribed conditions—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) as to relationship with a child who is placed for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom, and
    - (ii) as to relationship with a person with whom the child is so placed for adoption;
  - (b) that he has been in employed earner's employment with an employer for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks ending with the relevant week;
  - (c) that his normal weekly earnings for the period of 8 weeks ending with the relevant week are not less than the lower earnings limit in force under section 5(1)(a) at the end of the relevant week;
  - (d) that he has been in employed earner's employment with the employer by reference to whom the condition in paragraph (b) above is satisfied for a continuous period beginning with the end of the relevant week and ending with the day on which the child is placed for adoption; and
  - (e) where he is a person with whom the child is placed for adoption, that he has elected to receive statutory paternity pay.
- (3) The references in subsection (2) to the relevant week are to the week in which the adopter is notified of being matched with the child for the purposes of adoption.
- (4) A person may not elect to receive <sup>F1102</sup>... [<sup>F1103</sup>statutory paternity pay] if he has elected in accordance with section 171ZL below to receive statutory adoption pay.
- (5) Regulations may make provision about elections for the purposes of subsection (2) (e) above.
- (6) A person's entitlement to <sup>F1104</sup>... [<sup>F1105</sup>statutory paternity pay] under this section shall not be affected by the placement for adoption of more than one child as part of the same arrangement.
- (7) In this section, "adopter", in relation to a person who satisfies the condition under subsection (2)(a)(ii) above, means the person by reference to whom he satisfies that condition.
- [ This section has effect in a case involving a child placed under section 22C of the
- <sup>F1106</sup>(8) Children Act 1989 by a local authority in England with a local authority foster parent who has been approved as a prospective adopter with the following modifications—
- (a) the references in subsection (2) to a child being placed for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom are to be treated as references to a child being placed under section 22C in that manner;
  - (b) the reference in subsection (3) to the week in which the adopter is notified of being matched with the child for the purposes of adoption is to be treated as a reference to the week in which the prospective adopter is notified that the child is to be, or is expected to be, placed with the prospective adopter under section 22C;
  - (c) the reference in subsection (6) to placement for adoption is to be treated as a reference to placement under section 22C;
  - (d) the definition in subsection (7) is to be treated as if it were a definition of "prospective adopter".
- (9) Where, by virtue of subsection (8), a person becomes entitled to statutory paternity pay in connection with the placement of a child under section 22C of the Children Act 1989, the person may not become entitled to payments of statutory paternity pay in connection with the placement of the child for adoption.]



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [ This section has effect in a case involving a child placed under section 81 of the
- <sup>F1107</sup>(10) Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 by a local authority in Wales with a local authority foster parent who has been approved as a prospective adopter with the following modifications—
- (a) the references in subsection (2) to a child being placed for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom are to be treated as references to a child being placed under section 81 in that manner;
  - (b) the reference in subsection (3) to the week in which the adopter is notified of being matched with the child for the purposes of adoption is to be treated as a reference to the week in which the prospective adopter is notified that the child is to be, or is expected to be, placed with the prospective adopter under section 81;
  - (c) the reference in subsection (6) to placement for adoption is to be treated as a reference to placement under section 81;
  - (d) the definition in subsection (7) is to be treated as if it were a definition of “prospective adopter”.
- (11) Where, by virtue of subsection (10), a person becomes entitled to statutory paternity pay in connection with the placement of a child under section 81 of the Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014, the person may not become entitled to payments of statutory paternity pay in connection with the placement of the child for adoption.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1101** Words in s. 171ZB(1) substituted (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 13(2)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1102** Word in s. 171ZB(4) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 13(3)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1103** Words in s. 171ZB(4) substituted (6.4.2010) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 13**; S.I. 2010/495, art. 4(d)
- F1104** Word in s. 171ZB(6) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 13(4)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1105** Words in s. 171ZB(6) substituted (6.4.2010) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 13**; S.I. 2010/495, art. 4(d)
- F1106** S. 171ZB(8)(9) inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 121(3)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(e)
- F1107** S. 171ZB(10)(11) inserted (6.4.2016) by The Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 (Consequential Amendments) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/413), regs. 2(1), **132**

#### 171ZC Entitlement: general **U.K.**

- (1) A person shall be entitled to payments of <sup>F1108</sup>... [<sup>F1109</sup>statutory paternity pay] in respect of any period [<sup>F1110</sup>only if he gives the person who will be liable to pay it notice of the week or weeks in respect of which he expects there to be liability to pay him statutory paternity pay.]
- [ Regulations may provide for the time by which notice under subsection (1) is to be <sup>F1111</sup>(1A) given.]
- (2) The notice shall be in writing if the person who is liable to pay the <sup>F1112</sup>... [<sup>F1109</sup>statutory paternity pay] so requests.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The Secretary of State may by regulations—
- (a) provide that subsection (2)(b), (c) or (d) of section 171ZA or 171ZB above shall have effect subject to prescribed modifications in such cases as may be prescribed;
  - (b) provide that subsection (1) above shall not have effect, or shall have effect subject to prescribed modifications, in such cases as may be prescribed;
  - (c) impose requirements about evidence of entitlement;
  - (d) specify in what circumstances employment is to be treated as continuous for the purposes of section 171ZA or 171ZB above;
  - (e) provide that a person is to be treated for the purposes of section 171ZA or 171ZB above as being employed for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks where—
    - (i) he has been employed by the same employer for at least 26 weeks under two or more separate contracts of service; and
    - (ii) those contracts were not continuous;
  - (f) provide for amounts earned by a person under separate contracts of service with the same employer to be aggregated for the purposes of section 171ZA or 171ZB above;
  - (g) provide that—
    - (i) the amount of a person's earnings for any period, or
    - (ii) the amount of his earnings to be treated as comprised in any payment made to him or for his benefit,
 shall be calculated or estimated for the purposes of section 171ZA or 171ZB above in such manner and on such basis as may be prescribed and that for that purpose payments of a particular class or description made or falling to be made to or by a person shall, to such extent as may be prescribed, be disregarded or, as the case may be, be deducted from the amount of his earnings.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1108** Word in s. 171ZC(1) repealed (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 7 para. 14\(2\)](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

**F1109** Words in s. 171ZC substituted (6.4.2010) by [Work and Families Act 2006 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 19(2), [Sch. 1 para. 14](#); S.I. 2010/495, art. 4(d)

**F1110** Words in s. 171ZC(1) substituted (30.6.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), [ss. 123\(2\)\(a\)](#), 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(g) (with art. 9)

**F1111** S. 171ZC(1A) inserted (30.6.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), [ss. 123\(2\)\(b\)](#), 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(g) (with art. 9)

**F1112** Word in s. 171ZC(2) repealed (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 7 para. 14\(3\)](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

#### 171ZD Liability to make payments **U.K.**

- (1) The liability to make payments of <sup>F1113</sup>... statutory paternity pay under section 171ZA or 171ZB above is a liability of any person of whom the person entitled to the payments has been an employee as mentioned in subsection (2)(b) and (d) of that section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Regulations shall make provision as to a former employer's liability to pay <sup>F1114</sup>... [<sup>F1115</sup>statutory paternity pay] to a person in any case where the former employee's contract of service with him has been brought to an end by the former employer solely, or mainly, for the purpose of avoiding [<sup>F1116</sup>liability for <sup>F1114</sup>... statutory paternity pay]<sup>F1117</sup>....
- (3) The Secretary of State may, with the concurrence of the Board, by regulations specify circumstances in which, notwithstanding this section, liability to make payments of statutory paternity pay is to be a liability of the Board.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1113** Word in s. 171ZD(1) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 15(2)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1114** Words in s. 171ZD(2) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 15(3)(a)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1115** Words in s. 171ZD(2) substituted (6.4.2010) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 15(3)(a)**; S.I. 2010/495, art. 4(d)
- F1116** Words in s. 171ZD(2) substituted (6.4.2010) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 15(3)(b)**; S.I. 2010/495, art. 4(d)
- F1117** Words in s. 171ZD(2) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 15(3)(b)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

#### 171ZE Rate and period of pay **U.K.**

- (1) <sup>F1118</sup>... [<sup>F1119</sup>Statutory paternity pay] shall be payable at such fixed or earnings-related weekly rate as may be prescribed by regulations, which may prescribe different kinds of rate for different cases.
  - (2) <sup>F1120</sup>... [<sup>F1119</sup>Statutory paternity pay] shall be payable in respect of—
    - (a) a period of two consecutive weeks within the qualifying period beginning on such date within that period as the person entitled may choose in accordance with regulations, or
    - (b) if regulations permit the person entitled to choose to receive <sup>F1121</sup>... [<sup>F1119</sup>statutory paternity pay] in respect of—
      - (i) a period of a week, or
      - (ii) two non-consecutive periods of a week,such week or weeks within the qualifying period as he may choose in accordance with regulations.
  - (3) For the purposes of subsection (2) above, the qualifying period shall be determined in accordance with regulations, which shall secure that it is a period of at least 56 days beginning—
    - (a) in the case of a person to whom the conditions in section 171ZA(2) above apply, with the date of the child's birth, and
    - (b) in the case of a person to whom the conditions in section 171ZB(2) above apply, with the date of the child's placement for adoption.
- <sup>F1122</sup>(3A) [ Statutory paternity pay is not payable to a person in respect of a statutory pay week if—
- (a) statutory shared parental pay is payable to that person in respect of any part of that week or that person takes shared parental leave in any part of that week, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) statutory shared parental pay was payable to that person or that person has taken shared parental leave in respect of the child before that week.]
- (4) <sup>F1123</sup> ... [<sup>F1119</sup>Statutory paternity pay] shall not be payable to a person in respect of a statutory pay week if it is not his purpose at the beginning of the week—
- (a) to care for the child by reference to whom he satisfies the condition in subparagraph (i) of section 171ZA(2)(a) or 171ZB(2)(a) above, or
- (b) to support the person by reference to whom he satisfies the condition in subparagraph (ii) of that provision.
- (5) A person shall not be liable to pay <sup>F1124</sup> ... [<sup>F1119</sup>statutory paternity pay] to another in respect of a statutory pay week during any part of which the other works under a contract of service with him.
- (6) It is immaterial for the purposes of subsection (5) above whether the work referred to in that subsection is work under a contract of service which existed immediately before the statutory pay week or a contract of service which did not so exist.
- (7) Except in such cases as may be prescribed, <sup>F1125</sup> ... [<sup>F1119</sup>statutory paternity pay] shall not be payable to a person in respect of a statutory pay week during any part of which he works for any employer who is not liable to pay him <sup>F1125</sup> ... [<sup>F1119</sup>statutory paternity pay].
- (8) The Secretary of State may by regulations specify circumstances in which there is to be no liability to pay <sup>F1126</sup> ... [<sup>F1119</sup>statutory paternity pay] in respect of a statutory pay week.
- (9) Where more than one child is born as a result of the same pregnancy, the reference in subsection (3)(a) to the date of the child's birth shall be read as a reference to the date of birth of the first child born as a result of the pregnancy.
- (10) Where more than one child is placed for adoption as part of the same arrangement, the reference in subsection (3)(b) to the date of the child's placement shall be read as a reference to the date of placement of the first child to be placed as part of the arrangement.
- [ Where for any purpose of this Part of this Act or of regulations it is necessary to
- <sup>F1127</sup>(10A) calculate the daily rate of <sup>F1128</sup> ... statutory paternity pay, the amount payable by way of <sup>F1128</sup> ... statutory paternity pay for any day shall be taken as one seventh of the weekly rate.]
- (11) In this section—
- “statutory pay week”, in relation to a person entitled to <sup>F1129</sup> ... [<sup>F1119</sup>statutory paternity pay], means a week chosen by him as a week in respect of which <sup>F1129</sup> ... [<sup>F1119</sup>statutory paternity pay] shall be payable;
- “week” means any period of seven days.
- [ Where statutory paternity pay is payable to a person by virtue of section 171ZB(8),
- <sup>F1130</sup>(12) this section has effect as if—
- (a) the references in subsections (3)(b) and (10) to placement for adoption were references to placement under section 22C of the Children Act 1989;
- (b) the references in subsection (10) to being placed for adoption were references to being placed under section 22C.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[ Where statutory paternity pay is payable to a person by virtue of section 171ZB(10),  
F1131(13) this section has effect as if—

- (a) the references in subsections (3)(b) and (10) to placement for adoption were references to placement under section 81 of the Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014;
- (b) the references in subsection (10) to being placed for adoption were references to being placed under section 81.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1118 Word in s. 171ZE(1) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 16(2)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1119 Words in s. 171ZE substituted (6.4.2010) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 16(2)**; S.I. 2010/495, art. 4(d)
- F1120 Word in s. 171ZE(2) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 16(3)(a)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1121 Word in s. 171ZE(2)(b) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 16(3)(b)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1122 S. 171ZE(3A) inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 120(5)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(d)
- F1123 Word in s. 171ZE(4) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 16(4)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1124 Words in s. 171ZE(5) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 16(5)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1125 Words in s. 171ZE(7) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 16(6)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1126 Word in s. 171ZE(8) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 16(7)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1127 S. 171ZE(10A) inserted (1.10.2006) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 16(3)**; S.I. 2006/2232, art. 2(c)
- F1128 Words in s. 171ZE(10A) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 16(8)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1129 Words in s. 171ZE(11) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 16(9)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1130 S. 171ZE(12) inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 121(4)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(e)
- F1131 S. 171ZE(13) inserted (6.4.2016) by The Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 (Consequential Amendments) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/413), regs. 2(1), **133**

F1132 ...

#### Textual Amendments

- F1132 S. 171ZEA cross-heading repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 17**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

F1133 **171ZEA** Entitlement to additional statutory paternity pay: birth **U.K.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1133** Ss. 171ZEA-171ZEE repealed (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), **ss. 125(2)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 6(b) (with art. 14)

**F1133 171ZEB Entitlement to additional statutory paternity pay: adoption U.K.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1133** Ss. 171ZEA-171ZEE repealed (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), **ss. 125(2)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 6(b) (with art. 14)

**F1133 171ZEC Entitlement to additional statutory paternity pay: general U.K.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1133** Ss. 171ZEA-171ZEE repealed (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), **ss. 125(2)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 6(b) (with art. 14)

**F1133 171ZED Ability to make payments of additional statutory paternity pay U.K.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1133** Ss. 171ZEA-171ZEE repealed (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), **ss. 125(2)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 6(b) (with art. 14)

**F1133 171ZEE Rate and period of pay: additional statutory paternity pay U.K.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1133** Ss. 171ZEA-171ZEE repealed (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), **ss. 125(2)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 6(b) (with art. 14)



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F1134 ...

**Textual Amendments**

**F1134** S. 171ZF cross-heading repealed (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 7 para. 18](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

**171ZF Restrictions on contracting out** **U.K.**

- (1) Any agreement shall be void to the extent that it purports—
  - (a) to exclude, limit or otherwise modify any provision of this Part of this Act, or
  - (b) to require an employee or former employee to contribute (whether directly or indirectly) towards any costs incurred by his employer or former employer under this Part of this Act.
- (2) For the avoidance of doubt, any agreement between an employer and an employee authorising any deductions from [<sup>F1135</sup>statutory paternity pay] which the employer is liable to pay to the employee in respect of any period shall not be void by virtue of subsection (1)(a) above if the employer—
  - (a) is authorised by that or another agreement to make the same deductions from any contractual remuneration which he is liable to pay in respect of the same period, or
  - (b) would be so authorised if he were liable to pay contractual remuneration in respect of that period.

**Textual Amendments**

**F1135** Words in s. 171ZF(2) substituted (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 7 para. 19](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

**171ZG Relationship with contractual remuneration** **U.K.**

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) and (3) below, any entitlement to statutory paternity pay shall not affect any right of a person in relation to remuneration under any contract of service (“contractual remuneration”).
- (2) Subject to subsection (3) below—
  - (a) any contractual remuneration paid to a person by an employer of his in respect of any period shall go towards discharging any liability of that employer to pay statutory paternity pay to him in respect of that period; and
  - (b) any statutory paternity pay paid by an employer to a person who is an employee of his in respect of any period shall go towards discharging any liability of that employer to pay contractual remuneration to him in respect of that period.
- (3) Regulations may make provision as to payments which are, and those which are not, to be treated as contractual remuneration for the purposes of subsections (1) and (2) above.

<sup>F1136</sup>(4) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F1136**S. 171ZG(4) repealed (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 7 para. 20](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

## 171ZH Crown employment-Part 12ZA **U.K.**

The provisions of this Part of this Act apply in relation to persons employed by or under the Crown as they apply in relation to persons employed otherwise than by or under the Crown.

## 171ZI Special classes of person **U.K.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may with the concurrence of the Treasury make regulations modifying any provision of this Part of this Act in such manner as he thinks proper in its application to any person who is, has been or is to be—
  - (a) employed on board any ship, vessel, hovercraft or aircraft;
  - (b) outside Great Britain at any prescribed time or in any prescribed circumstances; or
  - (c) in prescribed employment in connection with continental shelf operations, as defined in section 120(2) above.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) above may, in particular, provide—
  - (a) for any provision of this Part of this Act to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would not otherwise apply;
  - (b) for any such provision not to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would otherwise apply;
  - (c) for excepting any such person from the application of any such provision where he neither is domiciled nor has a place of residence in any part of Great Britain;
  - (d) for the taking of evidence, for the purposes of the determination of any question arising under any such provision, in a country or territory outside Great Britain, by a British consular official or such other person as may be determined in accordance with the regulations.

## 171ZJ Part 12ZA: supplementary **U.K.**

- (1) In this Part of this Act—
 

“the Board” means the Commissioners of Inland Revenue;

[<sup>F1137</sup>“employer”, in relation to a person who is an employee, means a person who—

  - (a) under section 6 above is, liable to pay secondary Class 1 contributions in relation to any of the earnings of the person who is an employee; or
  - (b) would be liable to pay such contributions but for—
    - (i) the condition in section 6(1)(b), or
    - (ii) the employee being under the age of 16;]

[<sup>F1138</sup>“local authority” has the same meaning as in the Children Act 1989 (see section 105(1) of that Act);]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F1138</sup>“local authority foster parent” has the same meaning as in the Children Act 1989 (see [<sup>F1139</sup>section 105(1)] of that Act);]

“modifications” includes additions, omissions and amendments, and related expressions are to be read accordingly;

“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations.

- (2) In this Part of this Act, “employee” means a person who is—
- (a) gainfully employed in Great Britain either under a contract of service or in an office (including elective office) with [<sup>F1140</sup>earnings (within the meaning of Parts 1 to 5 above)]; <sup>F1141</sup> ...
  - <sup>F1141</sup>(b) .....
- (3) Regulations may provide—
- (a) for cases where a person who falls within the definition in subsection (2) above is not to be treated as an employee for the purposes of this Part of this Act, and
  - (b) for cases where a person who would not otherwise be an employee for the purposes of this Part of this Act is to be treated as an employee for those purposes.
- (4) Without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part of this Act, regulations may specify cases in which, for the purposes of this Part of this Act or of such provisions of this Part of this Act as may be prescribed—
- (a) two or more employers are to be treated as one;
  - (b) two or more contracts of service in respect of which the same person is an employee are to be treated as one.
- (5) In this Part, except [<sup>F1142</sup>section 171ZE], “week” means a period of 7 days beginning with Sunday or such other period as may be prescribed in relation to any particular case or class of cases.
- (6) For the purposes of this Part of this Act, a person’s normal weekly earnings shall, subject to subsection (8) below, be taken to be the average weekly earnings which in the relevant period have been paid to him or paid for his benefit under the contract of service with the employer in question.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (6) above, “earnings” and “relevant period” shall have the meanings given to them by regulations.
- (8) In such cases as may be prescribed, a person’s normal weekly earnings shall be calculated in accordance with regulations.
- (9) Where—
- (a) in consequence of the establishment of one or more National Health Service trusts under [<sup>F1143</sup>the National Health Service Act 2006, the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006] or the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 (c. 29), a person’s contract of employment is treated by a scheme under [<sup>F1144</sup>any of those Acts] as divided so as to constitute two or more contracts, or
  - (b) an order under [<sup>F1145</sup>paragraph 26(1) of Schedule 3 to the National Health Service Act 2006] provides that a person’s contract of employment is so divided,
- regulations may make provision enabling the person to elect for all of those contracts to be treated as one contract for the purposes of this Part of this Act or such provisions of this Part of this Act as may be prescribed.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (10) Regulations under subsection (9) above may prescribe—
- (a) the conditions that must be satisfied if a person is to be entitled to make such an election;
  - (b) the manner in which, and the time within which, such an election is to be made;
  - (c) the persons to whom, and the manner in which, notice of such an election is to be given;
  - (d) the information which a person who makes such an election is to provide, and the persons to whom, and the time within which, he is to provide it;
  - (e) the time for which such an election is to have effect;
  - (f) which one of the person's employers under two or more contracts is to be regarded for the purposes of [<sup>F1146</sup>statutory paternity pay] as his employer under the contract.
- (11) The powers under subsections (9) and (10) are without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part of this Act.
- (12) Regulations under any of subsections (4) to (10) above must be made with the concurrence of the Board.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1137** Words in s. 171ZJ(1) substituted (1.10.2006 with application in accordance with Sch. 8 para. 11(4) of the amending S.I.) by [The Employment Equality \(Age\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1031\)](#), reg. 1(1), [Sch. 8 para. 11\(2\)](#)
- F1138** Words in s. 171ZJ(1) inserted (30.6.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), [ss. 121\(7\)\(a\)](#), 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(e)
- F1139** Words in s. 171ZJ(1) substituted (E.W.) (6.4.2016) by [The Social Services and Well-being \(Wales\) Act 2014 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/413\)](#), regs. 2(1), [134](#)
- F1140** Words in s. 171ZJ(2)(a) substituted (13.5.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\)](#), s. 15(4), [Sch. 2 para. 5](#)
- F1141** S. 171ZJ(2)(b) and preceding word omitted (1.10.2006 with application in accordance with Sch. 8 para. 11(4) of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Employment Equality \(Age\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1031\)](#), reg. 1(1), [Sch. 8 para. 11\(3\)](#)
- F1142** Words in s. 171ZJ(5) substituted (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 7 para. 21\(2\)](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1143** Words in s. 171ZJ(9)(a) substituted (1.3.2007) by [National Health Service \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 2006 \(c. 43\)](#), s. 8(2), [Sch. 1 para. 149\(a\)\(i\)](#) (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)
- F1144** Words in s. 171ZJ(9)(a) substituted (1.3.2007) by [National Health Service \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 2006 \(c. 43\)](#), s. 8(2), [Sch. 1 para. 149\(a\)\(ii\)](#) (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)
- F1145** Words in s. 171ZJ(9)(b) substituted (1.3.2007) by [National Health Service \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 2006 \(c. 43\)](#), s. 8(2), [Sch. 1 para. 149\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)
- F1146** Words in s. 171ZJ(10)(f) substituted (5.4.2015) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 7 para. 21\(3\)](#); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)

#### 171ZK Power to apply Part 12ZA <sup>F1147</sup>... **U.K.**

[<sup>F1148</sup>(1)] The Secretary of State may by regulations provide for this Part to have effect in relation to cases which involve adoption, but not the placement of a child for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom, with such modifications as the regulations may prescribe.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[ The Secretary of State may by regulations provide for this Part to have effect in <sup>F1149</sup>(2) relation to cases which involve a person who has applied, or intends to apply, with another person for a parental order under section 54 of the Human Fertilisation and Embryology Act 2008 and a child who is, or will be, the subject of the order, with such modifications as the regulations may prescribe.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1147** Words in s. 171ZK title repealed (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), ss. 122(5)(a), 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(f)
- F1148** S. 171ZK(1) renumbered (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), ss. 122(5)(b), 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(f)
- F1149** S. 171ZK(2) inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), ss. 122(5)(c), 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(f)

## [<sup>F1150</sup>PART 12ZB U.K.]

### STATUTORY ADOPTION PAY

#### Textual Amendments

- F1150** Pt. 12ZB inserted (8.12.2002) by Employment Act 2002 (c. 22), ss. 4, 55(2); S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. 2

## 171ZL Entitlement U.K.

- (1) Where a person who is, or has been, an employee satisfies the conditions in subsection (2) below, he shall be entitled in accordance with the following provisions of this Part to payments to be known as “statutory adoption pay”.
- (2) The conditions are—
  - (a) that he is a person with whom a child is, or is expected to be, placed for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom;
  - (b) that he has been in employed earner’s employment with an employer for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks ending with the relevant week;
  - (c) that he has ceased to work for the employer;
  - (d) that his normal weekly earnings for the period of 8 weeks ending with the relevant week are not less than the lower earnings limit in force under section 5(1)(a) at the end of the relevant week; and
  - (e) that he has elected to receive statutory adoption pay.
- (3) The references in subsection (2)(b) and (d) above to the relevant week are to the week in which the person is notified that he has been matched with the child for the purposes of adoption.
- (4) A person may not elect to receive statutory adoption pay if—
  - (a) he has elected in accordance with section 171ZB above to receive statutory paternity pay, or
  - <sup>F1151</sup>(b) he falls within subsection (4A).]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [ A person falls within this subsection if—
- <sup>F1152</sup>(4A) (a) the child is, or is expected to be, placed for adoption with him as a member of a couple;
- (b) the other member of the couple is a person to whom the conditions in subsection (2) above apply; and
- (c) the other member of the couple has elected to receive statutory adoption pay.
- (4B) For the purposes of subsection (4A), a person is a member of a couple if—
- (a) in the case of an adoption or expected adoption under the law of England and Wales [<sup>F1153</sup>or Northern Ireland], he is a member of a couple within the meaning of section 144(4) of the Adoption and Children Act 2002;
- <sup>F1154</sup>(b) .....
- [ in the case of an adoption or expected adoption under the law of Scotland he
- <sup>F1155</sup>(c) is a member of a relevant couple within the meaning of section 29(3) of the Adoption and Children (Scotland) Act 2007].]
- (5) A person's entitlement to statutory adoption pay shall not be affected by the placement, or expected placement, for adoption of more than one child as part of the same arrangement.
- (6) A person shall be entitled to payments of statutory adoption pay only if—
- (a) he gives the person who will be liable to pay it notice of the date from which he expects the liability to pay him statutory adoption pay to begin; and
- (b) the notice is given at least 28 days before that date or, if that is not reasonably practicable, as soon as is reasonably practicable.
- (7) The notice shall be in writing if the person who is liable to pay the statutory adoption pay so requests.
- (8) The Secretary of State may by regulations—
- (a) provide that subsection (2)(b), (c) or (d) above shall have effect subject to prescribed modifications in such cases as may be prescribed;
- (b) provide that subsection (6) above shall not have effect, or shall have effect subject to prescribed modifications, in such cases as may be prescribed;
- (c) impose requirements about evidence of entitlement;
- (d) specify in what circumstances employment is to be treated as continuous for the purposes of this section;
- (e) provide that a person is to be treated for the purposes of this section as being employed for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks where—
- (i) he has been employed by the same employer for at least 26 weeks under two or more separate contracts of service; and
- (ii) those contracts were not continuous;
- (f) provide for amounts earned by a person under separate contracts of service with the same employer to be aggregated for the purposes of this section;
- (g) provide that—
- (i) the amount of a person's earnings for any period, or
- (ii) the amount of his earnings to be treated as comprised in any payment made to him or for his benefit,
- shall be calculated or estimated for the purposes of this section in such manner and on such basis as may be prescribed and that for that purpose payments of



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

a particular class or description made or falling to be made to or by a person shall, to such extent as may be prescribed, be disregarded or, as the case may be, be deducted from the amount of his earnings;

(h) make provision about elections for statutory adoption pay.

<sup>F1156</sup> [ This section has effect in a case involving a child who is, or is expected to be, placed (9) under section 22C of the Children Act 1989 by a local authority in England with a local authority foster parent who has been approved as a prospective adopter with the following modifications—

- (a) the references in subsections (2)(a) and (4A)(a) to a child being placed for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom are to be treated as references to a child being placed under section 22C in that manner;
- (b) the reference in subsection (3) to the week in which the person is notified that he has been matched with the child for the purposes of adoption is to be treated as a reference to the week in which the person is notified that the child is to be, or is expected to be, placed with him under section 22C;
- (c) the references in subsection (4B)(a) to adoption are to be treated as references to placement under section 22C;
- (d) the reference in subsection (5) to placement, or expected placement, for adoption is to be treated as a reference to placement, or expected placement, under section 22C.

(10) Where, by virtue of subsection (9), a person becomes entitled to statutory adoption pay in respect of a child who is, or is expected to be, placed under section 22C of the Children Act 1989, the person may not become entitled to payments of statutory adoption pay as a result of the child being, or being expected to be, placed for adoption.]

<sup>F1157</sup> [ This section has effect in a case involving a child who is, or is expected to be, placed (11) under section 81 of the Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 by a local authority in Wales with a local authority foster parent who has been approved as a prospective adopter with the following modifications—

- (a) the references in subsections (2)(a) and (4A)(a) to a child being placed for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom are to be treated as references to a child being placed under section 81 in that manner;
- (b) the reference in subsection (3) to the week in which the person is notified that he has been matched with the child for the purposes of adoption is to be treated as a reference to the week in which the person is notified that the child is to be, or is expected to be placed with him under section 8;
- (c) the references in subsection (4B)(a) to adoption are to be treated as references to placement under section 81;
- (d) the reference in subsection (5) to placement, or expected placement, for adoption is to be treated as a reference to placement, or expected placement under section 81.

(12) Where, by virtue of subsection (11), a person becomes entitled to statutory adoption pay in respect of a child who is, or is expected to be, placed under section 81 of the Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014, the person may not become entitled to payments of statutory adoption pay as a result of the child being, or being expected to be, placed for adoption.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F1151** S. 171ZL(4)(b) substituted (with effect in accordance with art. 2 of the amending S.I.) by [The Adoption and Children Act 2002 \(Consequential Amendment to Statutory Adoption Pay\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2012\)](#), arts. 1, **3(a)**
- F1152** S. 171ZL(4A)(4B) inserted (with effect in accordance with art. 2 of the amending S.I.) by [The Adoption and Children Act 2002 \(Consequential Amendment to Statutory Adoption Pay\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2012\)](#), arts. 1, **3(b)**
- F1153** Words in s. 171ZL(4B)(a) inserted (13.1.2020) by [The Marriage \(Same-sex Couples\) and Civil Partnership \(Opposite-sex Couples\) \(Northern Ireland\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1514\)](#), regs. 1(2), **65(a)** (with regs. 6-9)
- F1154** S. 171ZL(4B)(b) omitted (13.1.2020) by virtue of [The Marriage \(Same-sex Couples\) and Civil Partnership \(Opposite-sex Couples\) \(Northern Ireland\) Regulations 2019 \(S.I. 2019/1514\)](#), regs. 1(2), **65(b)** (with regs. 6-9)
- F1155** S. 171ZL(4B)(c) inserted (15.7.2011) by [The Adoption and Children \(Scotland\) Act 2007 \(Consequential Modifications\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1740\)](#), **Sch. 1 para. 4**
- F1156** S. 171ZL(9)(10) inserted (30.6.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), **ss. 121(5)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(e)
- F1157** S. 171ZL(11)(12) inserted (E.W.) (6.4.2016) by [The Social Services and Well-being \(Wales\) Act 2014 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/413\)](#), regs. 2(1), **135**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C75** S. 171ZL(6) disapplied (8.12.2002) by [The Statutory Paternity Pay and Statutory Adoption Pay \(General\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2822\)](#), regs. 1, **29(2)**

## 171ZM Liability to make payments **U.K.**

- (1) The liability to make payments of statutory adoption pay is a liability of any person of whom the person entitled to the payments has been an employee as mentioned in section 171ZL(2)(b) above.
- (2) Regulations shall make provision as to a former employer's liability to pay statutory adoption pay to a person in any case where the former employee's contract of service with him has been brought to an end by the former employer solely, or mainly, for the purpose of avoiding liability for statutory adoption pay.
- (3) The Secretary of State may, with the concurrence of the Board, by regulations specify circumstances in which, notwithstanding this section, liability to make payments of statutory adoption pay is to be a liability of the Board.

## 171ZN Rate and period of pay **U.K.**

<sup>F1158</sup>(1) . . . . .

- (2) Statutory adoption pay shall be payable, subject to the provisions of this Part of this Act, in respect of each week during a prescribed period ("the adoption pay period") of a duration not exceeding [<sup>F1159</sup>52 weeks].

[ Regulations may provide for the duration of the adoption pay period as it applies to a <sup>F1160</sup>(2A) person ("A") to be reduced, subject to prescribed restrictions and conditions.

- (2B) Regulations under subsection (2A) are to secure that the reduced period ends at a time—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) after a prescribed part of the adoption pay period has expired, and
  - (b) when at least a prescribed part of the adoption pay period remains unexpired.
- (2C) Regulations under subsection (2A) may, in particular, prescribe restrictions and conditions relating to—
- (a) the end of A's entitlement to adoption leave;
  - (b) the doing of work by A;
  - (c) the taking of prescribed steps by A or another person as regards leave under section 75G of the Employment Rights Act 1996 in respect of the child;
  - (d) the taking of prescribed steps by A or another person as regards statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child.
- (2D) Regulations may provide for a reduction in the duration of the adoption pay period as it applies to a person to be revoked, or to be treated as revoked, subject to prescribed restrictions and conditions.]
- [ Statutory adoption pay shall be payable to a person—
- <sup>F1161</sup>(2E) (a) at the earnings-related rate, in respect of the first 6 weeks in respect of which it is payable; and
- (b) at whichever is the lower of the earnings-related rate and such weekly rate as may be prescribed, in respect of the remaining portion of the adoption pay period.
- (2F) The earnings-related rate is a weekly rate equivalent to 90 per cent of a person's normal weekly earnings for the period of 8 weeks ending with the week in which the person is notified that the person has been matched with a child for the purposes of adoption.
- (2G) The weekly rate prescribed under subsection (2E)(b) must not be less than the weekly rate of statutory sick pay for the time being specified in section 157(1) or, if two or more such rates are for the time being so specified, the higher or highest of those rates.]
- (3) [<sup>F1162</sup>Except in such cases as may be prescribed,] a person shall not be liable to pay statutory adoption pay to another in respect of any week during any part of which the other works under a contract of service with him.
- (4) It is immaterial for the purposes of subsection (3) above whether the work referred to in that subsection is work under a contract of service which existed immediately before the adoption pay period or a contract of service which did not so exist.
- (5) Except in such cases as may be prescribed, statutory adoption pay shall not be payable to a person in respect of any week during any part of which he works for any employer who is not liable to pay him statutory adoption pay.
- (6) The Secretary of State may by regulations specify circumstances in which there is to be no liability to pay statutory adoption pay in respect of a week.
- [ Where for any purpose of this Part of this Act or of regulations it is necessary to
- <sup>F1163</sup>(6A) calculate the daily rate of statutory adoption pay, the amount payable by way of statutory adoption pay for any day shall be taken as one seventh of the weekly rate.]
- (7) In [<sup>F1164</sup>subsections (2) and (2E)] above, “week” means any period of seven days.
- (8) In subsections (3), (5) and (6) above, “week” means a period of seven days beginning with the day of the week on which the adoption pay period begins.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[ Where statutory adoption pay is payable to a person by virtue of section 171ZL(9),  
F1165(9) this section has effect as if the reference in subsection (2F) to the week in which the person is notified that he has been matched with a child for the purposes of adoption were a reference to the week in which the person is notified that a child is to be, or is expected to be, placed with him under section 22C of the Children Act 1989.]

[ Where statutory adoption pay is payable to a person by virtue of section 171ZL(11),  
F1166(10) this section has effect as if the reference in subsection (2F) to the week in which the person is notified that he has been matched with a child for the purposes of adoption were a reference to the week in which the person is notified that a child is to be, or is expected to be, placed with him under section 81 of the Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1158** S. 171ZN(1) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 124(1)(a)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 6(a) (with art. 13)
- F1159** Words in s. 171ZN(2) substituted (27.6.2006 for specified purposes, 1.10.2006 in so far as not already in force) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), **ss. 2**, 19(2); S.I. 2006/1682, arts. 2(b), 3(b)
- F1160** S. 171ZN(2A)-(2D) inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 120(6)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(d)
- F1161** S. 171ZN(2E)-(2G) inserted (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 124(1)(b)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 6(a) (with art. 13)
- F1162** Words in s. 171ZN(3) inserted (27.6.2006 for specified purposes, 1.10.2006 in so far as not already in force) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 21(2)**; S.I. 2006/1682, arts. 2(d), 3(d)
- F1163** S. 171ZN(6A) inserted (27.6.2006 for specified purposes, 1.10.2006 in so far as not already in force) by Work and Families Act 2006 (c. 18), s. 19(2), **Sch. 1 para. 21(3)**; S.I. 2006/1682, arts. 2(d), 3(d)
- F1164** Words in s. 171ZN(7) substituted (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 124(1)(c)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 6(a) (with art. 13)
- F1165** S. 171ZN(9) inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 121(6)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(e)
- F1166** S. 171ZN(10) inserted (6.4.2016) by The Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 (Consequential Amendments) Regulations 2016 (S.I. 2016/413), regs. 2(1), **136**

#### 171ZO Restrictions on contracting out **U.K.**

- (1) Any agreement shall be void to the extent that it purports—
  - (a) to exclude, limit or otherwise modify any provision of this Part of this Act, or
  - (b) to require an employee or former employee to contribute (whether directly or indirectly) towards any costs incurred by his employer or former employer under this Part of this Act.
- (2) For the avoidance of doubt, any agreement between an employer and an employee authorising any deductions from statutory adoption pay which the employer is liable to pay to the employee in respect of any period shall not be void by virtue of subsection (1)(a) above if the employer—
  - (a) is authorised by that or another agreement to make the same deductions from any contractual remuneration which he is liable to pay in respect of the same period, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) would be so authorised if he were liable to pay contractual remuneration in respect of that period.

#### **171ZP Relationship with benefits and other payments etc U.K.**

- (1) Except as may be prescribed, a day which falls within the adoption pay period shall not be treated as a day of incapacity for work for the purposes of determining, for this Act, whether it forms part of a period of incapacity for work for the purposes of incapacity benefit.
- (2) Regulations may provide that in prescribed circumstances a day which falls within the adoption pay period shall be treated as a day of incapacity for work for the purposes of determining entitlement to the higher rate of short-term incapacity benefit or to long-term incapacity benefit.
- (3) Regulations may provide that an amount equal to a person's statutory adoption pay for a period shall be deducted from any such benefit in respect of the same period and a person shall be entitled to such benefit only if there is a balance after the deduction and, if there is such a balance, at a weekly rate equal to it.
- (4) Subject to subsections (5) and (6) below, any entitlement to statutory adoption pay shall not affect any right of a person in relation to remuneration under any contract of service ("contractual remuneration").
- (5) Subject to subsection (6) below—
  - (a) any contractual remuneration paid to a person by an employer of his in respect of a week in the adoption pay period shall go towards discharging any liability of that employer to pay statutory adoption pay to him in respect of that week; and
  - (b) any statutory adoption pay paid by an employer to a person who is an employee of his in respect of a week in the adoption pay period shall go towards discharging any liability of that employer to pay contractual remuneration to him in respect of that week.
- (6) Regulations may make provision as to payments which are, and those which are not, to be treated as contractual remuneration for the purposes of subsections (4) and (5) above.
- (7) In subsection (5) above, "week" means a period of seven days beginning with the day of the week on which the adoption pay period begins.

#### **171ZQ Crown employment-Part 12ZB U.K.**

The provisions of this Part of this Act apply in relation to persons employed by or under the Crown as they apply in relation to persons employed otherwise than by or under the Crown.

#### **171ZR Special classes of person U.K.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may with the concurrence of the Treasury make regulations modifying any provision of this Part of this Act in such manner as he thinks proper in its application to any person who is, has been or is to be—
  - (a) employed on board any ship, vessel, hovercraft or aircraft;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) outside Great Britain at any prescribed time or in any prescribed circumstances; or
  - (c) in prescribed employment in connection with continental shelf operations, as defined in section 120(2) above.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) above may, in particular, provide—
- (a) for any provision of this Part of this Act to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would not otherwise apply;
  - (b) for any such provision not to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would otherwise apply;
  - (c) for excepting any such person from the application of any such provision where he neither is domiciled nor has a place of residence in any part of Great Britain;
  - (d) for the taking of evidence, for the purposes of the determination of any question arising under any such provision, in a country or territory outside Great Britain, by a British consular official or such other person as may be determined in accordance with the regulations.

**171ZS Part 12ZB: supplementary U.K.**

- (1) In this Part of this Act—
- “adoption pay period” has the meaning given by section 171ZN(2) above;
  - “the Board” means the Commissioners of Inland Revenue;
  - [<sup>F1167</sup>“employer”, in relation to a person who is an employee, means a person who—
    - (a) under section 6 above is liable to pay secondary Class 1 contributions in relation to any of the earnings of the person who is an employee; or
    - (b) would be liable to pay such contributions but for—
      - (i) the condition in section 6(1)(b), or
      - (ii) the employee being under the age of 16;]
    - [<sup>F1168</sup>“local authority” has the same meaning as in the Children Act 1989 (see section 105(1) of that Act);]
    - [<sup>F1168</sup>“local authority foster parent” has the same meaning as in the Children Act 1989 (see [<sup>F1169</sup>section 105(1)] of that Act);]
    - “modifications” includes additions, omissions and amendments, and related expressions are to be read accordingly;
    - “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations.

(2) In this Part of this Act, “employee” means a person who is—

    - (a) gainfully employed in Great Britain either under a contract of service or in an office (including elective office) with [<sup>F1170</sup>earnings (within the meaning of Parts 1 to 5 above)]; <sup>F1171</sup> ...
    - <sup>F1171</sup>(b) .....

(3) Regulations may provide—

    - (a) for cases where a person who falls within the definition in subsection (2) above is not to be treated as an employee for the purposes of this Part of this Act, and
    - (b) for cases where a person who would not otherwise be an employee for the purposes of this Part of this Act is to be treated as an employee for those purposes.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part of this Act, regulations may specify cases in which, for the purposes of this Part of this Act or of such provisions of this Part of this Act as may be prescribed—
  - (a) two or more employers are to be treated as one;
  - (b) two or more contracts of service in respect of which the same person is an employee are to be treated as one.
- (5) In this Part, except sections 171ZN and 171ZP, “week” means a period of 7 days beginning with Sunday or such other period as may be prescribed in relation to any particular case or class of cases.
- (6) For the purposes of this Part of this Act, a person’s normal weekly earnings shall, subject to subsection (8) below, be taken to be the average weekly earnings which in the relevant period have been paid to him or paid for his benefit under the contract of service with the employer in question.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (6) above, “earnings” and “relevant period” shall have the meanings given to them by regulations.
- (8) In such cases as may be prescribed, a person’s normal weekly earnings shall be calculated in accordance with regulations.
- (9) Where—
  - (a) in consequence of the establishment of one or more National Health Service trusts under [<sup>F1172</sup>the National Health Service Act 2006, the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006] or the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 (c. 29), a person’s contract of employment is treated by a scheme under [<sup>F1173</sup>any of those Acts] as divided so as to constitute two or more contracts, or
  - (b) an order under [<sup>F1174</sup>paragraph 26(1) of Schedule 3 to the National Health Service Act 2006] provides that a person’s contract of employment is so divided,regulations may make provision enabling the person to elect for all of those contracts to be treated as one contract for the purposes of this Part of this Act or such provisions of this Part of this Act as may be prescribed.
- (10) Regulations under subsection (9) above may prescribe—
  - (a) the conditions that must be satisfied if a person is to be entitled to make such an election;
  - (b) the manner in which, and the time within which, such an election is to be made;
  - (c) the persons to whom, and the manner in which, notice of such an election is to be given;
  - (d) the information which a person who makes such an election is to provide, and the persons to whom, and the time within which, he is to provide it;
  - (e) the time for which such an election is to have effect;
  - (f) which one of the person’s employers under two or more contracts is to be regarded for the purposes of statutory adoption pay as his employer under the contract.
- (11) The powers under subsections (9) and (10) are without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part of this Act.
- (12) Regulations under any of subsections (4) to (10) above must be made with the concurrence of the Board.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F1167** Words in s. 171ZS(1) substituted (1.10.2006 with application in accordance with Sch. 8 para. 12(4) of the amending S.I.) by [The Employment Equality \(Age\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1031\)](#), reg. 1(1), [Sch. 8 para. 12\(2\)](#)
- F1168** Words in s. 171ZS(1) inserted (30.6.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), [ss. 121\(7\)\(b\)](#), 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(e)
- F1169** Words in s. 171ZS(1) substituted (E.W.) (6.4.2016) by [The Social Services and Well-being \(Wales\) Act 2014 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/413\)](#), regs. 2(1), [137](#)
- F1170** Words in s. 171ZS(2)(a) substituted (13.5.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\)](#), s. 15(4), [Sch. 2 para. 6](#)
- F1171** S. 171ZS(2)(b) and preceding word omitted (1.10.2006 with application in accordance with Sch. 8 para. 12(4) of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Employment Equality \(Age\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1031\)](#), reg. 1(1), [Sch. 8 para. 12\(3\)](#)
- F1172** Words in s. 171ZS(9)(a) substituted (1.3.2007) by [National Health Service \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 2006 \(c. 43\)](#), s. 8(2), [Sch. 1 para. 150\(a\)\(i\)](#) (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)
- F1173** Words in s. 171ZS(9)(a) substituted (1.3.2007) by [National Health Service \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 2006 \(c. 43\)](#), s. 8(2), [Sch. 1 para. 150\(a\)\(ii\)](#) (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)
- F1174** Words in s. 171ZS(9)(b) substituted (1.3.2007) by [National Health Service \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 2006 \(c. 43\)](#), s. 8(2), [Sch. 1 para. 150\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)

### 171ZT Power to apply Part 12ZB <sup>F1175</sup> ... **U.K.**

<sup>F1176</sup>(1) [ The Secretary of State may by regulations provide for this Part to have effect in relation to cases which involve adoption, but not the placement of a child for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom, with such modifications as the regulations may prescribe.

<sup>F1177</sup>[<sup>F1178</sup>(2) [ The Secretary of State may by regulations provide for this Part to have effect, with such modifications as the regulations may prescribe, in relation to—

- (a) cases which involve a person who has applied, or intends to apply, with another person for a parental order under section 54 of the Human Fertilisation and Embryology Act 2008 and a child who is, or will be, the subject of the order,
- (b) cases which involve a person who has applied, or intends to apply, for a parental order under section 54A of that Act and a child who is, or will be, the subject of the order.]

(3) Regulations under subsection (2) may modify section 171ZL(8)(c) so as to enable regulations to impose requirements to make statutory declarations as to—

- (a) eligibility to apply for a parental order [<sup>F1179</sup>under section 54 or 54A of the Human Fertilisation and Embryology Act 2008];
- (b) intention to apply for such an order.]]

### Textual Amendments

- F1175** Words in s. 171ZT title repealed (30.6.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), [ss. 122\(6\)\(a\)](#), 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(f)
- F1176** S. 171ZT renumbered as s. 171ZT(1) (30.6.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), [ss. 122\(6\)\(b\)](#), 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(f)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1177** S. 171ZT(2)(3) inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 122(6)(c)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(f)
- F1178** S. 171ZT(2) substituted (3.1.2019) by The Human Fertilisation and Embryology Act 2008 (Remedial) Order 2018 (S.I. 2018/1413), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 7(1)**
- F1179** Words in s. 171ZT(3)(a) inserted (3.1.2019) by The Human Fertilisation and Embryology Act 2008 (Remedial) Order 2018 (S.I. 2018/1413), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 7(2)**

## [<sup>F1180</sup>PART 12ZC U.K.]

### STATUTORY SHARED PARENTAL PAY

#### Textual Amendments

- F1180** Pt. 12ZC inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), **ss. 119(1)**, 139(6); S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(c)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C76** Pt. 12ZC applied (with modifications) (19.4.2014) by The Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 (Application of Parts 12ZA, 12ZB and 12ZC to Parental Order Cases) Regulations 2014 (S.I. 2014/2866), regs. 1(2), 5, **Sch. 3** (as amended (3.1.2019) by S.I. 2018/1413, art. 1(1), **Sch. 2 para. 6**)

## 171ZU Entitlement: birth U.K.

- (1) Regulations may provide that, where all the conditions in subsection (2) are satisfied in relation to a person who is the mother of a child (“the claimant mother”), the claimant mother is to be entitled in accordance with the following provisions of this Part to payments to be known as “statutory shared parental pay”.
- (2) The conditions are—
- that the claimant mother and another person (“P”) satisfy prescribed conditions as to caring or intending to care for the child;
  - that P satisfies prescribed conditions—
    - as to employment or self-employment,
    - as to having earnings of a prescribed amount for a prescribed period, and
    - as to relationship either with the child or with the claimant mother;
  - that the claimant mother has been in employed earner's employment with an employer for a continuous period of at least the prescribed length ending with a prescribed week;
  - that at the end of that prescribed week the claimant mother was entitled to be in that employment;
  - that the claimant mother's normal weekly earnings for a prescribed period ending with a prescribed week are not less than the lower earnings limit in force under section 5(1)(a) at the end of that week;
  - if regulations so provide, that the claimant mother continues in employed earner's employment (whether or not with the employer by reference to whom the condition in paragraph (c) is satisfied) until a prescribed time;
  - that the claimant mother became entitled to statutory maternity pay by reference to the birth of the child;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (h) that the claimant mother satisfies prescribed conditions as to the reduction of the duration of the maternity pay period;
  - (i) that the claimant mother has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to her notice of—
    - (i) the number of weeks in respect of which she would be entitled to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child if the entitlement were fully exercised (disregarding for these purposes any intention of P to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child),
    - (ii) the number of weeks in respect of which she intends to claim statutory shared parental pay, and
    - (iii) the number of weeks in respect of which P intends to claim statutory shared parental pay;
  - (j) that the claimant mother has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to her notice of the period or periods during which she intends to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child;
  - (k) that a notice under paragraph (i) or (j)—
    - (i) is given by such time as may be prescribed, and
    - (ii) satisfies prescribed conditions as to form and content;
  - (l) that P consents to the extent of the claimant mother's intended claim for statutory shared parental pay;
  - (m) that it is the claimant mother's intention to care for the child during each week in respect of which statutory shared parental pay is paid to her;
  - (n) that the claimant mother is absent from work during each week in respect of which statutory shared parental pay is paid to her;
  - (o) that, where she is an employee within the meaning of the Employment Rights Act 1996, the claimant mother's absence from work during each such week is absence on shared parental leave.
- (3) Regulations may provide that, where all the conditions in subsection (4) are satisfied in relation to a person (“the claimant”), the claimant is to be entitled in accordance with the following provisions of this Part to payments to be known as “statutory shared parental pay”.
- (4) The conditions are—
- (a) that the claimant and another person (“M”) who is the mother of a child satisfy prescribed conditions as to caring or intending to care for the child;
  - (b) that the claimant satisfies—
    - (i) prescribed conditions as to relationship with the child, or
    - (ii) prescribed conditions as to relationship with M;
  - (c) that M satisfies prescribed conditions—
    - (i) as to employment or self-employment, and
    - (ii) as to having earnings of a prescribed amount for a prescribed period;
  - (d) that the claimant has been in employed earner's employment with an employer for a continuous period of at least the prescribed length ending with a prescribed week;
  - (e) that at the end of that prescribed week the claimant was entitled to be in that employment;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (f) that the claimant's normal weekly earnings for a prescribed period ending with a prescribed week are not less than the lower earnings limit in force under section 5(1)(a) at the end of that week;
  - (g) if regulations so provide, that the claimant continues in employed earner's employment (whether or not with the employer by reference to whom the condition in paragraph (d) is satisfied) until a prescribed time;
  - (h) that M became entitled, by reference to the birth of the child, to—
    - (i) a maternity allowance, or
    - (ii) statutory maternity pay;
  - (i) that M satisfies prescribed conditions as to—
    - (i) the reduction of the duration of the maternity allowance period, or
    - (ii) the reduction of the duration of the maternity pay period, as the case may be;
  - (j) that the claimant has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to the claimant notice of—
    - (i) the number of weeks in respect of which the claimant would be entitled to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child if the entitlement were fully exercised (disregarding for these purposes any intention of M to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child),
    - (ii) the number of weeks in respect of which the claimant intends to claim statutory shared parental pay, and
    - (iii) the number of weeks in respect of which M intends to claim statutory shared parental pay;
  - (k) that the claimant has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to the claimant notice of the period or periods during which the claimant intends to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child;
  - (l) that a notice under paragraph (j) or (k)—
    - (i) is given by such time as may be prescribed, and
    - (ii) satisfies prescribed conditions as to form and content;
  - (m) that M consents to the extent of the claimant's intended claim for statutory shared parental pay;
  - (n) that it is the claimant's intention to care for the child during each week in respect of which statutory shared parental pay is paid to the claimant;
  - (o) that the claimant is absent from work during each week in respect of which statutory shared parental pay is paid to the claimant;
  - (p) that, where the claimant is an employee within the meaning of the Employment Rights Act 1996, the claimant's absence from work during each such week is absence on shared parental leave.
- (5) Regulations may provide for—
- (a) the determination of the extent of a person's entitlement to statutory shared parental pay in respect of a child;
  - (b) when statutory shared parental pay is to be payable.
- (6) Provision under subsection (5)(a) is to secure that the number of weeks in respect of which a person is entitled to payments of statutory shared parental pay in respect of a child does not exceed the number of weeks of the maternity pay period reduced by—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) where the mother of the child takes action that is treated by regulations as constituting for the purposes of this section her return to work without satisfying conditions prescribed under subsection (2)(h) or, as the case may be, subsection (4)(i)—
    - (i) the number of relevant weeks in respect of which maternity allowance or statutory maternity pay is payable to the mother, or
    - (ii) if that number of relevant weeks is less than a number prescribed by regulations, that prescribed number of weeks, or
  - (b) except where paragraph (a) applies, the number of weeks to which the maternity allowance period is reduced by virtue of section 35(3A) or, as the case may be, the maternity pay period is reduced by virtue of section 165(3A).
- (7) In subsection (6)(a) “relevant week” means—
- (a) where maternity allowance is payable to a mother, a week or part of a week falling before the time at which the mother takes action that is treated by regulations as constituting for the purposes of this section her return to work;
  - (b) where statutory maternity pay is payable to a mother, a week falling before the week in which the mother takes action that is so treated.
- For these purposes “week” has the meaning given by section 122(1), in relation to maternity allowance, or the meaning given by section 165(8), in relation to statutory maternity pay.
- (8) In determining the number of weeks for the purposes of subsection (6)(b)—
- (a) “week” has the same meaning as in subsection (7), and
  - (b) a part of a week is to be treated as a week.
- (9) Provision under subsection (5)(a) is to secure that, where two persons are entitled to payments of statutory shared parental pay in respect of a child, the extent of one's entitlement and the extent of the other's entitlement do not, taken together, exceed what would be available to one person (see subsection (6)).
- (10) Provision under subsection (5)(b) is to secure that no payment of statutory shared parental pay may be made to a person in respect of a child after the end of such period as may be prescribed.
- (11) Provision under subsection (5)(b) is to secure that no payment of statutory shared parental pay in respect of a child may be made to a person who is the mother of the child before the end of the mother's maternity pay period.
- (12) Regulations may provide that, where the conditions in subsection (13) are satisfied in relation to a person who is entitled to statutory shared parental pay under subsection (1) or (3) (“V”), V may vary the period or periods during which V intends to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child in question, subject to complying with provision under subsection (14) where that is relevant.
- (13) The conditions are—
- (a) that V has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to V notice of an intention to vary the period or periods during which V intends to claim statutory shared parental pay;
  - (b) that a notice under paragraph (a)—
    - (i) is given by such time as may be prescribed, and
    - (ii) satisfies prescribed conditions as to form and content.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (14) Regulations may provide that, where the conditions in subsection (15) are satisfied in relation to a person who is entitled to statutory shared parental pay under subsection (1) or (3) (“V”), V may vary the number of weeks in respect of which V intends to claim statutory shared parental pay.
- (15) The conditions are—
- (a) that V has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to V notice of—
    - (i) the extent to which V has exercised an entitlement to statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child,
    - (ii) the extent to which V intends to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child,
    - (iii) the extent to which another person has exercised an entitlement to statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child, and
    - (iv) the extent to which another person intends to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child;
  - (b) that a notice under paragraph (a)—
    - (i) is given by such time as may be prescribed, and
    - (ii) satisfies prescribed conditions as to form and content;
  - (c) that the person who is P or, as the case may be, M in relation to V consents to that variation.
- (16) A person's entitlement to statutory shared parental pay under this section is not affected by the birth of more than one child as a result of the same pregnancy.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C77 S. 171ZU modified (1.12.2014) by [The Statutory Shared Parental Pay \(Persons Abroad and Mariners\) Regulations 2014 \(S.I. 2014/3134\)](#), regs. 1, 7(1) (with regs. 3, 4)

**171ZV Entitlement: adoption U.K.**

- (1) Regulations may provide that, where all the conditions in subsection (2) are satisfied in relation to a person with whom a child is, or is expected to be, placed for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom (“claimant A”), claimant A is to be entitled in accordance with the following provisions of this Part to payments to be known as “statutory shared parental pay”.
- (2) The conditions are—
- (a) that claimant A and another person (“X”) satisfy prescribed conditions as to caring or intending to care for the child;
  - (b) that X satisfies prescribed conditions—
    - (i) as to employment or self-employment,
    - (ii) as to having earnings of a prescribed amount for a prescribed period, and
    - (iii) as to relationship either with the child or with claimant A;
  - (c) that claimant A has been in employed earner's employment with an employer for a continuous period of at least the prescribed length ending with a prescribed week;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) that at the end of that prescribed week claimant A was entitled to be in that employment;
  - (e) that claimant A's normal weekly earnings for a prescribed period ending with a prescribed week are not less than the lower earnings limit in force under section 5(1)(a) at the end of that week;
  - (f) if regulations so provide, that claimant A continues in employed earner's employment (whether or not with the employer by reference to whom the condition in paragraph (c) is satisfied) until a prescribed time;
  - (g) that claimant A became entitled to statutory adoption pay by reference to the placement for adoption of the child;
  - (h) that claimant A satisfies prescribed conditions as to the reduction of the duration of the adoption pay period;
  - (i) that claimant A has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to claimant A notice of—
    - (i) the number of weeks in respect of which claimant A would be entitled to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child if the entitlement were fully exercised (disregarding for these purposes any intention of X to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child),
    - (ii) the number of weeks in respect of which claimant A intends to claim statutory shared parental pay, and
    - (iii) the number of weeks in respect of which X intends to claim statutory shared parental pay;
  - (j) that claimant A has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to claimant A notice of the period or periods during which claimant A intends to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child;
  - (k) that a notice under paragraph (i) or (j)—
    - (i) is given by such time as may be prescribed, and
    - (ii) satisfies prescribed conditions as to form and content;
  - (l) that X consents to the extent of claimant A's intended claim for statutory shared parental pay;
  - (m) that it is claimant A's intention to care for the child during each week in respect of which statutory shared parental pay is paid to claimant A;
  - (n) that claimant A is absent from work during each week in respect of which statutory shared parental pay is paid to claimant A;
  - (o) that, where claimant A is an employee within the meaning of the Employment Rights Act 1996, claimant A's absence from work during each such week is absence on shared parental leave.
- (3) Regulations may provide that, where all the conditions in subsection (4) are satisfied in relation to a person (“claimant B”), claimant B is to be entitled in accordance with the following provisions of this Part to payments to be known as “statutory shared parental pay”.
- (4) The conditions are—
- (a) that claimant B and another person (“Y”) who is a person with whom a child is, or is expected to be, placed for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom satisfy prescribed conditions as to caring or intending to care for the child;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) that claimant B satisfies—
  - (i) prescribed conditions as to relationship with the child, or
  - (ii) prescribed conditions as to relationship with Y;
- (c) that Y satisfies prescribed conditions—
  - (i) as to employment or self-employment, and
  - (ii) as to having earnings of a prescribed amount for a prescribed period;
- (d) that claimant B has been in employed earner's employment with an employer for a continuous period of at least the prescribed length ending with a prescribed week;
- (e) that at the end of that prescribed week claimant B was entitled to be in that employment;
- (f) that claimant B's normal weekly earnings for a prescribed period ending with a prescribed week are not less than the lower earnings limit in force under section 5(1)(a) at the end of that week;
- (g) if regulations so provide, that claimant B continues in employed earner's employment (whether or not with the employer by reference to whom the condition in paragraph (d) is satisfied) until a prescribed time;
- (h) that Y became entitled to statutory adoption pay by reference to the placement for adoption of the child;
- (i) that Y satisfies prescribed conditions as to the reduction of the duration of the adoption pay period;
- (j) that claimant B has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to claimant B notice of—
  - (i) the number of weeks in respect of which claimant B would be entitled to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child if the entitlement were fully exercised (disregarding for these purposes any intention of Y to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child),
  - (ii) the number of weeks in respect of which claimant B intends to claim statutory shared parental pay, and
  - (iii) the number of weeks in respect of which Y intends to claim statutory shared parental pay;
- (k) that claimant B has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to claimant B notice of the period or periods during which claimant B intends to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child;
- (l) that a notice under paragraph (j) or (k)—
  - (i) is given by such time as may be prescribed, and
  - (ii) satisfies prescribed conditions as to form and content;
- (m) that Y consents to the extent of claimant B's intended claim for statutory shared parental pay;
- (n) that it is claimant B's intention to care for the child during each week in respect of which statutory shared parental pay is paid to claimant B;
- (o) that claimant B is absent from work during each week in respect of which statutory shared parental pay is paid to claimant B;
- (p) that, where claimant B is an employee within the meaning of the Employment Rights Act 1996, claimant B's absence from work during each such week is absence on shared parental leave.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Regulations may provide for—
  - (a) the determination of the extent of a person's entitlement to statutory shared parental pay in respect of a child;
  - (b) when statutory shared parental pay is to be payable.
- (6) Provision under subsection (5)(a) is to secure that the number of weeks in respect of which a person is entitled to payments of statutory shared parental pay in respect of a child does not exceed the number of weeks of the adoption pay period reduced by—
  - (a) where the person who became entitled to receive statutory adoption pay takes action that is treated by regulations as constituting for the purposes of this section the person's return to work without satisfying conditions prescribed under subsection (2)(h) or, as the case may be, subsection (4)(i)—
    - (i) the number of relevant weeks in respect of which statutory adoption pay is payable to the person, or
    - (ii) if that number of relevant weeks is less than a number prescribed by regulations, that prescribed number of weeks, or
  - (b) except where paragraph (a) applies, the number of weeks to which the adoption pay period has been reduced by virtue of section 171ZN(2A).
- (7) In subsection (6)(a) “relevant week” means a week falling before the week in which a person takes action that is treated by regulations as constituting for the purposes of this section the person's return to work, and for these purposes “week” has the meaning given by section 171ZN(8).
- (8) In determining the number of weeks for the purposes of subsection (6)(b)—
  - (a) “week” has the same meaning as in subsection (7), and
  - (b) a part of a week is to be treated as a week.
- (9) Provision under subsection (5)(a) is to secure that, where two persons are entitled to payments of statutory shared parental pay in respect of a child, the extent of one's entitlement and the extent of the other's entitlement do not, taken together, exceed what would be available to one person (see subsection (6)).
- (10) Provision under subsection (5)(b) is to secure that no payment of statutory shared parental pay may be made to a person in respect of a child after the end of such period as may be prescribed.
- (11) Provision under subsection (5)(b) is to secure that no payment of statutory shared parental pay in respect of a child may be made to a person who became entitled to receive statutory adoption pay in respect of the child before the end of the person's adoption pay period.
- (12) Regulations may provide that, where the conditions in subsection (13) are satisfied in relation to a person who is entitled to statutory shared parental pay under subsection (1) or (3) (“V”), V may vary the period or periods during which V intends to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child in question, subject to complying with provision under subsection (14) where that is relevant.
- (13) The conditions are—
  - (a) that V has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to V notice of an intention to vary the period or periods during which V intends to claim statutory shared parental pay;
  - (b) that a notice under paragraph (a)—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) is given by such time as may be prescribed, and
  - (ii) satisfies prescribed conditions as to form and content.
- (14) Regulations may provide that, where the conditions in subsection (15) are satisfied in relation to a person who is entitled to statutory shared parental pay under subsection (1) or (3) (“V”), V may vary the number of weeks in respect of which V intends to claim statutory shared parental pay.
- (15) The conditions are—
  - (a) that V has given the person who will be liable to pay statutory shared parental pay to V notice of—
    - (i) the extent to which V has exercised an entitlement to statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child,
    - (ii) the extent to which V intends to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child,
    - (iii) the extent to which another person has exercised an entitlement to statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child, and
    - (iv) the extent to which another person intends to claim statutory shared parental pay in respect of the child;
  - (b) that a notice under paragraph (a)—
    - (i) is given by such time as may be prescribed, and
    - (ii) satisfies prescribed conditions as to form and content;
  - (c) that the person who is X or, as the case may be, Y in relation to V consents to that variation.
- (16) A person's entitlement to statutory shared parental pay under this section is not affected by the placement for adoption of more than one child as part of the same arrangement.
- [ Regulations are to provide for entitlement to statutory shared parental pay in respect  
F1181(17) of a child placed, or expected to be placed—
  - (a) under section 22C of the Children Act 1989 by a local authority in England, or
  - (b) under section 81 of the Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 by a local authority in Wales,with a local authority foster parent who has been approved as a prospective adopter.
- (18) This section has effect in relation to regulations made by virtue of subsection (17) as if—
  - (a) references to a child being placed for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom were references to being placed under section 22C of the Children Act 1989 or section 81 of the Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 with a local authority foster parent who has been approved as a prospective adopter;
  - (b) references to a placement for adoption were references to placement under section 22C of the Children Act 1989 or section 81 of the Social Services and Well-being (Wales) Act 2014 with such a person.]

#### Textual Amendments

F1181 S. 171ZV(17)(18) substituted (6.4.2016) by [The Social Services and Well-being \(Wales\) Act 2014 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/413\)](#), regs. 2(1), 138

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 171ZW Entitlement: general **U.K.**

- (1) Regulations may—
- (a) provide that the following do not have effect, or have effect subject to prescribed modifications, in such cases as may be prescribed—
    - (i) section 171ZU(2)(a) to (o),
    - (ii) section 171ZU(4)(a) to (p),
    - (iii) section 171ZU(13)(a) and (b),
    - (iv) section 171ZU(15)(a) to (c),
    - (v) section 171ZV(2)(a) to (o),
    - (vi) section 171ZV(4)(a) to (p),
    - (vii) section 171ZV(13)(a) and (b), and
    - (viii) section 171ZV(15)(a) to (c);
  - (b) impose requirements about evidence of entitlement and procedures to be followed;
  - (c) specify in what circumstances employment is to be treated as continuous for the purposes of section 171ZU or 171ZV;
  - (d) provide that a person is to be treated for the purposes of section 171ZU or 171ZV as being employed for a continuous period of at least the prescribed period where—
    - (i) the person has been employed by the same employer for at least the prescribed period under two or more separate contracts of service, and
    - (ii) those contracts were not continuous;
  - (e) provide for amounts earned by a person under separate contracts of service with the same employer to be aggregated for the purposes of section 171ZU or 171ZV;
  - (f) provide that—
    - (i) the amount of a person's earnings for any period, or
    - (ii) the amount of the person's earnings to be treated as comprised in any payment made to the person or for the person's benefit,
 are to be calculated or estimated for the purposes of section 171ZU or 171ZV in such manner and on such basis as may be prescribed and that for that purpose payments of a particular class or description made or falling to be made to or by a person are, to such extent as may be prescribed, to be disregarded or, as the case may be, to be deducted from the amount of the person's earnings.
- (2) The persons upon whom requirements may be imposed by virtue of subsection (1) (b) include—
- (a) a person who, in connection with another person's claim to be paid statutory shared parental pay, is required to satisfy conditions prescribed under section 171ZU(2)(b) or (4)(c) or 171ZV(2)(b) or (4)(c);
  - (b) an employer or former employer of such a person.
- (3) In subsection (1)(d) “the prescribed period” means the period of the length prescribed by regulations under section 171ZU(2)(c) or (4)(d) or 171ZV(2)(c) or (4)(d), as the case may be.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **171ZX Liability to make payments** **U.K.**

- (1) The liability to make payments of statutory shared parental pay under section 171ZU or 171ZV is a liability of any person of whom the person entitled to the payments has been an employee as mentioned in section 171ZU(2)(c) or (4)(d) or 171ZV(2)(c) or (4)(d), as the case may be.
- (2) Regulations must make provision as to a former employer's liability to pay statutory shared parental pay to a person in any case where the former employee's contract of service with the person has been brought to an end by the former employer solely, or mainly, for the purpose of avoiding liability for statutory shared parental pay.
- (3) The Secretary of State may, with the concurrence of the Commissioners for Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs, by regulations specify circumstances in which, notwithstanding this section, liability to make payments of statutory shared parental pay is to be a liability of the Commissioners.

### **171ZY Rate and period of pay** **U.K.**

- (1) Statutory shared parental pay is payable at such fixed or earnings-related weekly rate as may be prescribed by regulations, which may prescribe different kinds of rate for different cases.
- (2) Subject to the following provisions of this section, statutory shared parental pay is payable to a person in respect of each week falling within a relevant period, up to the number of weeks determined in the case of that person in accordance with regulations under section 171ZU(5) or 171ZV(5).
- (3) Except in such cases as may be prescribed, statutory shared parental pay is not payable to a person in respect of a week falling within a relevant period if it is not the person's intention at the beginning of the week to care for the child by reference to whom the person satisfies—
  - (a) the condition in section 171ZU(2)(a) or (4)(a), or
  - (b) the condition in section 171ZV(2)(a) or (4)(a).
- (4) Except in such cases as may be prescribed, statutory shared parental pay is not payable to a person in respect of a week falling within a relevant period during any part of which week the person works for any employer.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by regulations specify circumstances in which there is to be no liability to pay statutory shared parental pay in respect of a week falling within a relevant period.
- (6) Where for any purpose of this Part or of regulations it is necessary to calculate the daily rate of statutory shared parental pay, the amount payable by way of statutory shared parental pay for any day shall be taken as one seventh of the weekly rate.
- (7) For the purposes of this section a week falls within a relevant period if it falls within a period specified in a notice under—
  - (a) section 171ZU(2)(j), (4)(k) or (13)(a), or
  - (b) section 171ZV(2)(j), (4)(k) or (13)(a),and is not afterwards excluded from such a period by a variation of the period or periods during which the person in question intends to claim statutory shared parental pay.



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) In this section “week”, in relation to a relevant period, means a period of seven days beginning with the day of the week on which the relevant period starts.

### **171ZZ Restrictions on contracting out** U.K.

- (1) An agreement is void to the extent that it purports—
- (a) to exclude, limit or otherwise modify any provision of this Part, or
  - (b) to require a person to contribute (whether directly or indirectly) towards any costs incurred by that person's employer or former employer under this Part.
- (2) For the avoidance of doubt, an agreement between an employer and an employee, authorising deductions from statutory shared parental pay which the employer is liable to pay to the employee in respect of any period, is not void by virtue of subsection (1)
- (a) if the employer—
    - (a) is authorised by that or another agreement to make the same deductions from any contractual remuneration which the employer is liable to pay in respect of the same period, or
    - (b) would be so authorised if the employer were liable to pay contractual remuneration in respect of that period.

### **171ZZ1 Relationship with contractual remuneration** U.K.

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) and (3), any entitlement to statutory shared parental pay is not to affect any right of a person in relation to remuneration under any contract of service (“contractual remuneration”).
- (2) Subject to subsection (3)—
- (a) any contractual remuneration paid to a person by an employer of that person in respect of any period is to go towards discharging any liability of that employer to pay statutory shared parental pay to that person in respect of that period; and
  - (b) any statutory shared parental pay paid by an employer to a person who is an employee of that employer in respect of any period is to go towards discharging any liability of that employer to pay contractual remuneration to that person in respect of that period.
- (3) Regulations may make provision as to payments which are, and those which are not, to be treated as contractual remuneration for the purposes of subsections (1) and (2).

### **171ZZ2 Crown employment** U.K.

The provisions of this Part apply in relation to persons employed by or under the Crown as they apply in relation to persons employed otherwise than by or under the Crown.

### **171ZZ3 Special classes of person** U.K.

- (1) The Secretary of State may with the concurrence of the Treasury make regulations modifying any provision of this Part in such manner as the Secretary of State thinks proper in its application to any person who is, has been or is to be—
- (a) employed on board any ship, vessel, hovercraft or aircraft;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) outside Great Britain at any prescribed time or in any prescribed circumstances; or
  - (c) in prescribed employment in connection with continental shelf operations, as defined in section 120(2).
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may, in particular, provide—
- (a) for any provision of this Part to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would not otherwise apply;
  - (b) for any such provision not to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would otherwise apply;
  - (c) for excepting any such person from the application of any such provision where the person neither is domiciled nor has a place of residence in any part of Great Britain;
  - (d) for the taking of evidence, for the purposes of the determination of any question arising under any such provision, in a country or territory outside Great Britain, by a British consular official or such other person as may be determined in accordance with the regulations.

#### **171ZZ4 Part 12ZC: supplementary U.K.**

- (1) In this Part—
- “adoption pay period” has the meaning given in section 171ZN(2);
  - “employer”, in relation to a person who is an employee, means a person who—
    - (a) under section 6 is liable to pay secondary Class 1 contributions in relation to any of the earnings of the person who is an employee, or
    - (b) would be liable to pay such contributions but for—
      - (i) the condition in section 6(1)(b), or
      - (ii) the employee being under the age of 16;
  - “local authority” has the same meaning as in the Children Act 1989 (see section 105(1) of that Act);
  - “local authority foster parent” has the same meaning as in the Children Act 1989 (see [F1182]section 105(1)] of that Act);
  - “maternity allowance period” has the meaning given in section 35(2);
  - “maternity pay period” has the meaning given in section 165(1);
  - “modifications” includes additions, omissions and amendments, and related expressions are to be read accordingly;
  - “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations.
- (2) In this Part “employee” means a person who is gainfully employed in Great Britain either under a contract of service or in an office (including elective office) with general earnings (as defined by section 7 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003).
- (3) Regulations may provide—
- (a) for cases where a person who falls within the definition in subsection (2) is not to be treated as an employee for the purposes of this Part, and
  - (b) for cases where a person who would not otherwise be an employee for the purposes of this Part is to be treated as an employee for those purposes.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part, regulations may specify cases in which, for the purposes of this Part or of such provisions of this Part as may be prescribed—
  - (a) two or more employers are to be treated as one;
  - (b) two or more contracts of service in respect of which the same person is an employee are to be treated as one.
- (5) In this Part, except where otherwise provided, “week” means a period of seven days beginning with Sunday or such other period as may be prescribed in relation to any particular case or class of cases.
- (6) For the purposes of this Part, a person's normal weekly earnings are, subject to subsection (8), to be taken to be the average weekly earnings which in the relevant period have been paid to the person or paid for the person's benefit under the contract of service with the employer in question.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (6) “earnings” and “relevant period” have the meanings given to them by regulations.
- (8) In such cases as may be prescribed, a person's normal weekly earnings are to be calculated in accordance with regulations.
- (9) Where—
  - (a) in consequence of the establishment of one or more National Health Service trusts under the National Health Service Act 2006, the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 or the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978, a person's contract of employment is treated by a scheme under any of those Acts as divided so as to constitute two or more contracts, or
  - (b) an order under paragraph 26(1) of Schedule 3 to the National Health Service Act 2006 provides that a person's contract of employment is so divided,regulations may make provision enabling the person to elect for all of those contracts to be treated as one contract for the purposes of this Part or such provisions of this Part as may be prescribed.
- (10) Regulations under subsection (9) may prescribe—
  - (a) the conditions that must be satisfied if a person is to be entitled to make such an election;
  - (b) the manner in which, and the time within which, such an election is to be made;
  - (c) the persons to whom, and the manner in which, notice of such an election is to be given;
  - (d) the information which a person who makes such an election is to provide, and the persons to whom, and the time within which, the person is to provide it;
  - (e) the time for which such an election is to have effect;
  - (f) which one of the person's employers under two or more contracts is to be regarded for the purposes of statutory shared parental pay as the person's employer under the contract.
- (11) The powers under subsections (9) and (10) are without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part.
- (12) Regulations under any of subsections (4) to (10) must be made with the concurrence of the Commissioners for Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1182** Words in s. 171ZZ4(1) substituted (E.W.) (6.4.2016) by [The Social Services and Well-being \(Wales\) Act 2014 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/413\)](#), regs. 2(1), **139**

### 171ZZ5 Power to apply Part 12ZC **U.K.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations provide for this Part to have effect in relation to cases which involve adoption, but not the placement of a child for adoption under the law of any part of the United Kingdom, with such modifications as the regulations may prescribe.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by regulations provide for this Part to have effect in relation to cases which involve a person who has applied, or intends to apply, with another person for a parental order under section 54 of the Human Fertilisation and Embryology Act 2008 and a child who is, or will be, the subject of the order, with such modifications as the regulations may prescribe.
- (3) Where section 171ZW(1)(b) has effect in relation to such cases as are described in subsection (2), regulations under section 171ZW(1)(b) may impose requirements to make statutory declarations as to—
  - (a) eligibility to apply for a parental order;
  - (b) intention to apply for such an order.]

## [<sup>F1183</sup>PART 12ZD **U.K.**

### STATUTORY PARENTAL BEREAVEMENT PAY

#### Textual Amendments

**F1183** Pt. 12ZD inserted (18.1.2020) by [Parental Bereavement \(Leave and Pay\) Act 2018 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 2(2), [Sch. para. 5](#); S.I. 2020/45, reg. 2

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C78** Pt. 12ZD modified (10.3.2020) by [The Statutory Parental Bereavement Pay \(General\) Regulations 2020 \(S.I. 2020/233\)](#), regs. 1, **11** (with reg. 2)
- C79** Pt. 12ZD modified (6.4.2020) by [The Statutory Parental Bereavement Pay \(Persons Abroad and Mariners\) Regulations 2020 \(S.I. 2020/252\)](#), regs. 1, **5-7**, 9, 10 (with reg. 3)

### 171ZZ6 Entitlement **U.K.**

- (1) A person who satisfies the conditions in subsection (2) is entitled in accordance with the following provisions of this Part to payments to be known as “statutory parental bereavement pay”.
- (2) The conditions are—
  - (a) that the person is a bereaved parent,
  - (b) that the person has been in employed earner's employment with an employer for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks ending with the relevant week,

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) that at the end of the relevant week the person was entitled to be in that employment (but see subsection (7)),
  - (d) that the person's normal weekly earnings for the period of 8 weeks ending with the relevant week are not less than the lower earnings limit in force under section 5(1)(a) at the end of the relevant week, and
  - (e) that the person has been in employed earner's employment with the employer by reference to whom the condition in paragraph (b) is satisfied for a continuous period beginning with the end of the relevant week and ending with the day on which the child dies.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2) an employee is a “bereaved parent” if the employee satisfies prescribed conditions as to relationship with a child who has died.
- (4) The conditions prescribed under subsection (3) may be framed, in whole or in part, by reference to the employee's care of the child before the child's death.
- (5) In subsection (2) “relevant week” means the week immediately before the one in which the child dies.
- (6) Where a person satisfies the conditions in subsection (2) as a result of the death of more than one child, the person is entitled to statutory parental bereavement pay in respect of each child.
- (7) In relation to a bereaved parent whose child dies before the day on which section 63(3) of the Welfare Reform Act 2012 comes fully into force, subsection (2) above is to be read as if paragraph (c) were omitted.

### **171ZZ7 Entitlement: supplementary U.K.**

- (1) A person is entitled to payments of statutory parental bereavement pay in respect of any period only if the person gives notice to whoever is liable to make the payments stating the week or weeks in respect of which they are to be made.
- (2) Regulations may provide for the time by which notice under subsection (1) must be given.
- (3) The notice must be in writing if the person who is liable to pay the statutory parental bereavement pay so requests.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by regulations—
  - (a) provide that section 171ZZ6(2)(b), (d) or (e) has effect subject to prescribed modifications in such cases as may be prescribed;
  - (b) provide for circumstances in which section 171ZZ6(2)(c) does not have effect;
  - (c) provide that subsection (1) of this section does not have effect, or has effect subject to prescribed modifications, in such cases as may be prescribed;
  - (d) impose requirements about evidence of entitlement;
  - (e) specify in what circumstances employment is to be treated as continuous for the purposes of section 171ZZ6;
  - (f) provide that a person is to be treated for the purposes of section 171ZZ6 as being employed for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks where—
    - (i) the person has been employed by the same employer for at least 26 weeks under two or more separate contracts of service, and
    - (ii) those contracts were not continuous;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (g) provide for amounts earned by a person under separate contracts of service with the same employer to be aggregated for the purposes of section 171ZZ6;
- (h) provide that—
  - (i) the amount of a person's earnings for any period, or
  - (ii) the amount of the person's earnings to be treated as comprised in any payment made to the person or for the person's benefit,is to be calculated or estimated for the purposes of section 171ZZ6 in such manner and on such basis as may be prescribed and that for that purpose payments of a particular class or description made or falling to be made to or by a person shall, to such extent as may be prescribed, be disregarded or, as the case may be, be deducted from the amount of the person's earnings.

### **171ZZ8 Liability to make payments** U.K.

- (1) The liability to make payments of statutory parental bereavement pay under section 171ZZ6 is a liability of any person of whom the person entitled to the payments has been an employee as mentioned in subsection (2)(b) and (e) of that section.
- (2) The Secretary of State must by regulations make provision as to a former employer's liability to pay statutory parental bereavement pay to a former employee in any case where the employee's contract of service with the employer has been brought to an end by the employer solely, or mainly, for the purpose of avoiding liability for statutory parental bereavement pay.
- (3) The Secretary of State may, with the concurrence of the Commissioners for Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs, by regulations specify circumstances in which, notwithstanding this section, liability to make payments of statutory parental bereavement pay is to be a liability of the Commissioners.

### **171ZZ9 Rate and period of pay** U.K.

- (1) Statutory parental bereavement pay is payable at such fixed or earnings-related weekly rate as may be prescribed by regulations, which may prescribe different kinds of rate for different cases.
- (2) Statutory parental bereavement pay is payable in respect of—
  - (a) such week within the qualifying period, or
  - (b) such number of weeks, not exceeding the prescribed number of weeks, within the qualifying period,as the person entitled may choose in accordance with regulations.
- (3) Provision under subsection (2)(b) must secure that the prescribed number of weeks is not less than two.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (2)(b) may permit a person entitled to receive statutory parental bereavement pay to choose to receive such pay in respect of non-consecutive periods each of which is a week or a number of weeks.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (2), the qualifying period is to be determined in accordance with regulations, which must secure that it is a period of at least 56 days beginning with the date of the child's death.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) A person is not liable to pay statutory parental bereavement pay to another in respect of any statutory pay week during any part of which the other works under a contract of service with the person.
- (7) It is immaterial for the purposes of subsection (6) whether the work referred to in that subsection is work under a contract of service which existed immediately before the statutory pay week or a contract of service which did not so exist.
- (8) Except in such cases as may be prescribed, statutory parental bereavement pay is not payable to a person in respect of a statutory pay week during any part of which the person works for any employer who is not liable to pay the person statutory parental bereavement pay.
- (9) The Secretary of State may by regulations specify circumstances in which there is to be no liability to pay statutory parental bereavement pay in respect of a statutory pay week.
- (10) Where for any purpose of this Part or of regulations it is necessary to calculate the daily rate of statutory parental bereavement pay, the amount payable by way of statutory parental bereavement pay for any day is to be taken as one seventh of the weekly rate.
- (11) In this section—
  - “statutory pay week”, in relation to a person entitled to statutory parental bereavement pay, means a week chosen by the person as a week in respect of which statutory parental bereavement pay is to be payable;
  - “week” means any period of seven days.

#### **171ZZ1**Restrictions on contracting out **U.K.**

- (1) An agreement is void to the extent that it purports—
  - (a) to exclude, limit or otherwise modify any provision of this Part, or
  - (b) to require a person to contribute (whether directly or indirectly) towards any costs incurred by that person's employer or former employer under this Part.
- (2) An agreement between an employer and an employee, authorising any deductions from statutory parental bereavement pay which the employer is liable to pay to the employee in respect of any period, is not void by virtue of subsection (1)(a) if the employer—
  - (a) is authorised by that or another agreement to make the same deductions from any contractual remuneration which the employer is liable to pay in respect of the same period, or
  - (b) would be so authorised if the employer were liable to pay contractual remuneration in respect of that period.

#### **171ZZ1**Relationship with contractual remuneration **U.K.**

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) and (3), any entitlement to statutory parental bereavement pay does not affect any right of a person in relation to remuneration under any contract of service (“contractual remuneration”).
- (2) Subject to subsection (3)—
  - (a) any contractual remuneration paid to a person by an employer of that person in respect of any period is to go towards discharging any liability of that



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- employer to pay statutory parental bereavement pay to that person in respect of that period; and
- (b) any statutory parental bereavement pay paid by an employer to a person who is an employee of that employer in respect of any period is to go towards discharging any liability of that employer to pay contractual remuneration to that person in respect of that period.
- (3) Regulations may make provision as to payments which are, and those which are not, to be treated as contractual remuneration for the purposes of subsections (1) and (2).

### **171ZZ12** Crown employment **U.K.**

The provisions of this Part apply in relation to persons employed by or under the Crown as they apply in relation to persons employed otherwise than by or under the Crown.

### **171ZZ13** Special classes of person **U.K.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may with the concurrence of the Treasury make regulations modifying any provision of this Part in such manner as the Secretary of State thinks proper in its application to any person who is, has been or is to be—
- (a) employed on board any ship, vessel, hovercraft or aircraft;
- (b) outside Great Britain at any prescribed time or in any prescribed circumstances; or
- (c) in prescribed employment in connection with continental shelf operations, as defined in section 120(2).
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) may, in particular, provide—
- (a) for any provision of this Part to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would not otherwise apply;
- (b) for any such provision not to apply to any such person, notwithstanding that it would otherwise apply;
- (c) for excepting any such person from the application of any such provision where the person neither is domiciled nor has a place of residence in any part of Great Britain;
- (d) for the taking of evidence, for the purposes of the determination of any question arising under any such provision, in a country or territory outside Great Britain, by a British consular official or such other person as may be determined in accordance with the regulations.

### **171ZZ14** Supplementary **U.K.**

- (1) In this Part—
- “child” means a person under the age of 18 (see also section 171ZZ15 for the application of this Part in relation to stillbirths);
- “employer”, in relation to a person who is an employee, means a person who—
- (a) under section 6 is liable to pay secondary Class 1 contributions in relation to any of the earnings of the person who is an employee, or
- (b) would be liable to pay such contributions but for—
- (i) the condition in section 6(1)(b), or

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) the employee being under the age of 16;  
“modifications” includes additions, omissions and amendments, and related expressions are to be read accordingly;  
“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations.
- (2) In this Part, “employee” means a person who is gainfully employed in Great Britain either under a contract of service or in an office (including elective office) with earnings (within the meaning of Parts 1 to 5).
- (3) Regulations may provide—
- (a) for cases where a person who falls within the definition in subsection (2) is not to be treated as an employee for the purposes of this Part, and
  - (b) for cases where a person who would not otherwise be an employee for the purposes of this Part is to be treated as an employee for those purposes.
- (4) Without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part, regulations may specify cases in which, for the purposes of this Part or of such provisions of this Part as may be prescribed—
- (a) two or more employers are to be treated as one;
  - (b) two or more contracts of service in respect of which the same person is an employee are to be treated as one.
- (5) In this Part, except section 171ZZ9, “week” means a period of 7 days beginning with Sunday or such other period as may be prescribed in relation to any particular case or class of cases.
- (6) For the purposes of this Part, a person's normal weekly earnings are, subject to subsection (8), to be taken to be the average weekly earnings which in the relevant period have been paid to the person or paid for the person's benefit under the contract of service with the employer in question.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (6), “earnings” and “relevant period” have the meanings given to them by regulations.
- (8) In such cases as may be prescribed, a person's normal weekly earnings are to be calculated in accordance with regulations.
- (9) Where in consequence of the establishment of one or more National Health Service trusts under the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006, a person's contract of employment is treated by a scheme under that Act as divided so as to constitute two or more contracts, regulations may make provision enabling the person to elect for all of those contracts to be treated as one contract for the purposes of this Part or such provisions of this Part as may be prescribed.
- (10) Regulations under subsection (9) may prescribe—
- (a) the conditions that must be satisfied if a person is to be entitled to make such an election;
  - (b) the manner in which, and the time within which, such an election is to be made;
  - (c) the persons to whom, and the manner in which, notice of such an election is to be given;
  - (d) the information which a person who makes such an election is to provide, and the persons to whom, and the time within which, the person is to provide it;
  - (e) the time for which such an election is to have effect;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (f) which one of the person's employers under two or more contracts is to be regarded for the purposes of statutory parental bereavement pay as the person's employer under the contract.
- (11) The powers under subsections (9) and (10) are without prejudice to any other power to make regulations under this Part.
- (12) Regulations under any of subsections (4) to (10) must be made with the concurrence of the Commissioners for Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs.

## 171ZZ15 Application in relation to stillbirths **U.K.**

In this Part—

- (a) references to a child include a child stillborn after twenty-four weeks of pregnancy, and
- (b) references to the death of a child are to be read, in relation to a stillborn child, as references to the birth of the child.]

## [<sup>F1184</sup>PART XIII **U.K.**

### INCAPACITY FOR WORK

#### Textual Amendments

**F1184** Pt. 12A inserted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), ss. 5, 16\(3\)](#) (with ss. 4, 7); [S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2\(2\), Sch. Pt. 2](#) (with [The Social Security \(Incapacity Benefit\) \(Transitional\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/310\), regs. 1\(1\), 11, 17, 29](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C80** Pt. 12A powers to make regulations modified (21.5.1998) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\), ss. 77, 87\(2\)\(a\)](#)

## 171A Test of incapacity for work. **U.K.**

- (1) For the purposes of this Act, save as otherwise expressly provided, whether a person is capable or incapable of work shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of this Part of this Act.
- (2) Regulations may make provision as to—
  - (a) the information or evidence required for the purpose of determining whether a person is capable or incapable of work, and
  - (b) the manner in which that information or evidence is to be provided,and may provide that if a person without good cause fails to provide that information or evidence, or to do so in the manner required, he shall be treated as capable of work.

[ In subsection (2)(a) above the reference to such information or evidence as is there <sup>F1185</sup>(2A) mentioned includes information or evidence capable of being used for assisting or encouraging the person in question to obtain work or enhance his prospects of obtaining it.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Regulations may provide that in any case where [<sup>F1186</sup>it falls to be determined] whether a person is capable of work—
- (a) he may be called to attend for such medical examination as may be required in accordance with regulations, and
  - (b) if he fails without good cause to attend for or submit himself to such examination, he shall be treated as capable of work.
- (4) Regulations may prescribe for the purposes of this section—
- (a) matters which are or are not to be taken into account in determining whether a person does or does not have good cause for any act or omission, or
  - (b) circumstances in which a person is or is not to be regarded as having or not having good cause for any act or omission.

[ All information supplied in pursuance of this section shall be taken for all purposes <sup>F1187</sup>(5) to be information relating to social security.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1185** S. 171A(2A) inserted (11.11.1999 for specified purposes, 13.12.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(5)(c), [Sch. 8 para. 23\(2\)](#); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(2)(b)

**F1186** Words in s. 171A(3) substituted (11.11.1999 for specified purposes, 3.4.2000 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(5)(c), [Sch. 8 para. 23\(3\)](#); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(2)(a)

**F1187** S. 171A(5) inserted (11.11.1999 for specified purposes, 13.12.1999 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 89(5)(c), [Sch. 8 para. 23\(4\)](#); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(2)(b)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C81** Ss. 171A(2)(3)(4) restricted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), [ss. 6\(3\)\(a\)](#), 16(3); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2

### 171B The own occupation test. **U.K.**

- (1) Where a person has been engaged in remunerative work for more than 8 weeks in the 21 weeks immediately preceding the day with respect to which it falls to be determined whether he is or was incapable of work, [<sup>F1188</sup>the own occupation test is applicable in his case.]
- (2) The own occupation test is whether he is incapable by reason of some specific disease or bodily or mental disablement of doing work which he could reasonably be expected to do in the course of the occupation in which he was so engaged.
- (3) Where for any purpose of this Act it is determined in relation to a person—
  - (a) that the test applicable with respect to any day is the own occupation test, and
  - (b) that he is on that test incapable of work,
 that test remains applicable in his case until the end of the spell of incapacity beginning with that day or, as the case may be, in which that day falls, or until the 197th day of incapacity for work in that spell, whichever is the earlier.

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

For this purpose a “spell of incapacity” means a series of 4 or more consecutive days of incapacity for work; and any two such spells not separated by a period of more than 8 weeks shall be treated as one spell of incapacity.

- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3) above a day of incapacity for work means a day—
- (a) with respect to which it has been determined for any purpose of this Act that the person in question was incapable of work, or
  - (b) in respect of which he was entitled to statutory sick pay, or
  - (c) in the case of a woman, which falls within the maternity allowance period, or
  - (d) which in accordance with regulations is to be treated for those purposes as a day of incapacity for work.
- (5) Any provision of this Act apart from subsection (4) above under or by virtue of which a day is or is not to be treated for any purpose as a day of incapacity for work shall be disregarded for the purposes of this section.
- (6) Provision may be made by regulations defining for the purposes of this section what is meant by “remunerative work”.

The regulations may, in particular, provide—

- (a) for “remunerative work” to be defined by reference to the number of hours worked per week; and
  - (b) for training of any prescribed description to be treated as if it were remunerative work.
- (7) Provision may be made by regulations as to the application of this section in cases where a person engages in more than one occupation or in different kinds of work.
- (8) The Secretary of State may by regulations provide that subsection (3) above shall have effect as if—
- (a) the reference there to 4 consecutive days were to such lesser number of days, whether consecutive or not, within such period of consecutive days as may be prescribed; and
  - (b) for the reference to 8 weeks there were substituted a reference to such larger number of weeks as may be prescribed.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1188** Words in s. 171B(1) substituted (3.4.2000) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\), s. 89\(1\), Sch. 8 para. 24](#); S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(2)(a)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C82** S. 171B(3) modified (13.4.1995) by [The Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) \(General\) Regulations 1995 \(S.I. 1995/311\), regs. 1, 13\(4\)](#)
- C83** S. 171B(4)(d) restricted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), ss. 6\(3\)\(a\), 16\(3\)](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2
- C84** Ss. 171B(6)-(8) restricted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), ss. 6\(3\)\(a\), 16\(3\)](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F1189</sup> **171C** Personal capability assessments. **U.K.**

- (1) Where the own occupation test is not applicable, or has ceased to apply, in the case of a person, the question whether the person is capable or incapable of work shall be determined in accordance with a personal capability assessment.
- (2) Provision shall be made by regulations—
  - (a) defining a personal capability assessment by reference to the extent to which a person who has some specific disease or bodily or mental disablement is capable or incapable of performing such activities as may be prescribed;
  - (b) as to the manner of assessing whether a person is, in accordance with a personal capability assessment, incapable of work.
- (3) Regulations may provide that, in any prescribed circumstances, a person to whom subsection (1) above applies shall, if the prescribed conditions are met, be treated as incapable of work in accordance with a personal capability assessment until such time as—
  - (a) such an assessment has been carried out in his case, or
  - (b) he falls to be treated as capable of work in accordance with regulations under section 171A(2) or (3) above or section 171E below.

The prescribed conditions may include the condition that it has not previously been determined, within such period as may be prescribed, that the person in question is or is to be treated as capable of work.

- (4) Except in prescribed circumstances, a personal capability assessment carried out in the case of a person before the time when subsection (1) above applies to him shall be as effective for the purposes of that subsection as one carried out thereafter.
- (5) The Secretary of State may, in the case of a person who for any purpose of this Act has been determined to be incapable of work in accordance with a personal capability assessment (including one carried out by virtue of this subsection), require the question whether the person is capable or incapable of work to be determined afresh in accordance with a further personal capability assessment.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F1189 S.** 171C substituted (11.11.1999 for specified purposes, 3.4.2000 in so far as not already in force) by [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#), **ss. 61**, 89(5)(b); [S.I. 1999/3309](#), art. 2(2)(a)

[<sup>F1190</sup> **171D** work. **U.K.**

- (1) Regulations may provide that a person shall be treated as capable of work, or as incapable of work, in such cases or circumstances as may be prescribed.
- (2) Regulations may, in particular, provide that a person shall be treated as capable of work if he does work of a prescribed description, or more than the prescribed amount of work of a prescribed description.

Accordingly regulations may provide that a person shall not be treated as capable of work by reason only of his doing such work as may be prescribed, or no more than the prescribed amount of work of a prescribed description.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1190** Ss. 171D-171G inserted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 6(1), 16(3)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C85** S. 171D restricted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 6(3)(a), 16(3)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2

**C86** S. 171D power to make regulations modified (21.5.1998) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), **ss. 77, 87(2)(a)**

### **Incapacity for work: disqualification, &c.** **U.K.**

**F1190** **171E**

- (1) Regulations may provide for disqualifying a person for receiving any benefit, allowance or other advantage under any provision for the purposes of which this Part of this Act applies, or, in such cases as may be prescribed, provide that a person shall be treated as capable of work, if—
- (a) he has become incapable of work through his own misconduct;
  - (b) he fails without good cause to attend for or submit himself to such medical or other treatment as may be required in accordance with the regulations; or
  - (c) he fails without good cause to observe any prescribed rules of behaviour.
- (2) Regulations shall provide that any such disqualification shall be, or as the case may be that the person shall be treated as capable of work, for such period not exceeding 6 weeks as may be determined in accordance with [<sup>F1191</sup>Chapter II of Part I of the Social Security Act 1998].
- (3) Regulations may prescribe for the purposes of this section—
- (a) matters which are or are not to be taken into account in determining whether a person does or does not have good cause for any act or omission, or
  - (b) circumstances in which a person is or is not to be regarded as having or not having good cause for any act or omission.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1190** Ss. 171D-171G inserted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 6(1), 16(3)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2

**F1191** Words in s. 171E(2) substituted (6.9.1999 for specified purposes) by [Social Security Act 1998 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 87(2), **Sch. 7 para. 76**; S.I. 1999/2422, art. 2(c), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 14)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C87** Ss. 171E(1)-(3) restricted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 6(3)(a), 16(3)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Incapacity for work: work as councillor to be disregarded.** **U.K.**

**F1190** **171F**

- (1) In determining whether a person is capable or incapable of work, there shall be disregarded any work which that person has undertaken as a councillor.
- (2) For this purpose “councillor” means—
- (a) in relation to England and Wales, a member of a London borough council, a county <sup>F1192</sup>or county borough] council, a district council, a parish or community council, the Common Council of the City of London or the Council of the Isles of Scilly; and
  - (b) in relation to Scotland, a member of a regional, islands or district council.
- (3) The reference in subsection (1) above to the work which a person undertakes as a councillor shall be taken to include any work which he undertakes as a member of any of the bodies referred to in section 177(1) of the Local Government Act 1972, or section 49(1) or (1A) of the Local Government (Scotland) Act 1973, of which he is a member by virtue of his being a councillor.
- (4) In making any such determination as is mentioned in subsection (1) above a person shall be treated as having been incapable of work on any day which falls in the pre-commencement period and which—
- (a) would have been treated as a day on which he was so incapable, were there disregarded any work which he undertook (or was capable of undertaking) as a councillor; but
  - (b) would not have been so treated apart from this subsection.

The “pre-commencement period” means the period beginning with 11th May 1987 and ending immediately before 9th October 1989 (the coming into force of paragraph 2 of Schedule 8 to the Social Security Act 1989 which made provision corresponding to the provision made by this section).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F1190** Ss. 171D-171G inserted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 6(1), 16(3)**; S.I. 1994/2926, **art. 2(2)**, **Sch. Pt. 2**

**F1192** Words in s. 171F(2)(a) inserted (1.4.1996) by [The Local Government Reorganisation \(Wales\) \(Consequential Amendments\) Order 1996 \(S.I. 1996/525\)](#), **art. 1**, **Sch. para. 3**

**Incapacity for work: supplementary provisions.** **U.K.**

**F1190** **171G**

- (1) The provisions of this Part of this Act do not apply—
- (a) for the purposes of Part V of this Act (benefit for industrial injuries: see section 94(6) above);
  - (b) for the purposes of Part XI of this Act (statutory sick pay: see section 151(4) above); or
  - (c) for such other purposes as may be prescribed.
- (2) In this Part of this Act—
- “prescribed” means specified in or determined in accordance with regulations; and
- “week” means any period of 7 days.]]

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1190** Ss. 171D-171G inserted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 6(1), 16(3)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C88** S. 171G(1)(c) restricted (18.11.1994 for specified purposes, 13.4.1995 in so far as not already in force) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 6(3)(a), 16(3)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2

## PART XIII **U.K.**

### GENERAL

#### *Interpretation*

#### **172 Application of Act in relation to territorial waters. **E+W+S****

In this Act—

- (a) any reference to Great Britain includes a reference to the territorial waters of the United Kingdom adjacent to Great Britain;
- (b) any reference to the United Kingdom includes a reference to the territorial waters of the United Kingdom.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C89** S. 172 applied (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [State Pension Credit Act 2002 \(c. 16\)](#), **ss. 17(3)(a), 22(3)**; S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)

#### **173 Age. **E+W+S****

For the purposes of this Act a person—

- (a) is over or under a particular age if he has or, as the case may be, has not attained that age; and
- (b) is between two particular ages if he has attained the first but not the second; and in Scotland (as in England and Wales) the time at which a person attains a particular age expressed in years is the commencement of the relevant anniversary of the date of his birth.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C90** S. 173 applied (2.7.2002 for specified purposes, 6.10.2003 in so far as not already in force) by [State Pension Credit Act 2002 \(c. 16\)](#), **ss. 17(3)(b), 22(3)**; S.I. 2003/1766, art. 2(a)

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 174 References to Acts. **E+W+S**

In this Act—

“the 1975 Act” means the <sup>M26</sup>Social Security Act 1975;

“the 1986 Act” means the <sup>M27</sup>Social Security Act 1986;

“the Administration Act” means the <sup>M28</sup>Social Security Administration Act 1992;

“the Consequential Provisions Act” means the <sup>M29</sup>Social Security (Consequential Provisions) Act 1992;

“the Northern Ireland Contributions and Benefits Act” <sup>M30</sup>means the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992;

“the Old Cases Act” means the <sup>M31</sup>Industrial Injuries and Diseases (Old Cases) Act 1975; and

“the Pensions Act” means the [<sup>F1193</sup>Pension Schemes Act 1993].

### Textual Amendments

**F1193** Words in s. 174 substituted (7.2.1994) by [Pension Schemes Act 1993 \(c. 48\), s. 193\(2\), Sch. 8 para. 41](#) (with s. 189, Schs. 6, 9); S.I. 1994/86

### Marginal Citations

**M26** 1975 c.14.

**M27** 1986 c.50.

**M28** 1992 c.5.

**M29** 1992 c.6.

**M30** 1992 c.7.

**M31** 1975 c.16.

## Subordinate legislation

## 175 Regulations, orders and schemes. **E+W+S**

(1) Subject to [<sup>F1194</sup>subsection (1A) below], regulations and orders under this Act shall be made by the Secretary of State.

[<sup>F1195</sup>(1A) Subsection (1) above has effect subject to—

(a) any provision <sup>F1196</sup>... providing for regulations or an order to be made by the Treasury or by the Commissioners of Inland Revenue, <sup>F1197</sup>...

<sup>F1197</sup>(b) ..... ]

(2) Powers under this Act to make regulations, orders or schemes shall be exercisable by statutory instrument.

(3) Except in the case of an order under section 145(3) above and in so far as this Act otherwise provides, any power under this Act to make regulations or an order may be exercised—

(a) either in relation to all cases to which the power extends, or in relation to those cases subject to specified exceptions, or in relation to any specified cases or classes of case;

(b) so as to make, as respects the cases in relation to which it is exercised—

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) the full provision to which the power extends or any less provision (whether by way of exception or otherwise),
  - (ii) the same provision for all cases in relation to which the power is exercised, or different provision for different cases or different classes of case or different provision as respects the same case or class of case for different purposes of this Act,
  - (iii) any such provision either unconditionally or subject to any specified condition;
- and where such a power is expressed to be exercisable for alternative purposes it may be exercised in relation to the same case for any or all of those purposes; and powers to make regulations or an order for the purposes of any one provision of this Act are without prejudice to powers to make regulations or an order for the purposes of any other provision.
- (4) Without prejudice to any specific provision in this Act, any power conferred by this Act to make regulations or an order (other than the power conferred in section 145(3) above) includes power to make thereby such incidental, supplementary, consequential or transitional provision as appears to the <sup>F1198</sup>person making the regulations or order] to be expedient for the purposes of the regulations or order.
- (5) Without prejudice to any specific provisions in this Act, a power conferred by any provision of this Act except—
  - (a) sections 30, 47(6), <sup>F1199</sup>25B(2)(a)] and 145(3) above and paragraph 3(9) of Schedule 7 to this Act;
  - (b) section 122(1) above in relation to the definition of “payments by way of occupational or personal pension”; and
  - (c) Part XI,to make regulations or an order includes power to provide for a person to exercise a discretion in dealing with any matter.
- (6) <sup>F1200</sup>Any power conferred by this Act to make orders or regulations relating to housing benefit or <sup>F1201</sup>council tax benefit] shall include power to make different provisions for different areas.]
- (7) Any power of the Secretary of State under any provision of this Act, except the provisions mentioned in subsection (5)(a) and (b) above and Part IX, to make any regulations or order, where the power is not expressed to be exercisable with the consent of the Treasury, shall if the Treasury so direct be exercisable only in conjunction with them.
- (8) Any power under any of sections 116 to 120 above to modify provisions of this Act or the Administration Act extends also to modifying so much of any other provision of this Act or that Act as re-enacts provisions of the 1975 Act which replaced provisions of the National Insurance (Industrial Injuries) Acts 1965 to 1974.
- (9) A power to make regulations under any of sections 116 to 120 above shall be exercisable in relation to any enactment passed after this Act which is directed to be construed as one with this Act; but this subsection applies only so far as a contrary intention is not expressed in the enactment so passed, and is without prejudice to the generality of any such direction.
- (10) Any reference in this section or section 176 below to an order or regulations under this Act includes a reference to an order or regulations made under any provision of an enactment passed after this Act and directed to be construed as one with this Act;

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

but this subsection applies only so far as a contrary intention is not expressed in the enactment so passed, and without prejudice to the generality of any such direction.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1194** Words in s. 175(1) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 29\(2\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F1195** S. 175(1A) inserted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 29\(3\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F1196** Words in s. 175(1A)(a) repealed (1.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\), s. 61, Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2003/392, art. 2
- F1197** S. 175(1A)(b) and preceding word repealed (1.4.2003) by [Tax Credits Act 2002 \(c. 21\), s. 61, Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2003/392, art. 2
- F1198** Words in s. 175(4) substituted (1.4.1999) by [Social Security Contributions \(Transfer of Functions, etc.\) Act 1999 \(c. 2\), s. 28\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 29\(4\)](#); S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)
- F1199** Word in s. 175(5) substituted (13.4.1995) by [Social Security \(Incapacity for Work\) Act 1994 \(c. 18\), s. 16\(3\), Sch. 1 para. 36](#); S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F1200** S. 175(6) repealed (1.4.2013 in so far as relates to council tax benefit) by [Welfare Reform Act 2012 \(c. 5\), s. 150\(3\), Sch. 14 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2013/358, art. 8(c), Sch. 4 (with arts. 9, 10, Sch. 5)
- F1201** Words in s. 175(6) substituted (6.3.1992) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\), s. 103, Sch. 9 para. 10](#) (with s. 118(1)(2)(4))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C91** S. 175(3)-(5) applied (with modifications) (6.4.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), ss. 5\(2\)\(3\), 8](#)
- C92** S. 175(3)-(5) applied (12.2.2015) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 \(c. 5\), s. 3\(4\)](#)
- C93** S. 175(3)-(5) applied by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\), s. 10A\(8\)](#) (as inserted (15.9.2016 with effect in accordance with s. 157(30) of the amending Act) by [Finance Act 2016 \(c. 24\), s. 157\(17\)](#))
- C94** S. 175(3)-(5) applied (15.3.2022) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2022 \(c. 9\), s. 12\(4\)](#)
- C95** S. 175(3)(4) applied (31.3.2022) by [National Insurance Contributions \(Increase of Thresholds\) Act 2022 \(c. 16\), s. 5\(2\)](#)

## 176 Parliamentary control. **E+W+S**

(1) Subject to the provisions of this section, a statutory instrument containing (whether alone or with other provisions)—

- [<sup>F1202</sup>(za) regulations under section 5 specifying the lower earnings limit for the tax year following the designated tax year (see section 5(4) of the Pensions Act 2007) or any subsequent tax year;]
- [<sup>F1203</sup>(zb) regulations under section 5 specifying the upper earnings limit;]
- (a) regulations made by virtue of—
- [<sup>F1204</sup>section 4B(2);
  - section 4C;]
  - [<sup>F1205</sup>section 9A(7);]
  - [<sup>F1206</sup>section 9B(4), (8) or (10);]
  - [<sup>F1207</sup>section 10ZC;]
  - [<sup>F1208</sup>section 11(8) or (9)]
  - [<sup>F1209</sup>section 14A;]
  - section 18;



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) regulations under powers conferred by any provision mentioned in paragraph (a) of that subsection <sup>F1230</sup>... which are to be made for the purpose of consolidating regulations to be revoked in the instrument;
  - (c) regulations which, in so far as they are made under powers conferred by any provision mentioned in paragraph (a) of that subsection (other than section 145 <sup>F1231</sup>...), only replace provisions of previous regulations with new provisions to the same effect.
- [<sup>F1232</sup>(2A) In the case of a statutory instrument containing (whether alone or with other provisions) regulations made by virtue of section 4B(2) to which subsection (1) above applies, the draft of the instrument must be laid before Parliament before the end of the period of 12 months beginning with the appropriate date.
- (2B) For the purposes of subsection (2A), the “appropriate date” means—
- (a) where the corresponding retrospective tax provision was passed or made before the day on which the National Insurance Contributions Act 2006 was passed, the date upon which that Act was passed, and
  - (b) in any other case, the date upon which the corresponding retrospective tax provision was passed or made.
- (2C) For the purposes of subsection (2B), “the corresponding retrospective tax provision” in relation to the regulations means—
- (a) the retrospective tax provision mentioned in subsection (1) of section 4B in relation to which the regulations are to be made by virtue of subsection (2) of that section, or
  - (b) where there is more than one such tax provision, whichever of those provisions was the first to be passed or made.]

(3) A statutory instrument—

    - (a) which contains (whether alone or with other provisions) any order, regulations or scheme made under this Act by the Secretary of State, [<sup>F1233</sup>the Treasury or the Commissioners of Inland Revenue,] other than an order under section 145(3) above; and
    - (b) which is not subject to any requirement that a draft of the instrument shall be laid before and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament,

shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

[<sup>F1234</sup>(4) Subsection (3) above does not apply to a statutory instrument by reason only that it contains an order appointing the first or second appointed year [<sup>F1235</sup>or designating the flat rate introduction year] (within the meanings given by section 122(1) above).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1202S.** 176(1)(za) inserted (26.9.2007) by [Pensions Act 2007 \(c. 22\)](#), **ss. 7(5), 30(3)**

**F1203S.** 176(1)(zb) inserted (with effect in relation to regulations specifying the upper earnings limit for 2009-10 or any subsequent tax year) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 \(c. 16\)](#), **ss. 1(2), 6(1)** (with s. 1(3))

**F1204** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (30.3.2006) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2006 \(c. 10\)](#), **ss. 1(2)(a), 9**

**F1205** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (13.5.2014) by [National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 \(c. 7\)](#), **s. 9(5)(11)(b)**



*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

*Changes to legislation: Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1206** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (12.4.2015) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 (c. 5), s. **1(5)(11)**
- F1207** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (30.3.2006) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2006 (c. 10), ss. **3(2), 9**
- F1208** Words in s. 176(1)(a) substituted (with effect for the tax year 2015-16 and subsequent tax years) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2015 (c. 5), **Sch. 1 paras. 8, 35**
- F1209** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (13.10.2014) by Pensions Act 2014 (c. 19), s. 56(1), **Sch. 15 para. 11**; S.I. 2014/2727, art. 2
- F1210** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (13.5.2014) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2014 (c. 7), s. **13(3)(7)**
- F1211** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (3.11.2000) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 25**; S.I. 2000/2958, art. 2(6)(a)
- F1212** Words in s. 176(1)(a) repealed (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 37(a), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F1213** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (with effect until 31.12.2010) by virtue of Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), ss. **31(2)(a), 70(2)** (with s. 31(3)); S.I. 2007/1721, art. 2(1)
- F1214** Words in s. 176(1)(a) omitted (6.4.1995) by virtue of The Statutory Sick Pay Percentage Threshold Order 1995 (S.I. 1995/512), arts. 1(1), **6(1)(a)(i)**
- F1215** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (8.12.2002) by Employment Act 2002 (c. 22), s. 55(2), **Sch. 7 para. 7**; S.I. 2002/2866, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. 2
- F1216** Words in s. 176(1)(a) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 7 para. 22**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 7(g) (with art. 16)
- F1217** Words in s. 176(1)(a) repealed (5.4.2015) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), ss. **124(2), 139(6)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 6(a) (with art. 13)
- F1218** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (30.6.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), ss. **119(2), 139(6)**; S.I. 2014/1640, art. 3(1)(c)
- F1219** Words in s. 176(1)(a) inserted (18.1.2020) by Parental Bereavement (Leave and Pay) Act 2018 (c. 24), s. 2(2), **Sch. para. 6**; S.I. 2020/45, reg. 2
- F1220** S. 176(1)(aa) inserted (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 30(3), **Sch. 1 para. 10**
- F1221** S. 176(1)(ab) inserted (27.11.2012 for specified purposes, 1.1.2013 in so far as not already in force) by Welfare Reform Act 2012 (c. 5), ss. **69(4), 150(3)**; S.I. 2012/2946, art. 2(1)(a)(b)
- F1222** S. 176(1)(bb) inserted (18.11.2004 for specified purposes, 6.4.2005 in so far as not already in force) by Pensions Act 2004 (c. 35), s. 322(3)(a), **Sch. 11 para. 19**
- F1223** Words in s. 176(1)(c) inserted (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), **Sch. 1 para. 37(b)**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F1224** Words in s. 176(1)(c) inserted (12.1.2000 for specified purposes, 2.4.2000 for all other purposes) by Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30), s. 89(1), **Sch. 8 para. 32**; S.I. 1999/3309, art. 2(1)(b)
- F1225** Words in s. 176(1)(c) repealed (13.4.1995) by Social Security (Incapacity for Work) Act 1994 (c. 18), s. 16(3), Sch. 1 para. 37(b), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1994/2926, art. 2(4), Sch. Pt. 4
- F1226** Words in s. 176(1)(c) repealed (21.9.2008) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2008 (c. 16), s. 6(1), **Sch. 2**
- F1227** Words in s. 176(1)(c) inserted (with effect until 31.12.2010) by virtue of Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), ss. **31(2)(b), 70(2)** (with s. 31(3)); S.I. 2007/1721, art. 2(1)
- F1228** Words in s. 176(1)(c) omitted (6.4.1995) by virtue of The Statutory Sick Pay Percentage Threshold Order 1995 (S.I. 1995/512), arts. 1(1), **6(1)(a)(ii)**
- F1229** Words in s. 176(1)(c) inserted (10.2.1994) by Statutory Sick Pay Act 1994 (c. 2), ss. **3(2), 5(2)** (with s. 2(4))
- F1230** Words in s. 176(2)(b) omitted (6.4.1995) by virtue of The Statutory Sick Pay Percentage Threshold Order 1995 (S.I. 1995/512), arts. 1(1), **6(1)(a)(iii)**
- F1231** Words in s. 176(2)(c) omitted (6.4.1995) by virtue of The Statutory Sick Pay Percentage Threshold Order 1995 (S.I. 1995/512), arts. 1(1), **6(1)(a)(iv)**
- F1232** S. 176(2A)-(2C) inserted (30.3.2006) by National Insurance Contributions Act 2006 (c. 10), ss. **1(2)(b), 9**

*Status: Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.*

**Changes to legislation:** Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F1233** Words in s. 176(3)(a) inserted (1.4.1999) by Social Security Contributions (Transfer of Functions, etc.) Act 1999 (c. 2), s. 28(3), **Sch. 3 para. 30**; S.I. 1999/527, art. 2(b), Sch. 2 (with arts. 3-6)

**F1234** S. 176(4) inserted (8.1.2001 for specified purposes, 25.1.2001 for specified purposes, 6.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by Child Support, Pensions and Social Security Act 2000 (c. 19), **ss. 35(15), 86(1)(b)(2)**; S.I. 2000/2950, art. 6; S.I. 2001/153, art. 2(a)

**F1235** Words in s. 176(4) inserted (26.9.2007) by Pensions Act 2007 (c. 22), s. 30(3), **Sch. 1 para. 35(b)**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C96** S. 176(3) modified (5.10.1999) by Tax Credits Act 1999 (c. 10), s. 20(2), **Sch. 2 para. 20(b)**

*Short title, commencement and extent*

**177 Short title, commencement and extent. U.K.**

- (1) This Act may be cited as the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992.
- (2) This Act is to be read, where appropriate, with the Administration Act and the Consequential Provisions Act.
- (3) The enactments consolidated by this Act are repealed, in consequence of the consolidation, by the Consequential Provisions Act.
- (4) Except as provided in Schedule 4 to the Consequential Provisions Act, this Act shall come into force on 1st July 1992.
- (5) The following provisions extend to Northern Ireland—
  - section 16 and Schedule 2;
  - section 116(2); and
  - this section.
- (6) Except as provided by this section, this Act does not extend to Northern Ireland.

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 10/04/2023.

**Changes to legislation:**

Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.